

THE  
RUDIMENTS  
OF  
LATIN AND ENGLISH  
GRAMMAR;

DESIGNED

TO FACILITATE THE STUDY OF BOTH LANGUAGES,  
BY CONNECTING THEM TOGETHER.

By ALEXANDER ADAM, L. L. D.  
RECTOR OF THE HIGH SCHOOL OF EDINBURGH.

Grammaticæ est ars, necessaria pueris, jucunda senibus, dulcis secretorum comes, et  
quæ vel sola omni studiorum genere plus habet operis quam ostentationis. Ne quis  
igitur tanquam parca fastidiat Grammaticæ elementa; quia interiora velut sacra  
hujus aduentibus, apparebit multa rerum subtilitas, quæ non modò senere ingenia  
pueris, sed exercere altissimam quoque traditionem ac scientiam possit

*Quintilian, l. 4, 5.*

FIRST ALBANY, FROM THE FIFTH ENGLISH EDITION,  
WITH IMPROVEMENTS.

Recommended by the University at Cambridge (Mass.), to be used by  
those who are intended for that Seminary.

ALBANY :

PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY E. AND E. HOSFORD.

1820

THE  
RUDIMENTS  
OF  
LATIN AND ENGLISH  
GRAMMAR;

DESIGNED  
TO FACILITATE THE STUDY OF BOTH LANGUAGES,  
BY CONNECTING THEM TOGETHER.

---

By ALEXANDER ADAM, L. L. D.  
RECTOR OF THE HIGH SCHOOL OF EDINBURGH;

---

Grammaticæ est ars, necessaria pueris, jucunda senibus, dulcis secretorum comes, et  
quæ vel sola omni studiorum genere plus habet operis quam ostentationis. Ne quis  
igitur tanquam parva fastidiat Grammaticæ elementa: quia interiora velut æceri  
hujus aduentibus, appareret multa rerum subtilitas, quæ non modò acere ingenia  
puerilia, sed exercere altissimam quoque eruditionem ac scientiam possit  
*Quintilian, l. 4, 5.*

---

FIRST ALBANY, FROM THE FIFTH ENGLISH EDITION,  
WITH IMPROVEMENTS.

---

Recommended by the University at Cambridge (Mass.), to be used by  
those who are intended for that Seminary.

---

ALBANY:

PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY E. AND E. HOSFORD.

1820

spicuous. The first complete edition of Despauter's Grammar was printed at Cologne, anno 1522; his *Syntax* had been published anno 1509. Lily was made first master of St. Paul's school in London, by Dr. Colet, its founder, anno 1510; so that he was contemporary with Despauter. His Grammar was appointed, by an act which is still in force, to be taught in the established schools of England. Various attempts were afterwards made by different authors; as, *Sanctius, Alvarus, Scioppius, Kirkwood, Watt, Ruddiman, &c.* to improve on the plan of Despauter and Lily; but with little success. The truth is, it seems impracticable to express with sufficient perspicuity the Principles of Grammar in Latin verse; and it appears strange, that when scholastic jargon is exploded from elementary books on other sciences, it should be retained by public authority, where it ought never to have been admitted, in Latin Grammars for children. But such is the force of habit and attachment to established modes, that we go on in the use of them, without thinking whether they be founded in reason or not. When there are a great many exceptions to a general rule, whatever can assist the memory is no doubt useful. On this account the principal rules for the genders of nouns, &c. are here subjoined, for local reasons, from Ruddiman's Grammar; although many of them are by no means adapted to the capacity of boys; and more of them are inserted, in compliance with the opinion of others, than the compiler judges necessary. They are printed at the end of the book; and such as choose it, may have Lily's rules, Watt's rules, or any other substituted in their place.

The authors of the *Nouvelle Methode* or *Port Royal Grammar* in France, judging it as absurd to teach Latin by rules in Latin verse, as to teach Greek by rules in Greek verse, or Hebrew by rules in Hebrew, composed the rules of Latin Grammar in French verse. Some authors in England, as, *Clarke, Phillips, &c.* have imitated their example. But this plan has not in either country been much followed. Nothing can be more uncouth than such versification. So that Latin rules, on the whole, seem preferable.—However this may be, the following remarks concerning the method of teaching Latin, it is hoped will not be deemed improper.

When the learner is once master of the inflexion of nouns and verbs, he should be exercised in getting by heart words

and phrases, while at the same time he is employed in reading some easy author, and in turning plain sentences from English into Latin. The sooner he can be brought to write part of his exercises, the better; but he should never be obliged to get Grammar rules in Latin verse, till he is capable of understanding them by himself; because, although the teacher may explain them, the scholar will soon forget the interpretation, and repeat the words merely by rote, without attending to their meaning. Nor should he be forced to get rules in Latin verse, which may be remembered equally well in English prose: Rules in verse are only useful when they assist the memory; as when there is a number of exceptions from a general rule, where alone they are indeed of advantage: and even here, perhaps, any chime of words might answer the purpose as well as Latin hexameters. It is of importance, when the rule is long, that the learner be accustomed to repeat no more of it than is strictly applicable to the word or phrase in question. The repetition of the whole is an useless waste of time. The great object ought to be, to bring the learner, in as short a time as possible, to join without hesitation an adjective with a substantive in any case, number, or degree of comparison; and in like manner to touch upon any part of a verb, and to tell readily by what case any adjective, verb, or preposition is followed. This facility practice alone can teach, and the method of acquiring it must in all languages be much the same.

The niceties of construction, the figures of Syntax, and the other parts of Grammar, should be occasionally taught, as the learner proceeds in reading the more difficult authors.

As the ancient Romans joined the Grammar of their own language with that of the Greek; so we ought to connect the study of English Grammar with that of the Latin. And when the learner properly understands Latin Grammar, he ought to join with it the study of the Greek; the knowledge of both these languages being requisite for the thorough understanding of the English. This is the practice in England and other countries, where the best Greek and Latin scholars are formed. It is particularly necessary in Scotland to pay attention to the English in conjunction with the Latin, as by neglecting it boys at school learn many improprieties in point of Grammar, as well as of pronunciation, which it is difficult in after life to correct. This attention is less



requisite in England ; though even there, in the opinion of Dr. Lowth, to use his own words, "the connexion of the English with the Latin Grammar, if it could be introduced into schools, might be of good service."<sup>\*</sup>

EDINBURGH, Oct. 25, 1793.

*\* In a letter concerning this book, after having read the manuscript, dated Cuddesdon, Sept. 27, 1771.*

# CONTENTS.

<i>Page</i>		<i>Page</i>	
Part I. ORTHOGRAPHY, <i>which treats of Letters,</i>	1	Signification of the different Tenses	78
Diphthongs	2	Verbs of the First Conjugation	81
Syllables	3	Second Conju.	84
Part II ETYMOLOGY, <i>which treats of Words,</i>	ib.	Third Conju.	87
Division of Words or Parts of Speech	4	Fourth Conju.	97
The Article—wanting in Latin	ib.	Deponent and common Verbs	99
I. Noun or Substantive	5	Irregular Verbs	102
English Nouns	6	Defective Verbs	107
Latin Nouns	7	Impersonal Verbs	108
Declension of Nouns	ib.	Redundant Verbs	110
Gender of Nouns	8	Obsolete Conjugation	111
First Declension	11	Derivation and Composition of Verbs	ib.
Second Declension	15	IV. Participle	112
Third Declension	21	V. Adverb	113
Fourth Declension	34	VI. Preposition	116
Fifth Declension	36	VII. Interjection	118
Irregular Nouns	ib.	VIII. Conjunction	ib.
Division of Nouns, according to their signification & derivation	42	Part III. SYNTAX, or CONSTRUCTION, <i>which treats of Sentences,</i>	121
Adjective	43	Division of Sentences into Simple and Compound.	ib.
Numeral Adjectives	49	I. Simple Sentences	122
Comparison of Adjectives	51	Concord or Agreement of Words in Simple Sentences	ib.
II. Pronoun	53	Government of words in Simple Sentences	126
English Pronouns	ib.	I. Government of Substantives	ib.
Latin Pronouns	54	II. Government of Adjectives	128
1. Simple Latin Pronouns	ib.	III. Government of Verbs	132
2. Compound Latin Pronouns	57	1. Verbs governing one case	ib.
III. Verb	58	2. Verbs governing two cases	137
English Verbs	60	Construction of Passive Verbs	140
Conjugation of Latin Verbs	63	of Impersonal Verbs	141
First Conjugation	68	of the Infinitive	143
Second Conjugation	73	of participles, &c.	ib.
Third Conjugation	75		
Fourth Conjugation	76		
Formation of the different parts of Latin Verbs	77		



THE  
RUDIMENTS  
OF  
LATIN AND ENGLISH  
GRAMMAR.

**G**RAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing correctly.

Latin or English Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the Latin or the English language correctly.

The *Rudiments* of Grammar are plain and easy instructions, teaching beginners the first principles and rules of it.

Grammar treats of sentences, and the several parts of which they are compounded.

Sentences consist of words; Words consist of one or more syllables; Syllables of one or more letters. So that Letters, Syllables, Words, and Sentences make up the whole subject of Grammar.

LETTERS.

A letter is the mark of a sound, or of an articulation of sound.

That part of Grammar which treats of letters, is called *Orthography*.

The letters in Latin are twenty-five: A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.

In English there is one letter more, namely, W, w.

Letters are divided into *Vowels* and *Consonants*.

Six are vowels; a, e, i, o, u, y. All the rest are consonants.

A vowel makes a full sound by itself; as, a, e.

A consonant cannot make a perfect sound without a vowel; as, b, d.

A vowel is properly called a *simple sound*; and the sounds formed by the concurrence of vowels and consonants, *articulate sounds*.

Consonants are divided into *Mutes*, *Semi-vowels*, and *Double Consonants*.

A mute is so called, because it entirely stops the passage of the voice; as, *p*, in *ap*.

The mutes are, *p*, *b*; *t*, *d*; *c*, *k*, *q*, and *g*; but *b*, *d*, and *g*, perhaps may more properly be termed *Semi-mutes*.

A semi-vowel, or half vowel, does not entirely stop the passage of the voice; thus, *al*.

The semi-vowels are, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *f*. The first four of these are also called *Liquids*, particularly *l* and *r*; because they flow softly and easily after a mute in the same syllable; as *bla*, *stra*.

The mutes and semi-vowels may be thus distinguished. In naming the mutes, the vowel is put after them; as, *pe*, *be*, &c. but in naming the semi-vowels, the vowel is put before them; as *el*, *em*, &c.

The double consonants are, *x*, *z*, and *j*. *X* is made up of *cs*, *ks*, or *gz*. *Z* seems not to be a double consonant in English. It has the same relation to *s*, as *v* has to *f*, being sounded somewhat more softly.

In Latin *z*, and likewise *k* and *y*, are found only in words derived from the Greek.

*Y* in English is sometimes a consonant, as in *youth*.

*H* by some is not accounted a letter but only a breathing.

## DIPHTHONGS.

A diphthong, is two vowels joined in one sound.

If the sound of both vowels be distinctly heard, it is called a *Proper Diphthong*; if not, an *Improper Diphthong*.

The proper diphthongs in Latin are commonly reckoned three; *au*, *eu*, *ei*; as in *aurum*, *Eurus*, *omnis*. To these some, not improperly, add other three; namely, *ai*, as in *Maia*; *oi*, as in *Troia*; and *ui*, as in *Harpunia*, or in *cu*, and *huic*, when pronounced as monosyllables.

The improper diphthongs in Latin are two; *ae*, or when the vowels are written together, *æ*; as, *aetas*, or *ætas*; *oe*, or *æ*; as *poena*, or *pæna*; in both of which the sound of the *e* only is heard. The ancients commonly wrote the vowels separately, thus, *aetas*, *poena*.

The English language abounds with improper diphthongs the just pronunciation of which, practice alone can teach.

In some words derived from the French, there are three vowels in the same syllable, but two of them only are sounded; as in *beauty*, *lieutenant*.

### SYLLABLES.

A syllable is the sound of one letter, or of several letters, pronounced by one impulse of the voice; as *a*, *to*, *strength*.

In every word there are as many syllables as there are distinct sounds; as, *in-fal-li-bi-li-ty*.

In Latin there are as many syllables in a word, as there are vowels or diphthongs in it; unless when *u* with any other vowel comes after *g*, *q*, or *s*, as in *lingua*, *qui*, *suadeo*; where the two vowels are not reckoned a diphthong, because the sound of the *u* vanishes, or is little heard.

Words consisting of one syllable are called *Monosyllables*; of two, *Dissyllables*; and of more than two, *Polysyllables*. But all words of more than one syllable are commonly called *Polysyllables*.

In dividing words into syllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear. Compound words should be divided into the parts of which they are made up; as, *up-on*, *with-out*, &c. and so in Latin words, *ab-utor*, *in-ops*, *propter-ea*, *et-enim*, *vel-ut*, &c. In like manner, when a syllable is added in the formation of the English verb, as, *lov-ed*, *lov-ing*, *lov-eth*, *will-ing*, &c.

*Observe*, A long syllable is thus marked [ˉ]; as, *amāre*; or with a circumflex accent thus, [˘]; as, *amāris*. A short syllable is marked thus, [˘]; as, *omnibus*.

What pertains to the quantity of syllables, to accent, and verse, will be treated of afterwards.

### WORDS.

Words are articulate sounds significant of thought.

That part of Grammar which treats of words, is called *Etymology*, or *Analogy*.

All words may be divided into three kinds; namely, 1. such as mark the names of things; 2. such as denote what is affirmed concerning things; and 3. such as are significant only in conjunction with other words; or what are called *Substantives*, *Attributives*, and *Connectives*. Thus in the following sentence, "The diligent boy reads the lesson carefully in the school, and at home," the words *boy*, *lesson*, *school*, *home*, are the names we give to the things spoken of; *diligent*, *reads*, *carefully*, express what is affirmed concerning the boy; *the*, *in*, *and*, *at*, are only significant when joined with the other words of the sentence.

All words whatever are either *simple* or *compound*, *primitive* or *derivative*.

The division of words into simple and compound, is called their *Figure*; into primitive and derivative, their *Species* or kind.

A simple word is that which is not made up of more than one; as, *pius*, pious; *ëgò*, I; *dòceo*, I teach.

A compound word is that which is made up of two or more words; or of one word and some syllable added; as, *impìus* impious; *dëdòceo*, I unteach; *ëgòmet*, I myself.

A primitive word is that which comes from no other; as, *pius*, pious; *disco*, I learn; *dòceo*, I teach.

A derivative word is that which comes from another word; as, *piëtàs*, piety; *doctrìna*, learning.

The different classes into which we divide words, are called *Parts of Speech*.

### PARTS OF SPEECH.

The parts of speech in Latin are eight; 1. *Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle*; declined: 2. *Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, and Conjunction*; undeclined.

In English the adjective and participle are not declined.

Those words or parts of speech are said to be *declined*, which receive different changes, particularly on the end, which is called the *Termination* of words.

The changes made upon words are by grammarians called *Accidents*.

Of old, all words which admit of different terminations were said to be declined. But *Declension* is now applied only to nouns. The changes made upon the verb are called *Conjugation*.

The English language has one part of speech more than the Latin, namely, the **ARTICLE**.

The *article* is a word put before substantive nouns, to point them out, and to shew how far their signification extends.

There are two articles, *a* and *the*: *a* becomes *an* before a vowel, or a silent *h*.

*A* is called the *Indefinite*, *The* the *Definite Article*.

*A* is used to point out one single thing of a kind, without fixing precisely what that thing is: *The* determines what particular thing is meant.

*A man* means simply some one or other of that kind: *the man* signifies that particular man who is spoken of.

The want of the article is a defect in the Latin tongue, and often renders the meaning of nouns undetermined: thus, *filius regis*, may signify, either *a son of a king*, or *a king's son*; or *the son of the king*, or *the king's son*.

The placed before certain common names, marks either a whole kind, or some individual of that kind, with which we are acquainted; as, *the lion, the ox, &c.*

*A* can only be joined to substantive nouns in the singular number; *the* may also be joined to plurals. *A* is likewise used before adjectives which express number, when many are considered as one whole; as, *a thousand men, a few, a great many men,*

*The* is likewise applied to adjectives and adverbs in the comparative or superlative degree, to mark their sense more strongly; as, "*the wiser;*" "*the better;*" "*the more I think of it, the better I like it.*"

## NOUN.

A noun is either substantive or adjective.

The adjective seems to be improperly called *noun*: it is only a word added to a substantive or noun, expressive of its quality; and therefore should be considered as a different part of speech. But as the substantive and adjective together express but one object, and in Latin are declined after the same manner, they have both been comprehended under the same general name.

## SUBSTANTIVE.

A Substantive, or Noun, is the name of any person, place, or thing; as, *boy, school, book.*

Substantives are of two sorts; *proper* and *common* names.

*Proper names* are the names appropriated to individuals; as the names of persons and places; such are *Cæsar, Rome.*

*Common names* stand for whole kinds, containing several sorts; or for sorts, containing many individuals under them; as, *animal, man, beast, fish, fowl, &c.*

Every particular being should have its own proper name; but this is impossible, on account of their innumerable multitude; men have therefore been obliged to give the same common name to such things as agree together in certain respects. These form what is called a *genus*, or kind; a *species*, or sort.

A proper name may be used for a common, and then in English it has the article joined to it; as, when we say of some great conqueror, "*He is an Alexander;*" or, "*The Alexander of his age.*"

To proper and common names may be added a third class of nouns, which mark the names of qualities, and are called *abstract nouns*; as, *hardness, goodness, whiteness, virtue, justice, piety, &c.*

When we speak of things, we consider them as one or more. This is what we call *Number*. When one thing is



spoken of, a noun is said to be of the *singular number*; when two or more, of the *plural*.

Things considered according to their kinds, are either male or female, or neither of the two. Males are said to be of the *masculine gender*; females of the *feminine*; and all other things of the *neuter gender*.

Such nouns as are applied to signify either the male or the female, are said to be of the *common gender*; that is, either masculine or feminine.

Various methods are used, in different languages, to express the different connexions or relations of one thing to another. In the English, and in most modern languages, this is done by prepositions, or particles placed before the substantive; in Latin, by declension, or by different cases; that is, by changing the termination of the noun; as, *rex*, a king, or the king; *rēgis*, of a king, or of the king.

### ENGLISH NOUNS.

In English, nouns have only one case, namely, the *genitive*, or *possessive case*, which is formed from the noun, by adding an *s*, with an apostrophe, or mark to separate it; as, *John's book*, the same with *the book of John*. It was formerly written *Johnis book*

Some have thought the *'s* a contraction for *his*; but improperly; because, instead of *the woman's book*, we cannot say, *the woman his book*. Others have imagined, and with more justice, that by the addition of the *'s* the substantive is changed into a possessive adjective.

When the noun ends in *s*, the sign of the possessive case is sometimes not added; as, *for righteousness sake*; and never to the plural number ending in *s*; as, *on eagles wings*. Perhaps it would be better in the plural when it ends in *s*, always to use the particle and not the possessive form; as, *on the wings of eagles*. Both the sign and the preposition seem sometimes to be used; as, *a soldier of the king's*; but here are two possessives; for it means, *one of the soldiers of the king*.

A singular noun, in English, is made plural by adding to it *s*, or, for the sake of sound, *es*; as, *king, kings*; *church, churches*; *brush, brushes*; *witness, witnesses*; *fox, foxes*; *leaf, leaves*; in which last and in many others, *f* is also turned into *v*, to make the pronunciation easier.

Several plurals are formed by adding *en*; as *ox, oxen*. Of these some are contracted, or interpose a letter on account of sound; as, *brethren, children, kins, swine, women, men, &c* for *brotheren, soweren, &c*. Instead of *kins* we now commonly say *cows*; and we seldom use *brethren*, but in solemn discourse.

Nouns in *y* change *y* into *ie*; as, *cherry, cherries*; *city, cities*. *Cherry's, city's, &c*. are in the possessive case.

Some nouns form the plural more irregularly; as, *mouse, mice*; *louse, lice*; *tooth, teeth*; *foot, feet*; *goose, geese, &c*.

The words *sheep, deer*, are the same in both numbers.

Some nouns, from the nature of the things which they express, are used only in the singular, or in the plural form; as, *wheat, pitch, gold, sloth, pride, &c.* and *bellows, scissors, lungs, bowels, &c.*

Several nouns in English are changed in their termination, to express gender; as, *prince, princess; actor, actress; lion, lioness; hero, heroine; duke, duchess.*

The English language has a peculiar advantage over most other languages, in making all words whatever, except the names of males and females, to be of the neuter gender: unless when inanimate beings are personified, or considered as persons; as, when we say of the sun, *he shines*; or of the moon, *she shines.*

### LATIN NOUNS.

A Latin noun is declined by *Genders, Cases, and Numbers.*

There are three genders, *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.*

The cases are six, *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.*

There are two numbers, *Singular and Plural.*

There are five different ways of varying or declining nouns, called the *first, second, third, fourth, and fifth declensions.*

Cases are certain changes made upon the termination of nouns, to express the relation of one thing to another.

They are so called, from *cādo*, to fall; because they fall, as it were, from the nominative; which is therefore named *cāsus rectus*, the straight case; and the other cases, *cāsus obliqui*, the oblique cases.

The different declensions may be distinguished from one another by the termination of the genitive singular. The first declension has *æ* diphthong; the second has *i*; the third has *is*; the fourth has *us*; and the fifth has *ei* in the genitive.

Although Latin nouns be said to have six cases, yet none of them have that number of different terminations, both in the singular and plural.

#### GENERAL RULES of Declension.

I. Nouns of the neuter gender have the *Accusative and Vocative* like the *Nominative*, in

both numbers; and these cases in the plural end always in *a*.

2. The Dative and Ablative plural end always alike.

3. The Vocative for the most part in the singular, and always in the plural, is the same with the Nominative.

Greek nouns in *s* generally lose *s* in the Vocative, as, *Thom-is*, *Thoma*; *Anchis-es*, *Anchise*; *Pāris*, *Par*; *Panth-us*, *Panthu*; *Pallas*, *-antis*; *Palla*, names of men. But nouns in *es* of the third declension oftener retain the *s*; as, *ō Achil-es*, rarely *-e*; *ō Socrātes*, seldom *-e*: and sometimes nouns in *is* and *as*; as, *ō Thais*; *Mysis*, *Pallas*, *-adis*, the goddess *Minerva*, &c.

4. Proper names for the most part want the plural:

Unless several of the same name be spoken of; as, *duōdēcim Cæsāres*, the twelve Cæsars.

The cases of Latin nouns are thus expressed in English;

1. With the indefinite article, *a king*.

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	<i>a king</i> ,	Nom.	<i>kings</i> ,
Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>a king</i> ,	Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>kings</i> ,
Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>a king</i> ,	Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>kings</i> ,
Acc.	<i>a king</i> ,	Acc.	<i>kings</i> ,
Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>king</i> ,	Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>kings</i> ,
Abl. <i>with, from, in, by, a king</i> :		Abl. <i>with, from, in, by, kings</i> :	

2. With the definite article, *the king*.

	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	<i>the king</i> ,	Nom.	<i>the kings</i> ,
Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>the king</i> ,	Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>the kings</i> ,
Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>the king</i> ,	Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>the kings</i> ,
Acc.	<i>the king</i> ,	Acc.	<i>the kings</i> ,
Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>king</i> ,	Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>kings</i> ,
Abl. <i>with, from, in, by, the king</i> :		Abl. <i>with, from, in, by, the kings</i> :	

#### GENDER.

Nouns in Latin are said to be of different genders, not merely from the distinction of sex, but chiefly from their being joined with an adjective of one termination, and not of another. Thus, *penna*, a pen, is said to be feminine, because it is always joined with an adjective in that termination which is applied to females; as, *bōna penna*, a good pen, and not *hōnus penna*.

The gender of nouns which signify things without life, depends on their termination, and different declension.

To distinguish the different genders, grammarians make use of the pronoun *hic*, to mark the masculine; *hæc*, the feminine; and *hoc*, the neuter.

GENERAL RULES concerning Gender.

1. Names of males are masculine; as, *Hômêrus*, Homer; *pâter*, a father; *poëta*, a poet.

2. Names of females are feminine; as, *Hêlêna*, Helen; *mûliêr*, a woman; *ûxor*, a wife; *mâter*, a mother; *sôrôr*, a sister; *Tellus*, the goddess of the earth.

3. Nouns which signify either the male or female, are of the common gender; that is, either masculine or feminine; as,

*Hic bos*, an ox; *hæc bos*, a cow; *hic pârens*, a father; *hæc pârens*, a mother.

The following list comprehends most nouns of the common gender.

Adôlescens, } a young man,	Conviva, a guest.	Obses, an hostage.
Juvenis, } or woman.	Custos, a keeper.	Patruelis, a cousin-german,
Affinis, a relation by marriage.	Dux, a leader.	by the father's side.
Antistes, a prelate.	Hæres, an heir.	Præs, a surety.
Auctor, an author.	Hostis, an enemy.	Princeps, a prince or priest.
Augur, a soothsayer.	Infans, an infant.	cess.
Canis, a dog or bitch.	Interpres, an interpreter.	Sacerdos, a priest or priest.
Civis, a citizen.	Judex, a judge.	ess.
Cliens, a client.	Martyr, a martyr.	Sus, a swine.
Comes, a companion.	Miles, a soldier.	Testis, a witness.
Conjux, a husband or wife.	Municipes, a burghers.	Vates, a prophet.
	Nemo, no body.	Vindex, an avenger.*

But *antistes*, *cliens*, and *hospes*, also change their termination to express the feminine; thus, *antistita*, *clienta*, *hospita*: in the same manner with *leo*, a lion; *leona*, a lioness; *equus*, *æqua*; *mulus*, *mûla*; and many others.

There are several nouns, which, though applicable to both sexes, admit only of a masculine adjective; as, *advêna*, a stranger; *agricôla*, a husbandman; *assecla*, an attendant; *accôla*, a neighbour; *exul*, an exile; *latro*, a robber; *fur*, a thief; *optifex*, a mechanic; &c. There are others, which, though applied to persons, are, on account of their termination, always neuter; as, *scortum*, a courtesan; *mancipium*, *servitium*, a slave, &c.

In like manner, *opêræ*, slaves or day-labourers; *vigilia*,

\* *Conjux, atque parens, infans, patruelis, et hæres.*

*Affinis, vindex, judex, dux, miles, et hostis.*

*Augur, et antistes, juvenis, conviva, sacerdos,*

*Municipes, vates adolescens, civis, et auctor.*

*Custos, nemo, comes, testis, sus, borque, canisque,*

*Interpresque, cliens, princeps, præs, martyr, et vigilia.*

*excubiæ*, watches; *noxæ*, guilty persons; though applied to men, are always feminine

## OBSERVATIONS.

Obs 1. The names of brute animals commonly follow the gender of their termination.

Such are the names of wild beasts, birds, fishes, and insects, in which the distinction of sex is either not easily discerned, or seldom attended to. Thus, *passer*, a sparrow, is masculine, because nouns in *er* are masculine; so *âquila*, an eagle, is feminine, because nouns in *a*, of the first declension are feminine. These are called *Epicene*, or promiscuous nouns. When any particular sex is marked, we usually add the word *mas* or *femina*; as, *mas passer*, a male sparrow; *femina passer*, a female sparrow.

Obs. 2. A proper name, for the most part, follows the gender of the general name under which it is comprehended.

Thus, the names of months, winds, rivers and mountains, are masculine; because *mensis*, *ventus*, *mons*, and *fluvius*, are masculine; as, *hic Aprilis*, April; *hic Aquilo*, the north wind; *hic Africus*, the south-west wind; *hic Tiberis*, the river Tiber; *hic Othrys*, a hill in Thessaly. But many of these follow the gender of their termination; as, *hæc Matrôna*, the river Marne in France; *hæc Ætna*, a mountain in Sicily; *hoc Sôracte*, a hill in Italy.

In like manner, the names of countries, towns, trees, and ships, are feminine, because *terra* or *régio*, *urbs*, *arbor*, and *nâvis*, are feminine: as, *hæc Egyptus*, Egypt; *Sâmos*, an island of that name; *Cörinthus*, the city of Corinth, *pâmus*, an apple-tree; *Centaurus*, the name of a ship: Thus also the names of poems, *hæc Ilias*, *-ados*, and *Odyssæa*, the two poems of Homer; *hæc Ænëis*, *idos*, a poem of Virgil's; *hæc Eunûchus*, one of Terence's Comedies.

The gender, however, of many of these depends on the termination; thus, *hic Pontus*, a country of that name; *hic Sulmo*, *-önis*; *Pessinus*, *-untis*; *Hydrus*, *-untis*, names of towns; *hæc Persis*, *-idis*, the kingdom of Persia; *Carthâgo*, *-inis*, the city Carthage: *hoc Albion*, Britain: *hoc Cære*, *Reâte*, *Præneste*, *Tibur*, *Ilium*, names of towns. But some of these are also found in the feminine; as, *Gelida Præneste*, Juvenal, iii. 190; *Alta Ilion*, Ovid. Met. xiv. 466.

The following names of trees are masculine, *oleaster*, *-tri*, a wild olive-tree; *rhamnus*, the white bramble.

The following are masculine or feminine; *cytisus*, a kind of shrub; *rûbus*, the bramble-bush; *larix*, the larch-tree;

*lōtus*, the lot-tree; *cypressus*, the cypress-tree. The first two however are oftener masculine; the rest oftener feminine.

Those in *um* are neuter; as, *buxum*, the bush, or box-tree; *ligustrum*, a privet; so likewise are *sūber*, *ēris*, the cork-tree; *stler*, *-ēris*, the osier; *rōbur*, *-ōris*, oak of the hardest kind; *acer*, *-ēris*, the maple-tree.

The place where trees or shrubs grow is commonly neuter; as, *Arbustum*, *quercētum*, *esculētum*, *sālictum*, *frūttētum*, &c. a place where trees, oaks, beeches, willows, shrubs, &c. grow: also the names of fruits and timber; as, *pōmum*, or *mālum*, an apple: *pīrum*, a pear; *ēbēnum*, ebony, &c. But from this rule there are various exceptions.

Obs. 3. Several nouns are said to be of the *doubtful gender*; that is, are sometimes found in one gender, and sometimes in another; as, *dies*, a day, masculine or feminine; *vulgus*, the rabble, masculine or neuter.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns of the first declension end in *a, e, as, es*. Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are of the feminine gender.

The terminations of the different cases are; Nom. and Voc. Sing. *a*; Gen. and Dat. *æ*, diphthong; Acc. *am*; Abl. *â*; Nom. and Voc. Plur. *æ*; Gen. *arum*; Dat. and Abl. *is*; Acc. *as*: thus,

Singular.		Penna, a pen, fem.		Plural.		Terminations.
N. penna,	a pen;	N. pennæ,	pens;	N. pennæ,	pens;	a, æ,
G. pennæ,	of a pen;	G. pennarum,	of pens;	G. pennarum,	of pens;	æ, arum,
D. pennæ,	to a pen;	D. pennis,	to pens;	D. pennis,	to pens;	æ, is,
A. pennam,	a pen;	A. pennas,	pens;	A. pennas,	pens;	am, as,
V. penna,	Open;	V. pennæ,	O pens;	V. pennæ,	O pens;	a, æ,
A. pennâ,	with a pen;	A. pennis,	with pens;	A. pennis,	with pens;	â, is.

In like manner decline,

*Acerra*, a censor.  
*Asta*, the shore  
*Æra*, a period of time.  
*Ærumna*, tail  
*Agvædla*, a husbandman.  
*Ala*, a wing.  
*Aläpa*, a blow.  
*Alauda*, a lark.  
*Alga*, sea-weed  
*Alüta*, tanned leather.  
*Ambrönia*, the food of the gods.  
*Amäta*, an aunt, the father's sister  
*Amphöra*, a cask.  
*Ampulla*, a jug, plur. *bombæ*.

*Amurea*, the lees of oil.  
*Anetha*, an handmaid.  
*Ænehöra*, an tucher.  
*Anguilla*, an eel.  
*Ansa*, a handle.  
*Antenna*, a sail-yard.  
*Antlia*, a pump.  
*Aqua*, water.  
*Æquila*, an eagle.  
*Ala*, an altar.  
*Ærænea*, a splder.  
*Arca*, a chest  
*Ardea*, & *-ædla*, a heron.  
*Arca*, an open place.  
*Ærena*, sand.  
*Argilla*, potter's earth.  
*Arista*, an ear of corn.

*Arha*, an earnest penny.  
*Arvina*, fat  
*Æscia*, an axe.  
*Alliæta*, m. a wrestler.  
*Aula*, a hall.  
*Aura*, a breeze  
*Auriga*, m. a charioteer.  
*Ævâ*, a grandmother.  
*Æxilla*, the arm pit.  
*Bälæna*, a whale.  
*Barba*, a beard.  
*Bellua*, any large beast.  
*Bestia*, a beast.  
*Bëta*, beer, an herb.  
*Bibliöpöla*, a bookseller.  
*Bibliöthëca*, a library.  
*Blatta*, a moth.

- Bractea, a thin leaf of gold.  
 Brassica, collyflower.  
 Brūma, winter.  
 Buba, a bubble, a ball or boss.  
 Byrsa, an ear-hide.  
 Calliga, a kind of shoe set with nails.  
 Caltha, marygold.  
 Calva, & calvaria, a skull.  
 Cālumnia, slander.  
 Cāmēna, a muse, a song.  
 Cāmēra, a vault.  
 Campāna, a bell.  
 Canna, a cane or reed.  
 Candēla, a candle.  
 Capra, a she-goat.  
 Capsa, a coffer.  
 Cārīna, the keel of a ship.  
 Cāsa, a cottage.  
 Castānea, a chestnut.  
 Cātāpulta, an engine to cast darts.  
 Cātēna, a chain.  
 Cātēra, a body of men.  
 Cāthēdra, a chair, a pulpit.  
 Cauda, the tail.  
 Caula, a sheep-cote.  
 Causa, a cause.  
 Cāverna, a cavern.  
 Cāvilla, a banter.  
 Cella, a cell.  
 Cērā, wax.  
 Cērēmonia, a ceremony.  
 Cervisia, ale, beer.  
 Cērusa, white lead, paint.  
 Cētra, a square target.  
 Charta, paper.  
 Chordā, a string.  
 Clēda, a kind of insect.  
 Clēdōna, a stork.  
 Clēdita, hemlock.  
 Cōiūra, an artichoke.  
 Cista, a chest.  
 Cisterna, a cistern.  
 Clithāra, a harp.  
 Cliva, a club.  
 Clepsydra, an hour-glass.  
 Cloāca, a sink.  
 Cochlea, a snail.  
 Cōna, a supper.  
 Cōlumba, a pigeon.  
 Cōma, the hair.  
 Cōmōdia, a comedy.  
 Cōncha, a shell.  
 Cōpia, plenty.  
 Cōpula, a bond.  
 Cōrēgia, a shoe-latchet.  
 Cōrōna, a crown, a circle.  
 Cortina, a cauldron.  
 Costa, a rib.  
 Coxa, the haunch.  
 Crāpula, a surfeit.  
 Crātēra, a cup.  
 Crātēcula, a gridiron.  
 Crēna, a notch.  
 Crēpida, a slipper.  
 Crēta, chalk.  
 Crista, a crest.  
 Crūciēna, a purse.  
 Crusta, & -um, a morsel.  
 Cnēctā, a cushion.  
 Cōlina, a kitchen.  
 Culpa, a fault.
- Cūmēra, a corn basket.  
 Cūpa, a tun.  
 Cūra, care.  
 Cūria, a senate-house.  
 Curgūca, a hedge-sparrow.  
 Cymba, a boat.  
 Dēcēmpēda, a pole of ten feet.  
 Diēta, diet, food.  
 Dōlābra, an axe.  
 Drachma, a drachm, a weight or coin.  
 Epistōla, a letter.  
 Fera, a bait.  
 Faba, a bean.  
 Fābūla, a fable.  
 Fāma, fame.  
 Fārīna, meal.  
 Fascia, a bandage.  
 Fāvilla, embers.  
 Fēnēstra, a window.  
 Fēra, a wild beast.  
 Fērūla, a rod.  
 Festāca, the shoot of a tree.  
 Fibra, a fibre.  
 Fībūla, a clasp.  
 Fideliz, an earthen vessel.  
 Fimbria, a fringe.  
 Fiācula, a bag, or basket.  
 Fistica, a rammer.  
 Fistūla, a pipe.  
 Flamma, a flame.  
 Fōmāna, a woman.  
 Forma, a form.  
 Formica, an ant.  
 Fossa, a ditch.  
 Fōves, a pit.  
 Frāma, a short spear.  
 Fūllca, a sea-fool.  
 Funda, a sting.  
 Furoa, a fork.  
 Fuscina, a trident.  
 Gālēs, an helmet.  
 Gallina, a hen.  
 Gangrena, an eating ulcer.  
 Guza, a treasure.  
 Gumma, a gem.  
 Gēna, the cheek.  
 Gōnista, broom.  
 Gīngiva, the gum.  
 Glōrea, gravel.  
 Glēba, a rod.  
 Gūla, the gullet.  
 Gutta, a drop.  
 Hābēna, a rein.  
 Hāra, a hog-sty.  
 Hārūga, a sacrifice.  
 Hasta, a spear.  
 Hēdēra, ivy.  
 Herba, an herb.  
 Herma, v. -ca, m. a statue of Mercury.  
 Hernia, a rupture.  
 Hīla, a sausage.  
 Hōra, an hour.  
 Hostia, a victim.  
 Hydria, a water-pot.  
 Iactūa, loss.  
 Jānuā, a gate.  
 Idea, a form, an idea.  
 Idiōta, m. an illiterate person.  
 Ignōmīnia, an affront.  
 Illēcebra, an allurements.
- Impēna, expense.  
 Indīgēna, m. a native.  
 Inēdia, hunger.  
 Infūla, a mitre.  
 Inīria, a wrong.  
 Inōpia, want.  
 Inīstā, a fringe.  
 Insūla, an island.  
 Inūla, elecampane, an herb.  
 Invidia, envy.  
 Ira, anger.  
 Juba, the mane.  
 Lācerua, a riding-coat.  
 Lācerua, a lizard.  
 Lāelina, a fringe.  
 Lācryma, a tear.  
 Lactūca, lettuce.  
 Lāchēna, a ditch.  
 Lāgēna, a flagon.  
 Lāma, a ditch.  
 Lāmina, a sorcerer.  
 Lānina, a plate.  
 Lāna, wool.  
 Lancea, a lance or spear.  
 Lānista, m. a fencing-master.  
 Larva, a mask.  
 Lātēra, a lantern.  
 Latrina, a house of office.  
 Lectica, a sedan or chair.  
 Lēna, a band.  
 Lepra, the leprosy.  
 Lībra, a pound.  
 Līgūla, a latchet.  
 Līna, a file.  
 Līnea, a line.  
 Lingua, the tongue.  
 Līra, a ridge or furrow.  
 Lītēra, a letter.  
 Lōbusta, a locust.  
 Lūcēra, a light.  
 Lūna, the moon.  
 Lūclūna, a nightingale.  
 Lymphā, water.  
 Lūra, a tyre.  
 Māchīna, a machine.  
 Maetra, a kneading-trough.  
 Māētia, a stain.  
 Māla, the cheek-bone.  
 Mālācia, a calm.  
 Malva, a mallow.  
 Mamma, a pap.  
 Mānīca, a sleeve.  
 Mantica, a wallet.  
 Mappa, a napkin.  
 Marvārīta, a pearl.  
 Marra, a mattock.  
 Massa, a lump.  
 Mātēria, matter, stuff, timber.  
 Mātērtēra, the mother's sister.  
 Māta, a mat, or mattress.  
 Mātūla, a chamber-pot.  
 Mēdulla, marrow.  
 Membriāna, a thin skin, a film; parchment.  
 Mēmōria, memory.  
 Mensa, a table.  
 Mensūra, a measure.  
 Morda, dung.  
 Mērga, a pitch-fork.  
 Mētūla, a blackbird.  
 Mētā, a goal.

- Mētāphōra, a trope.  
 Mica, a crumb.  
 Mītra, a mitre.  
 Mōla, a mill.  
 Mōnēdōlla, a jack daw.  
 Mōnētā, money.  
 Mōra, a delay.  
 Mulcta, a fine.  
 Mūrēna, a lamprey.  
 Māria, pickle, brine.  
 Mūm, a muse.  
 Mūsa, a fly.  
 Mustēla, a wasel.  
 Myrrha, myrrh.  
 Mýrica, a tamarisk.  
 Mysta, v. -es, m. a priest.  
 Nassa, a net.  
 Nausea, sea sickness.  
 Nauta m. a mariner.  
 Nīdēdōlla, a field mouse.  
 Noenia, a funeral song.  
 Norma, a rule.  
 Nōvācēla, a razor.  
 Nōverca a step-mother.  
 Nympha, a nymph.  
 Ocea, an harrow.  
 Ocrea, a boot.  
 Oda, v. -e, an ode, or song.  
 Ossa, a morsel.  
 Olea, an olive.  
 Olla, a pot.  
 Ora, a coat.  
 Orbita, a path.  
 Orca, a jar.  
 Orchestra, the stage, or the place next it, where the nobles sat.  
 Ostrea, an oyster.  
 Penūla, a riding-coat.  
 Pāgina, a page.  
 Pāla, a shovel.  
 Pālēstra, a wrestling, or place for it.  
 Pāles, chaff.  
 Pālindōdia, a recantation.  
 Pallā, a large gown.  
 Palma, the palm.  
 Palpebra, the eye-lid.  
 Pāpilla, the nipple.  
 Pāpūla, a pimple.  
 Parābōla, comparing things together.  
 Parmā, a shield.  
 Parra, a jay.  
 Pātēra, a goblet.  
 Pausa, a stop or pause.  
 Pēdica, a fetter.  
 Pēnūla, a mantle.  
 Pēnūria, want.  
 Pēra, a purse.  
 Pēra, a perch.  
 Pērfūga, m. a deserter.  
 Pergāmēna, sc. charta, parchment.  
 Pēra, a gammon of bacon.  
 Pērdōna, a wash.  
 Pērtica, a pole.  
 Petra, a rock.  
 Phālārica, a long spear.  
 Phālētra, a gulf.  
 Phāsīāna, sc. avis, a pheasant.  
 Phiala, a vital.  
 Phūlōnēla, a nightingale.  
 Phūlōra, the linden tree, a leaf of paper.  
 Phōca, a sea-calf.  
 Pīca, a magpy.  
 Pīla, a ball.  
 Pīla, a pillar.  
 Pīncerna m. a butler.  
 Pīna, a fin, a wing.  
 Pīrāta, m. a pirate.  
 Pīscīna, a fish-pond.  
 Pītuīta, phlegm.  
 Plācenta, a cake.  
 Plāga, a climate.  
 Plāga, a blow.  
 Plānta, a plant.  
 Plātēa, or Plātēa, a broad street.  
 Plūma, a feather.  
 Plūvia, rain.  
 Pōdsgra, the gout.  
 Pōna, a punishment.  
 Poēta, m. a poet.  
 Poētā, a poetess.  
 Pōleuta, malt.  
 Pōstīca, postcy.  
 Pōmpa, a procession.  
 Pōpa, m. a priest who slew the sacrifice.  
 Pōpīna, a tavern.  
 Porta, a gate.  
 Præda, plunder.  
 Prærogātiva, sc. tribus, v. centuria that voted first.  
 Præcella, a storm.  
 Prōra, the prow.  
 Prōra, prose.  
 Prōmpia, a race.  
 Prūna, hoar frost.  
 Prūna, a burning coal.  
 Psaltria, a music girl.  
 Paella, a girl.  
 Pugna, a battle.  
 Pulpa, the pulp.  
 Pūpūla, the apple of the eye.  
 Purpūra, purple.  
 Pustūla, a blister.  
 Pyra, a funeral pile.  
 Quadra, v. -um, a square.  
 Hābūla, m. a wrangler.  
 Rāna, a frog.  
 Rēpulsā, a refusal.  
 Resīna, resin.  
 Rhēda, a chariot.  
 Rīma, a chink.  
 Rīpa, a bank.  
 Rīxa, a scold.  
 Rōsa, a rose.  
 Rōta, a wheel.  
 Rūga, a wrinkle.  
 Ruīna, a downfall.  
 Runcīna, a saw or plane.  
 Rūta, rue.  
 Sāburra, distast.  
 Sāga, a sorceress.  
 Sāgīna, cramming.  
 Sāgīta, an arrow.  
 Sālebra, a ragged way.  
 Sālīnena, lavender.  
 Sālīva, spittle.  
 Salpa, stock-fish.  
 Sambūca, an harp or engine of war.  
 Sanctīmōnia, devotions.  
 Sandūpīla, a tier.  
 Sanna, a staff.  
 Sarcīna, a burden.  
 Sārīna, a long spear.  
 Satrāpa, v. -es, m. a Persian governor.  
 Sātīra, a satyr.  
 Scāla, a ladder.  
 Scandūta, a lath to cover house.  
 Scāpha, a boat.  
 Scāpūla, the shoulder.  
 Scēna, a stage.  
 Schēda, a sheet or scroll.  
 Schōla, a school.  
 Scintilla, a spark.  
 Scritūtra, a tart or wafer.  
 Scrofula, the king's evil.  
 Scurra, m. a buffoon.  
 Scūtīca, a scourge.  
 Scyphūla, a kind of serpent, or round staff.  
 Scībra, half a pound.  
 Sēmīhōra, half an hour.  
 Sēmīta, a path.  
 Sententia, an opinion.  
 Sentīna, a sink.  
 Sēra, a lock.  
 Serra, a saw.  
 Sequīhōra, an hour and a half.  
 Sēta, a bristle.  
 Sibylla, a prophetess.  
 Sica, a dagger.  
 Sīlīqua, an husk.  
 Silva, a wood.  
 Simia, an ape.  
 Sīmīlia, flour.  
 Sītūla, a bucket.  
 Sōcordia, stoth.  
 Sōlea, a shoe.  
 Sōphīsta, v. -es, m. a school.  
 Spēcūla, a watch tower.  
 Spēlūnca, a cave.  
 Sphēra, a sphere.  
 Spīca, an ear of corn.  
 Spīna, the back bone.  
 Spīra, a wreath.  
 Sponda, a baddest.  
 Spongia, a sponge.  
 Sponsa, a bride.  
 Spōta, a basket.  
 Spūma, foam.  
 Squāma, a scale.  
 Squilla, a prawn or shrimp.  
 Stātēra, a balance.  
 Stātua, a statue.  
 Stella, a star.  
 Stēpūla, stubble.  
 Stīra, an icicle.  
 Stīra, the plough tail.  
 Stūla, a gown.  
 Strangūria, the making of water with great pain.  
 Strēna, a new year's gift.  
 Strūma, a botch.  
 Stūpa, tow.  
 Subīca, a pile.  
 Sūbūcūla, a skirt.  
 Sūbūla, an owl.  
 Sūcēdia, a slice of bacon.  
 Sūmma, a sum, the whole.  
 Sūpērbīa, pride.



Sūra, <i>the calf of the leg.</i>	Tonstrīna, <i>a barber's shop.</i>	Vappa, <i>palled wine, a spend- thrift.</i>
Sutrīna, <i>sc. taberna, a shoe- maker's shop.</i>	Trāgōdīa, <i>a tragedy.</i>	Vena, <i>a vein</i>
Sūtūra, <i>a seam.</i>	Trāgūla, <i>a javelin with a barbed head.</i>	Vēnia, <i>leave</i>
Syeōphanta, <i>m. a sharper.</i>	Trāhea, <i>a sledge or dray</i>	Verna, <i>m. an homēborn slave.</i>
Syllāba, <i>a syllable.</i>	Trāma, <i>the wolf</i>	Verrūca, <i>a wart</i>
Symbōla, <i>a club, a share of a reckoning.</i>	Trocolea, <i>a pulley</i>	Vēsica, <i>the bladder</i>
Symphōnia, <i>harmony.</i>	Trulla, <i>a trowel</i>	Vespa, <i>a wasp</i>
Syngōphā, <i>a bill or bond.</i>	Trūtina, <i>a balance</i>	Via, <i>a way</i>
Tāberna, <i>a shop.</i>	Tūba, <i>a trumpet</i>	Vicia, <i>a vetch or tare</i>
Tābūla, <i>a table.</i>	Tūnica, <i>a waistcoat</i>	Victima, <i>a victim</i>
Tāda, <i>a torch.</i>	Tueba, <i>a crowd</i>	Victōria, <i>a conquest</i>
Tāenia, <i>a ribbon.</i>	Turma, <i>a troop</i>	Villa, <i>a country seat</i>
Teehna, <i>a trick or wile.</i>	Ulna, <i>an ell</i>	Vindēmīa, <i>vintage</i>
Tēgūla, <i>a tile.</i>	Ūlūla, <i>an owl</i>	Vindieta, <i>vengeance; a rod laid on the head of slaves when freed</i>
Tēia, <i>a web.</i>	Ulva, <i>sedge</i>	Viōla, <i>a violet</i>
Tērebra, <i>a wrinkle.</i>	Umbra, <i>a shade</i>	Vipera, <i>a viper</i>
Terra, <i>the earth.</i>	Unda, <i>a wave</i>	Virga, <i>a rod</i>
Tessera, <i>a dye.</i>	Ungūla, <i>a nail, the hoof</i>	Vita, <i>life</i>
Testa, <i>an earthen pot.</i>	Ūpūpa, <i>the houpoos, a bird</i>	Vitta, <i>a fillet</i>
Textrina, <i>a weaver's shop.</i>	Urīna, <i>urine</i>	Viverra, <i>a ferret</i>
Theca, <i>a case.</i>	Urna, <i>an urn</i>	Vōia, <i>the palm of the hand</i>
Tibia, <i>a pipe, the leg.</i>	Urūca, <i>a nettle</i>	Zōna, <i>a gir'dle, a zone</i>
Tilia, <i>the linden tree.</i>	Ūva, <i>a grape</i>	
Tinea, <i>a moth.</i>	Vacca, <i>a cow</i>	
	Vāgīna, <i>a scabbard</i>	

## EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine: *Hadria*, the Hadriatic sea; *cōmēta*, a comet; *planēta*, a planet; and sometimes *talpa*, a mole; and *dāma*, a fallow-deer. *Pascha* the passover, is neuter.

Exc. 2. The ancient Latins sometimes formed the genitive singular in *āi*; thus, *aula*, a hall, gen. *aulāi*; and sometimes likewise in *as*; which form the compounds of *fūmilia* usually retain; as, *māter-fūmilia*, the mistress of a family; genit. *matris familia*; nom. plur. *matres-familias*, or *matres-familiarum*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have more frequently *abus* in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them in these cases from masculines in *us* of the second declension:

Anīma, <i>the soul, the life</i>	Filia, & Nāta, <i>a daughter</i>
Dea, <i>a goddess</i>	Liberta, <i>a freed woman</i>
Equa, <i>a mare</i>	Mūla, <i>a she-mule</i>
Fāmūla, <i>a female servant</i>	

Thus, *deabus, filiabus*, rather than *filiis*, &c.

## GREEK NOUNS.

Nouns in *as*, *es*, and *e* of the first declension, are Greek. Nouns in *as* and *es* are masculine: nouns in *e* are feminine.

Nouns in *as* are declined like *penna*; only they have *am* or *an* in the accusative; as, *Ænēas*, Æneas, the name of a man; gen. *Ænēæ*; dat. *-æ*; acc. *-am* or *an*; voc. *-æ*; abl. *ā*. So *Bōreas*, *-ææ*, the north wind; *Tiāras*, *-æ*, a turban. In prose they have commonly *am*, but in poetry oftener *an*, in the accusative. Greek nouns in *a* have sometimes also *an* in the acc. in poetry; as, *Ossa*, *-am*, or *-an*, the name of a mountain.

Nouns in *es*, and *e* are thus declined :

*Anchises*, *Anchises*, the name of a man.

*Singular.*

*Nom.* *Anchises*, *Acc.* *Anchisen*,

*Gen.* *Anchisæ*, *Voc.* *Anchise*,

*Dat.* *Anchisæ*, *Abl.* *Anchise*.

*Pēnēlope*, *Penelope*, the name of a woman.

*Singular.*

*Nom.* *Pēnēlope*, *Acc.* *Penelopen*,

*Gen.* *Penelopes*, *Voc.* *Penelope*,

*Dat.* *Penelope*, *Abl.* *Penelope*.

These nouns, being proper names, want the plural, unless when several of the same name are spoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of *penna*.

The Latins frequently turn Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *a*; as, *Atrida*, for *Atrides*; *Persa* for *Perses*, a Persian; *Geōmetra*, for *-tres*, a Geometrician; *Circa*, for *Circe*; *Epitōma*, for *-me*, an abridgment; *Grammātica*, for *-ce*, grammar; *Rhētōrica*, for *-ce*, oratory. So *Clinia*, for *Clinias*, &c. The accusative of nouns in *es* and *e* is found sometimes in *em*.

*Note.* We sometimes find the genit. plural contracted; as, *Cælicidiūm*, for *Cælicolorum*; *Enēddam*, for *-orum*.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

Nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, *um*; *os*, *on*.

Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

Nouns of the second declension have the gen. sing. in *i*; the dat. and abl. in *o*; the acc. in *um*; the voc. like the nom. (But nouns in *us* make the vocative in *e*.) The nom. and voc. plur. in *i*, or *a*; the gen. in *orum*; the dat. and abl. in *is*; and the acc. in *os*, or *a*; as,

*Gēner*, a son-in-law, masc.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	Terminations.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>gēner</i> ,	<i>Nom.</i> <i>gēneri</i> ,	<i>er</i> , <i>ir</i> , <i>us</i> , <i>i</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i> <i>genēri</i> ,	<i>Gen.</i> <i>generōrum</i> ,	<i>i</i> , <i>orum</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i> <i>genero</i> ,	<i>Dat.</i> <i>generis</i> ,	<i>o</i> , <i>is</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i> <i>generum</i> ,	<i>Acc.</i> <i>generos</i> ,	<i>um</i> , <i>os</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i> <i>gener</i> ,	<i>Voc.</i> <i>generi</i> ,	<i>er</i> , <i>ir</i> , <i>e</i> , <i>i</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i> <i>genero</i> .	<i>Abl.</i> <i>generis</i> .	<i>o</i> , <i>is</i> .

After the same manner decline *sōcer*, *-ēri*, a father-in-law; *puer*, *-ēri*, a boy: So *Furcifer*, a villain; *Luctifer*, the morning star; *adulter*, an adulterer; *armiger*, an armour-bearer; *presbyter*, an elder; *Mulciber*, a name of the god Vulcan; *vesper*

the evening; and *Iber*, -*eri*, a Spaniard, the only noun in *er* which has the gen. long, and its compound *Celtiber*, -*eri* : Also *vir*, *viri*, a man, the only noun in *ir*; and its compounds, *Lēvir*, a brother-in-law; *Semivir*, *diumvir*, *triumvir*, &c. And likewise *Satur*, -*ūri*, full, (of old, *satūrus*) an adjective.

But most nouns in *er* lose the *e* in the genitive; as,  
*Ager*, a field, masc.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. <i>āger</i> ,	Nom. <i>agri</i> ,
Gen. <i>agri</i> ,	Gen. <i>agrōrum</i> ,
Dat. <i>agro</i> ,	Dat. <i>agris</i> ,
Acc. <i>agrum</i> ,	Acc. <i>agros</i> ,
Voc. <i>ager</i> ,	Voc. <i>agri</i> ,
Abl. <i>agro</i> .	Abl. <i>agris</i> .

In like manner decline,

<i>Āper</i> , a wild boar.	<i>Cōlūber</i> , &c. - <i>bra</i> , a serpent.	<i>Māgister</i> , a master.
<i>Arbiter</i> , (&c. - <i>tra</i> ), a judge.	<i>Culter</i> , the coulter of a plough, a knife.	<i>Minister</i> , a servant.
<i>Auster</i> , the south wind	<i>Fāber</i> , a workman.	<i>Onāger</i> , a wild ass.
<i>Cancer</i> , a crab-fish.		<i>Scalper</i> , a lancet.
<i>Cāper</i> , an he goat.		

Also *liber*, the bark of a tree, or a book, which has *libri*; but *liber*, free, an adjective, and *Liber*, a name of Bacchus, the god of wine, have *liberi*. So likewise proper names, *Alexander*, *Evander*, *Periander*, *Mēnander*, *Teucer*, *Mēleāger*, &c. gen. *Alexandri*, *Evandri*, &c.

*Dōminus*, a lord, masc.

Sing.	Plural.
Nom. <i>dōminus</i> ,	Nom. <i>dōmini</i> ,
Gen. <i>domini</i> ,	Gen. <i>dominorum</i> ,
Dat. <i>domino</i> ,	Dat. <i>dominis</i> ,
Acc. <i>dominum</i> ,	Acc. <i>dominos</i> ,
Voc. <i>domine</i> ,	Voc. <i>domini</i> ,
Abl. <i>domino</i> .	Abl. <i>dominis</i> .

In like manner decline,

<i>Albēus</i> , a table or desk.	<i>Bajūlus</i> , a porter.	<i>Caurus</i> , a west wind.
<i>Ācervus</i> , a heap.	<i>Barrus</i> , an elephant.	<i>Cedrus</i> , f. a cedar tree.
<i>Ācilius</i> , a sting.	<i>Bōlus</i> , a morsel.	<i>Cervus</i> , a stag.
<i>Agnus</i> , a lamb.	<i>Bombus</i> , a buzz.	<i>Cētus</i> , a whale, pl. <i>cete</i> , n. indecl.
<i>Alnus</i> , f. an alder-tree.	<i>Cāballus</i> , a pack horse.	<i>Chirurgus</i> , a surgeon.
<i>Alveus</i> , the channel of a river.	<i>Cācūbus</i> , a kettle.	<i>Chōrus</i> , a choir.
<i>Angūlus</i> , a corner.	<i>Cāchimus</i> , a loud laugh.	<i>Cibus</i> , meat.
<i>Ānīmus</i> , the mind.	<i>Cādus</i> , a wand.	<i>Cincinnati</i> , a curl.
<i>Ānus</i> , a year.	<i>Cādus</i> , a cask.	<i>Cinnus</i> , a medley.
<i>Ānūlus</i> , a ring.	<i>Cālānus</i> , a reed.	<i>Cippus</i> , a grave-stone.
<i>Ānus</i> , a circle.	<i>Cālāthus</i> , a basket.	<i>Circinus</i> , a pair of compasses.
<i>Architectus</i> , a master-build-er.	[ <i>er</i> .] <i>Callus</i> , &c. - <i>um</i> , hard flesh.	<i>Circus</i> & <i>circūlus</i> , a circle.
<i>Argentārius</i> , a banker.	<i>Cāminus</i> , a chimney.	<i>Cirrus</i> , a tuft or curl.
<i>Ārmus</i> , the shoulder of a beast; also of a man.	<i>Campus</i> , a plain.	<i>Citrus</i> , f. a citron tree.
<i>Āsīnus</i> , &c. - <i>a</i> , an ass.	<i>Canthārus</i> , a cup, or jug.	<i>Clathrus</i> , a grate.
<i>Autumnus</i> , the autumn.	<i>Carduus</i> , a thistle.	<i>Clātus</i> , a nail.
<i>Āvus</i> , a grandfather.	<i>Carpus</i> , the tortoise.	<i>Clibānus</i> , a portable oven
<i>Āvuncūlus</i> , the mother's brother.	<i>Carrus</i> , &c. - <i>um</i> , a cart.	<i>Clivus</i> , a hill
	<i>Cāseus</i> , cheese.	
	<i>Cātālogus</i> , a roll.	
	<i>Cātūlus</i> , a platter.	

Clypeus, a round shield	Globus, a globe	Nötus, the south wind
Coecus, v. -um, scarlet	Gräbütus, a couch	Nucleus, a kernel
Cöläphus, a box on the ear.	Gräcülus, a jackdaw	Nümerus, a number
Condus, a butler	Grämus, a hillock	Numerius, a piece of money
Condyliis, the knuckle	Guttus, a cruet or vial	Nuntius, a messenger
Congius, a gallon	Cyrus, a circle	Öbbüis, a farthing
Constrinuis, a constrain-ger- man by the mother's side.	Hædus, a kid	Oceänus, the ocean
Contus, a long pole	Hämuis, a book	Oculus, the eye
Conus, a cone	Häriüis, a dinner	Oreus, hell
Cöphüis, a basket	Hærus, a master	Ornus, f. a wild ash
Cöquus, a cook	Hespërus, the evening	Ostræismas, a voting with shells
Coruus, f. the cornel tree	Hinnäicus, a young hind or fawn	Pædägögis, a servant who attended boys
Corvus, a raven	Hinnüs, a mule	Pägis, a canon or village
Cörylus, f. a hazel-tree	Hircus, a goat	Pälus, a stake
Cörymbus, a bunch of ivy berries	Hortus, a garden	Pannus, cloth
Cöryphæus, a flag-leader	Hömmërus, a shoulder	Pärästus, a flatterer
Cörytus, or -os, a box-case	Hürus, a water serpent	Pardus, a panther
Cöthurnus, a buskin	Intertrincius, a go-between	Päröchus, an entertainer
Cäbüs, a cubit	Ischius, a neck of land be- tween two seas	Patruus, the father's brother
Cæcullus, a hood	Juncus, a bulrush	Patrönuis, a patron
Cæcillus vel cæcülus, a cuc- koo	Jürvëus, a bullock	Pëdicëius, a louse
Cälus, a leathern bag	Läbrynthus, a maze	Pivësius, a bolt [hat
Culmus, a stalk	Läcërtus, the arm	Pëiärus, a broad brimmed
Cülullus, a pot or jug	Länius, a butcher	Phärus, or -os, a watch-tower
Cümölus, an heap	Läqueus, a noose	Philöphäus, a lover of wis- dom
Cäneus, a wedge	Lecius, a couch	Phæbus, poet the sun
Cünicöilus, a rabbit	Lëgätus, an ambassador	Physiöus, an inquirer nature
Cyätus, a cup or glass	Lëgüleus, an ignorant law- yer, a pettifogger	Picus, a woodpecker
Cygnus, a swan	Lëthargus, the lethargy	Pileus, a hat
Cylindrus, a roller	Limbus, a selvedge	Pilus, a hair
Dialögis, a discourse be- tween two or more	Limus, stone	Pirus, f. a pear-tree
Digitus, a finger	Litius, a crooked staff	Plägiarius, a plagiarist, a man-stealer; or one who steals from others books
Discus, a quill	Litëus, a sacred grove	Plänus, a vagrant, a beggar
Divus, a god	Lumbriëus, an earth-worm	Plätus, a pent house, a press for books
Dölus, deceit	Lumbus, the loin	Pöius, the pole, heaven
Dümus, a bush	Läpus, a wolf	Pontus, the sea,
Echinus, an urchin	Ljehnus, a lamp	Pöpiöus, a people
Elëgis, an elegy	Mæcus, a magician	Pöpiöus, f. a poplar-tree
Ephëbus, a youth	Malkeus, a mullet	Porcus, a hog
Epilögis, a conclusion	Mälus, the mast of a ship	Porcus, a leak
Episcöpus, an overseer, a bishop	Mälus, f. an apple-tree	Prinälpius, the chief centur- ion
Equüleus, an instrument of torture	Mannus, a little horse	Privignus, a step-son
Equus, an horse	Mäthëmätëus, a mathemati- cian	Pröcus, a suitor
Erëbus, hell	Mëdiastinuis, a slave, a drudge	Prömus, a steward
Eurus, the east wind	Mëdëus, a physician	Prünus, f. a pum-tree
Fägis, f. a beech-tree	Mendëus, a beggar	Püttäcus, a parrot
Fämülus, a man servant	Mergus, a cormorant	Pugnus, the fist
Fävönias, the west wind	Milvus, a kite	Pullus, a chicken
Fävus, an honey comb	Mimus, a mimic	Pulvinus, a pillow
Figülus, a potter	Mödius, a bushel	Pöpillus, an orphan
Fiscus, the exchequer	Mödius, a manner	Pöpus, a young child, a babe
Floccus, a lock of wool	Möechus, an adulterer	Pütëus, a well
Flüvius, a river	Mörus, f. a mulberry-tree	Quälus & quäsilus, a basket
Föcus, an hearth	Möcus, the slish of the nose, snout	Räcëmus, a cluster of grapes
Fraxinus, f. an ash-tree	Möllus, a mullet fish	Rädius, a ray
Frisülus, a dice-box	Möllus, & -a, a mule	Rämus, a branch
Fücus, a drone bee, paint	Mörus, a wall	Rëmus, an oar
Fümus, smoke	Möscus, moss	Rhombus, a turbot
Fünambülus, a rope-dancer	Myrtus, f. a myrtle-tree	RhönCUS, a starting
Fundus, a farm	Nævus, a spot	Risëus, a trunk
Fungus, a mushroom	Nänus, a dwarf	Rivus, a rivulet
Furnus, an oven	Närus, the nose	Rögis, a funeral pile
Füsus, a spindle	Nervus, a string	Rythmus, metre rhyme
Gallus, a cock	Nidos, a nest	Sæcus, a sack
Gärüis, a porter	Nimbus, a cloud	Sarcöphägis, a stone
Gibbus, a swelling	Nödnus, a knot	
Gibdius, a sword	Nöthus, a bastard	

<i>which dead bodies were in- closed</i>	Stómácheus, <i>the stomach</i>	Tórus, <i>a coach</i>
Sátýrus, <i>a satyr, a kind of dæmon</i>	Strápus, <i>a thong, a strap</i>	Tríbúlus, <i>a chertle</i>
Scáulus, <i>a boat; a piece of wood where the oars hung</i>	Stýlus, <i>a style, or iron pen to write with on waxen tables</i>	Triumphus, <i>a triumph</i>
Scápus, <i>a stalk, a shaft or shank</i>	Súbuleus, <i>a swine-herd</i>	Tróchus, <i>a top</i>
Scárus, <i>the scar, a fish</i>	Succus, <i>juce</i>	Truncus, <i>the trunk</i>
Scápus, <i>a rush</i>	Suleus, <i>a furrow</i>	Túbus, <i>a tube or pipe</i>
Scárus, <i>a squirrel</i>	Surcúlus, <i>a young twig</i>	Támúlus, <i>a hillock</i>
Scápus, <i>a rock</i>	Súsurrus, <i>a whisper</i>	Turdus, <i>a thrush</i>
Scápus, <i>a mark</i>	Tálus, <i>the ankle, a die</i>	Týrannus, <i>a tyrant</i>
Scápus, <i>a doubt or scruple</i>	Taurus, <i>a bull</i>	Týpus, <i>a figure or type</i>
Scápus, <i>a little stone</i>	Taxus, <i>f. the yew-tree</i>	Ulmus, <i>f. an elm-tree</i>
Scápus, <i>a bowl</i>	Terminus, <i>a bound</i>	Umbilicus, <i>the navel</i>
Servus, <i>a slave</i>	Thálámus, <i>a marriage bed- chamber</i>	Uncus, <i>a hook</i>
Sestertius, <i>two pounds and a half, a sestertius; a Roman coin</i>	Théologus, <i>a divine</i>	Urceus, <i>a pitcher</i>
Sicarius, <i>an assassin</i>	Thésaurus, <i>a treasure</i>	Ursus, <i>a bear</i>
Sinius, &c.-a, <i>an ape</i>	Thólus, <i>the roof of a temple</i>	Urus, <i>a buffalo</i>
Sirius, <i>the dog-star</i>	Thrónus, <i>a royal seat</i>	Vítérus, <i>the womb</i>
Soccus, <i>a kind of shoe</i>	Thýraus, <i>a chorus in ho- nour of Bacchus</i>	Vallus, <i>a stake</i>
Somnus, <i>sleep</i>	Thyrus, <i>a spear wrapt with ivy</i>	Vénéficus, <i>a sorcerer</i>
Sónus, <i>a sound</i>	Titúlus, <i>a title</i>	Ventus, <i>the wind</i>
Sparus, <i>a spear</i>	Tómus, <i>a volume</i>	Vicus, <i>a village, a street</i>
Sponsus, <i>a bridegroom</i>	Tórus, <i>a note in mus'c</i>	Villicus, &c.-a, <i>an overseer of a farm</i>
Stímúlus, <i>a sting, a spur</i>	Tóphus, <i>a gravel-stone</i>	Víllus, <i>shaggy hair</i>
	Tornus, <i>a turner's wheel</i>	Vitellus, <i>the yolk of an egg</i>
		Viricus, <i>a step-father</i>
		Vitúlus, <i>a calf</i>
		Zéphyrus, <i>the west wind</i>

Regnum, *a kingdom neut.*

Sing.

Plur.

Nom. regnum,

Nom. regna,

Gen. regni,

Gen. regnōrum,

Dat. regno,

Dat. regnis,

Acc. regnum,

Acc. regna,

Voc. regnum,

Voc. regna,

Abl. regno.

Abl. regnis.

## In like manner decline,

Xéctum, <i>vinegar</i>	Biennium, <i>two years</i>	Cribrum, <i>a sieve</i>
Xéctum, <i>wool's bane, a poisonous plant</i>	Bráhium, <i>an arm</i>	Cúbeclum, <i>a bed-chamber</i>
Xéctum, <i>a proverb</i>	Bústýrum, <i>buster</i>	Cumínum, <i>cumin, an herb</i>
Admínicúlam, <i>a prep</i>	Caelum, <i>a graving tool</i>	Cymbálum, <i>a cymbal</i>
Adýtum, <i>the most secret part of a temple</i>	Cæmentum, <i>materials for building</i>	Dammum, <i>loss</i>
Album, <i>a register</i>	Cánistrum, <i>a basket</i>	Déitrum, <i>a temple</i>
Allium, <i>garlick</i>	Cápistrum, <i>a halter or mix- le</i>	Démensum, <i>an allowance of meat</i>
Amentum, <i>a thong</i>	Castrum, <i>a castle</i>	Detrímentum, <i>damage</i>
Amúletum, <i>a charm</i>	Centrum, <i>the centre</i>	Díarium, <i>a day's wages</i>
Anéthem, <i>anise</i>	Cérébrum, <i>the brain</i>	Díscéulum, <i>the dawning of day</i>
Antéum, <i>a fore-door</i>	Chírográphum, <i>a handwrit- ing</i>	Díum, poet. <i>the open air</i>
Antrum, <i>a cave</i>	Cíllium, <i>the eye-lashes</i>	Déikura, <i>a cask</i>
Xpium, <i>paraly</i>	Citrum, <i>citron-wood</i>	Démétellum, <i>an abode</i>
Argentum, <i>silver</i>	Clasícum, <i>a trumpet</i>	Dónum, <i>a gift</i>
Argentum, <i>an herd</i>	Cœlum, <i>pl.-i heaven</i>	Doratum, <i>the back</i>
Arrum, &c.-a, <i>a field</i>	Cœnum, <i>mire, dirt</i>	Effúgium, <i>an escape</i>
Astrum, <i>a star</i>	Collóquium, <i>a conference</i>	Electrum, <i>amber</i>
Asylum, <i>a sanctuary</i>	Collum, <i>the neck</i>	Elémentum, <i>an element, a letter</i>
Atrium, <i>a court or hall</i>	Commodum, <i>advantage</i>	Élogium, <i>a brief saying, a tes- timonial in one's praise.</i>
Auleum, <i>tapestry</i>	Confínium, <i>a bound or li- mit</i>	Emblémentum, <i>praise</i>
Aurum, <i>gold</i>	Congítarium, <i>a largess</i>	Empíastrum, <i>a plaster</i>
Auxílium, <i>assistance</i>	Convíclium, <i>a reproach</i>	Empórium, <i>a mart or mar- ket town</i>
Xvírium, <i>a cage</i>	Córium, <i>a hide</i>	Éphippium, <i>a saddle</i>
Balsámum, <i>baím</i>	Costum, <i>spikenard</i>	Építaphium, <i>an inscription on a tomb</i>
Bákrum, <i>an abyss</i>	Crémíem, <i>a dry stick</i>	
Básium, <i>a kiss</i>	Crépusculum, <i>the twilight</i>	
Bellum, <i>war</i>		
Béium, <i>two days</i>		

- Erganstium, a work house.  
 Ervna, *vetches*.  
 Ercedum, a chariot.  
 Everredum, a drag-net.  
 Exemplum, an example.  
 Exilium, destruction.  
 Exordium, a beginning.  
 Fannum, a tempo.  
 Fascinum, witchcraft.  
 Fastigium, the top.  
 Ferculum, a dish of meat.  
 Ferrum, iron.  
 Filum, a thread.  
 Flabellum, a fan.  
 Flagrum & flagellum, a whip.  
 Flammeum, a veil.  
 Fossam, hay.  
 Follum, a leaf.  
 Forum, a market place.  
 Fragum, a strawberry.  
 Fretum, a narrow sea.  
 Frumentum, corn.  
 Frustum, a bit or piece.  
 Fulcrum, a prop.  
 Furtum, theft.  
 Granarium, a granary.  
 Granum, a grain.  
 Graphium, a pencil.  
 Græmium, the bottom.  
 Gymnasium, a place of exercise.  
 Gynæceum, the woman's apartment.  
 Gypsum, plaster.  
 Haustum, a bucket.  
 Helleborum, & -us, hellebore, a plant.  
 Hôrôlogium, any thing that tells the hours.  
 Idolum, an image.  
 Idyllium, a pastoral poem.  
 Imperium, command.  
 Inceptum, an enterprise.  
 Indicium, a discovery.  
 Indium, a shirt.  
 Ingenuum, wit, genius.  
 Initium, a beginning.  
 Intervallum, distance between.  
 Iudicium, judgment.  
 Jugulum, the throat.  
 Jugum, a yoke, the ridge of a hill.  
 Jurgium, a quarrel.  
 Jussum, an order.  
 Justium, a vacation.  
 Labium, the lip.  
 Lardum, bacon.  
 Lætanum, a chamber-pot.  
 Libum, a sweet cake.  
 Lævium, the wool.  
 Lignum, wood.  
 Lilium, a lily.  
 Lintum, a sheet.  
 Linum, lint.  
 Lorum, a thong.  
 Lucrum, gain.  
 Ludibrium, a laughing-stock.  
 Lustrum, a survey.  
 Lutrum, the yolk of an egg.  
 Lutum, clay.  
 Macellum, the shambles.  
 Manubrium, a hilt or handle.  
 Matrimonium, marriage.  
 Mausoleum, any sumptuous monument.  
 Membrum, a member.  
 Mendacium, a lie.  
 Mentum, the chin.  
 Metallum, metal, a mine.  
 Milium, millet, a kind of grain.  
 Minium, vermilion.  
 Momentum, weight, importance.  
 Monopolum, the sole right of selling any thing.  
 Monstrum, a monster, any thing against the common course of nature.  
 Mortarium, a mortar.  
 Musæum, a study or library.  
 Mustum, new wine.  
 Mysterium, a mystery, a thing not easily comprehended.  
 Nasturtium, cresses.  
 Nautum, freight.  
 Navisfragium, shipwreck.  
 Negotium, a thing, business.  
 Nitrum, nitre.  
 Obsequium, compliance.  
 Odium, hatred.  
 Omatium, the paunch.  
 Omentum, the caul or skin which covers the bowels.  
 Oppidum, a town.  
 Opprobrium, a reproach.  
 Opsonium, fish, or any thing eaten with bread.  
 Organum, any instrument.  
 Oculum, a kiss; pl. the lips.  
 Ostrum, purple.  
 Otium, repose.  
 Ostium, the door.  
 Ovum, an egg.  
 Pabulum, fodder.  
 Pactum, an agreement.  
 Palatum, a palace.  
 Palatum, the palate.  
 Pallium, a cloak.  
 Pallidamentum, a general's robe.  
 Panarium, a bread-basket.  
 Pappulum, a gibbet.  
 Pensum, a task.  
 Peplum, a woman's robe.  
 Perjurium, perjury, taking a false oath.  
 Perpendiculum, a straight line upwards or downwards.  
 Pectorum, a waggon.  
 Pileolum, a chariot.  
 Pilum, a javelin.  
 Pistillum, the pestle of a mortar.  
 Placum, peace.  
 Plastrum, a waggon.  
 Plectrum, a quill or bow to play with on a musical instrument.  
 Plumbum, lead.  
 Pomarium, an orchard.  
 Pomerium, a void space on each side of a town wall.  
 Pomum, an apple.  
 Posticum, a back door.  
 Postliminium, a return to one's own country.  
 Prædium, a farm.  
 Præjudicium, a forejudging.  
 Prælium, a battle.  
 Præmium, a reward.  
 Præsidium, a defence, a garrison.  
 Prandium, a dinner.  
 Pratum, a meadow.  
 Præsum, a press.  
 Præsum, a price.  
 Præmordium, } a beginning  
 Principium, }  
 Privilegium, a private law or special right.  
 Probitum, a disgrace.  
 Prodigium, a prodigy, any thing preternatural.  
 Promissum, a promise.  
 Proposium, purpose.  
 Propugnaculum, a bulwark.  
 Proverbium, an old saying.  
 Pulpitum, a pulpit.  
 Ramentum, a chip or shaving.  
 Rastrum, a rake.  
 Refugium, a shelter.  
 Remedium, a cure.  
 Remaleum, a tow-boat.  
 Repagulum, a bar.  
 Repudium, a divorce.  
 Responsum, an answer.  
 Retinaculum, a cable.  
 Rostrum, the bill of a bird, the beak of a ship.  
 Rudimentum, pl. -a, the first principles of any art.  
 Ratum, a pick-axe.  
 Sabbatum, the sabbath.  
 Sæbulum, gravel.  
 Saccarum, sugar.  
 Sacellum, a chapel.  
 Sacerdotium, the priesthood.  
 Sacramentum, a military oath.  
 Sacrilegium, a sacrilege.  
 Sacrolegium, sealing sacred things.  
 Sægum, soldier's cloak.  
 Salarium, a salary.  
 Salsinum, a salt-cellar.  
 Salsamentum, salt meat.  
 Salum, the sea.  
 Sandalum, a slipper.  
 Sarcolum, a weeding-hook, a spade.  
 Sarmentum, a twig.  
 Satisfactum, a bond of security.  
 Saxum, a large stone.  
 Scalprum, dim. Scalpellum, a knife.  
 Scamnum, dim. Scabellum, a bench or form.  
 Sceptum, a sceptre, a mare.  
 Scitum, a decree.  
 Scortum, an harlot.  
 Scribium, a coffer.  
 Scriptum, a writing.

Serapulum, a scruple, a certain weight	Stannum, tin	Troscelnium, an apprenticeship
Serutum, a shield	Sterquilium, a dung-hill	Tormentum, an engine, a torment
Serulum, an age	Stipendium, pay	Toxicum, poison
Seminarium, a nursery	Stragulum, a blanket	Tributum, tax, or custom
Senaculum, a senate-house	Stratum, a couch	Triellium, a dining-room
Senatus consultum, a decree of the senate	Strigementum, a scraping	Triulium, three days
Serleum, silk	Stadium, desire, study	Triennium, three years
Servitium, slavery	Stuprum, debauchery	Tripedium, a dancing
Serpyllum, wild thyme	Suavium, a kiss	Trivium, a place where three ways meet
Sertum, a garland	Subellium, a bench	Tropeum, a trophy, a token of victory
Serum, whey	Subsidium, help	Tugurium, a cottage
Sertorium, a thousand serteris	Suburbanum, a house near the town	Tympnum, a drum
Seruum, allow	Suburbium, the suburbs, the part of a town without the walls	Vaccinium, a berry
Signum, a sign, a standard	Sudarium, a handkerchief	Vadimonium, bail; a promise to appear in court
Sigillum, a seal	Suffragium, a vote	Vadium, a ford, the sea
Silicernium, a funeral supper, an old man	Suggestum, ex-us, -us, a place raised above others	Vallum, a rampart
Sinum, a milk-pail	Summum, an abridgment	Vellum, a veil, a sail
Sistrum, a timbrel	Superellium, the brow, pride	Venabulum, a hunting pole
Sodalitium, a company, a corporation	Susprium, a sigh	Venenum, poison
Solarium, a sun-dial	Symbolum, a sign or token	Ventilabrum, a fan
Solacium, comfort	Symposium, & -on, a banquet	Verbum, a word
Solum, a throne	Tabernaculum, a tent	Vestibulum, a porch
Solum, the ground	Tabulatum, a story	Vestigium, the print of the foot
Somnium, a dream	Tabum, black gore	Vexillum, a banner
Spaium, a space	Tadium, weariness	Vicilium, money, or provisions for a journey
Spectaculum, a show	Talentum, a talent	Vinculum, a chain
Spectrum, a phantom, or apparition	Tectum, the roof, a house	Vinum, wine
Spectulum, a looking-glass	Tellum, a weapon	Vitium, vice, a fault
Spicium, a den	Templum, a church	Vitrum, glass
Spicillum, a gleaming	Terzom, the back	Vivarium, a place to keep beasts in, a warren or fish pond
Spiculum, a dart	Testimonium, an evidence	Vocabulum, a name or word
Spiraeculum, a breathing hole	Theatrum, a theatre	Votum, a vow
Spodium, spott	Thribulum, a censer, a vessel to burn incense in	
Spitium, spittle	Tinnulum, a little bell	
Stabulum, a stable		
Stadium, a furlong		
Stagnum, a pond		

## EXCEPTIONS in Gender.

Exc. 1. The following nouns in *us* are feminine, *humus*, the ground; *alvus*, the belly; *vannus*, a sieve.

And the following, derived from Greek nouns in *os*;

Abyssus, a bottomless pit	Dialectus, a dialect or manner of speech	Methodus, a method
Antidotus, a preservative against poison	Diameter, the diameter of a circle	Periodus, a period
Arcos, the Bear, a constellation near the north pole	Diphthongus, a diphthong	Perimetros, the circumference
Carbasus, a sail	Eremus, a desert	Pharus, a watch-tower

To these add some names of jewels and plants, because

<i>gemma</i> and <i>planta</i> are feminine; as,	Sapphirus, a sapphire	Byssus, fine flax or linen
Amethystus, an amethyst	Topazius, a topaz	Costus, costmary
Chrysolithus, a chrysolite	Bibulus, { an Egyptian reed	Cræcus, saffron
Chrysothrusus, a kind of topaz	Papyrus, { of which paper was made	Hysopus, hyssop
Crystallus, crystal		Nardus, spike-nard
Leucochrysus, a jacinth		

Other names of jewels are generally masculine; as, *Beryllus*, the beryl; *Carbunculus*, a carbuncle; *Pyropus*, a ruby; *Smaragdus*, an emerald: And also names of plants; as, *Asparagus*, asparagus, or sparrow-grass; *elleborus*, elle-

bore; *raphanus*, radish or colewort; *intybus*, endive, or succory, &c.

Exc. 2. The nouns which follow are either masculine or feminine:

*Atornus*, an atom.  
*Balānus*, the fruit of the palm-tree, a nut.

*Barbitus*, a harp.  
*Camelus*, a camel.  
*Cōlus*, a distaff.

*Crōnus*, a green fig.  
*Fēnus*, a store-house.  
*Phāsēlus*, a little ship.

Exc. 3. *Vīrus* poison; *pēlāgus*, the sea, are neuter.

Exc. 4. *Vulgus*, the common people, is either masculine or neuter, but oftener neuter.

### EXCEPTIONS in Declension.

Proper names in *ius* lose *us* in the vocative; as, *Hōrātūs*, *Hōrātī*; *Virgīlūs*, *Virgīlī*; *Georgīus*, *Georgī*, names of men; *Lārīus*, *Lārī*; *Mīncius*, *Mīncī*, names of lakes. *Fīlius*, a son also hath *fīlī*; *gēnius*, one's guardian angel, *gēnī*; and *deus*, a god, hath *deus*, in the voc. and in the plural more frequently *dū* and *dīs*, than *dēi* and *dēis*. *Meus*, my, an adjective pronoun, hath *mī*, and sometimes *meus*, in the vocative.

Other nouns in *ius* have *e*; as, *tabellārius*, *tabellariē*, a letter-carrier; *pius*, *pie*, &c. So these epithets *Dēlius*, *Dēlic*; *Tīrynthius*, *Tīrynthīc*; and these possessives, *Laertius*, *Laertiē*; *Saturnius*, *Saturnīc*, &c. which are not considered as proper names.

The poets sometimes make the vocative of nouns in *us* like the nominative; as, *stulcius*, *Latinus*, for *stulcī*, *Latīnc*. Virg. This also occurs in prose, but more rarely; thus, *Auditus*, *pōpūlus*, for *pōpūle*. Liv. 1. 24.

The poets also change nouns *er* unto *us*; as, *Evander*, or *Evandrus*, vocative, *Evander*, or *Evandre*. So *Leander*, *Leander*, *Tymbēr*, *Teucer*, &c.; and so anciently *puer* in the vocative had *puērē*, from *puērūs*.

Note. When the genitive singular ends in *ii*, the latter *i* is sometimes taken away by the poets, for the sake of quantity; as, *tugūrī*, for *tugurii*; *ingēnī* for *ingenii*, &c. And in the genitive plural we find *deām*, *libērām*, *sabrām*, *duānoīrām*, &c. for *deorum*, *liberorum*, &c. and in poetry, *Teuerām*, *Gratām*, *Argivām*, *Dānaām*, *Pēlāgām*, &c. for *Teucrorum*, &c.

### GREEK NOUNS.

*Os* and *on* are Greek terminations; as, *Alphēos*, a river in Greece; *īlion*, the city Troy; and are often changed into *us* and *um*, by the Latins; *Alphēus*, *īlium*, which are declined like *dominus* and *regnum*.

Nouns in *os* or *us* are sometimes contracted in the genitive; as, *Orphēus*, genitive *Orphēi*, *Orphēi*, or *Orphī*. So *Thēsūs*, *Promthēus*, &c. But nouns in *eus*, when *eu* is a diphthong, are of the third declension.

Some nouns in *os* have the genitive singular in *o*; as, *Androgeos*, genitive *Androgeos* or *ri*, the name of a man; *Athos*, *Atho*, or *-i*, a hill in Macedonia: both of which are also found in the third declension; thus, nominative *Androgeos*, genitive *Androgeōnto*. So *Atho*, or *Athon*, *-onis*, &c. Anciently nouns in *os*, in imitation of the Greeks, had the genitive in *u*; as, *Mēnandru*, *Apollodōru*, for *Mēnandri*, *Apollodōri*, &c.

Nouns in *os* have the accusative in *um* or *on*; as, *Delus* or *Delos*, accusative *Delum* or *Delon*, the name of an island.

Some neuters have the genitive plural in *ōn*; as, *Georgīca*, genitive plural *Georgīcōn*, books which treat of husbandry, as Virgil's *Georgicks*.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

There are more nouns of the third declension than of all the other declensions together. The number of its final syllables is not ascertained. Its final letters are thir-

*a, e, i, o, y, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x*. Of these, eig<sup>l</sup>



peculiar to this declension, namely, *i, o, y, c, d, l, t, x*; *a* and *e* are common to it with the first declension; *n* and *r* with the second; and *s*, with all the other declensions. *A, i,* and *y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns.

The terminations of the different cases are these; nom. sing. *a, o, &c.*; gen. *is*; dat. *i*; acc. *em*; voc. *the same with the nominative*; abl. *c, or i*: nom. acc. and voc. plur. *es, a, or ia*; gen. *um, or tum*; dat. and abl. *ibus*; thus,

Sermo, speech, masc.		Căput, the head, neut.	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
N. sermo.	N. sermōnes,	N. căput,	N. căpita.
G. sermōnis,	G. sermōnum.	G. căpitis,	G. căpitum,
D. sermoni,	D. sermonibus,	D. căpiti,	D. căpitibus,
A. sermonem,	A. sermones,	A. căput,	A. căpita,
V. sermo,	V. sermones,	V. căput,	V. căpita,
A. sermone.	A. sermonibus,	A. căpite.	A. căpitibus.
Rupes, a rock fem.		Sedile, a seat, neut.	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
N. rupes,	N. rupes,	N. sedile,	N. sedilia,
G. rupis,	G. rupium,	G. sedilia,	G. sedilium,
D. rupi,	D. rupibus,	D. sedili,	D. sedilibus,
A. rupem,	A. rupea,	A. sedile,	A. sedilia,
V. rupea,	V. rupea,	V. sedile,	V. sedilia,
A. rupe,	A. rupibus.	A. sedili,	A. sedilibus.
Lăpis, a stone, masc.		Yter, a journey, neut.	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
N. lăpis,	N. lăpides,	N. yter,	N. itinera,
G. lapidis.	G. lapidum,	G. itinēris,	G. itinerum,
D. lapidi,	D. lapidibus,	D. itineri,	D. itinēribus,
A. lapidem,	A. lapides,	A. iter,	A. itinera,
V. lapis,	V. lapides,	V. iter.	V. itinera,
A. lapide,	A. lapidibus.	A. itinere,	A. itinēribus.

Of the GENDER and GENITIVE of Nouns of the Third Declension.

A, E, I, and Y.

## 1. Nouns in *a, e, i,* and *y*, are neuter.

Nouns in *a* form the genitive in *itis*; as, *diadēma, diadematis*, a crown; *dogma -itis*, an opinion. So,

Ænigma, a riddle.	Nūmīma, a coin.	Stigma, a mark or brand, a disgrace.
Æpithēma, a short pithy saying.	Phasma, an apparition.	Strātāgēma, an artful contrivance.
Arōma, sweet spices.	Poēma, a poem.	Thēma, a theme, a subject to write or speak on.
Axiōma, a plain truth.	Schēma, a scheme or figure.	Tōreuma, a carved vessel.
Diplōma, a charter.	Sūphisma, a deceitful argument.	
Epigramma, an inscription.	Stemma, a pedigree.	
Nouns in <i>e</i> change <i>e</i> into <i>is</i> ; as, <i>rēte, retis</i> , a net. So,		
Ancile, a shield.	Equile, a stable for horses.	Ovile, a sheep-fold.
Aplustre, the flag of a ship.	Lăqueare, a celled roof.	Præsēpe, a stall; a bee-hive.
Campestre, a pair of drawers.	Mantle, a towel.	Sēcāle, rye.
Cochleāre, a spoon.	Mōnile, a neck-lace.	Sulle, a sow-cote.
Conclăve, a room.	Năvāle, a dock or place for shipping.	Tibiāle, a stocking.
Crināle, a pin for the hair.		
Cūbule, a couch.		

Nouns in *i* are generally indeclinable; as, *gummi, gum*; *zingibēri, ginger*; but some Greek nouns add *itis*; as, *hydrōmēli, hydromelitis*, water and honey sodden together, mead.

Nouns in *y* add *os*; as, *moly, molyos*, an herb; *mysy, -yos*, vitriol.

## O.

2. Nouns in *o* are masculine, and form the genitive in *onis* / *as*,

*Sermo, sermōnis*, speech; *draco, dracōnis*, a dragon. So,

<i>Agro</i> , a horse-keeper	<i>Equo</i> , a groom or hostler	<i>Præco</i> , a common crier
<i>Aquilo</i> , the north wind	<i>Firo</i> , a wanderer	<i>Prædo</i> , a robber
<i>Arrhābo</i> , an earnest-penny, a pledge	<i>Fullo</i> , a fuller of cloth	<i>Pulmo</i> , the lungs
<i>Bālatro</i> , a pitiful fellow	<i>Helluo</i> , a glutton	<i>Pūcio</i> , a little child
<i>Bambālio</i> , a flatterer	<i>Histrio</i> , a player	<i>Salmo</i> , a salmon
<i>Bāro</i> , a blockhead	<i>Latro</i> , a robber	<i>Sannio</i> , a buffoon
<i>Būbo</i> , an owl	<i>Lēno</i> , a pimp	<i>Sāpo</i> , soap
<i>Būfo</i> , a toad	<i>Lūlio, &amp; -ius</i> , a player	<i>Sīpho</i> , a pipe or tube
<i>Cālo</i> , a soldier's slave	<i>Eureo</i> , a glutton	<i>Spādo</i> , an eunuch
<i>Cāpo</i> , a capon	<i>Mango</i> , a slave merchant	<i>Stōlo</i> , a shoot or scion
<i>Carbo</i> , a coal	<i>Mīrmillo</i> , a fencer	<i>Strābo</i> , a goggle-eyed person
<i>Caupo</i> , an innkeeper	<i>Mōrio</i> , a fool	<i>Tēmo</i> , the pole or draught- tree
<i>Cerbo</i> , a cobbler, or one who follows a mean trade	<i>Muero</i> , the point of a wea- pon	<i>Tiro</i> , a raw soldier
<i>Ciniflo</i> , a friseur of hair	<i>Mūlio</i> , a malefactor	<i>Umbo</i> , the boss of a shield
<i>Crabro</i> , a wasp or hornet	<i>Nēbulo</i> , a knave	<i>Upīlo</i> , a shepherd
<i>Cūrio</i> , the chief of a ward or curia	<i>Pāvo</i> , a peacock	<i>Vōlo</i> , a volunteer
	<i>Pēro</i> , a kind of shoe	

Exc. 1. Nouns in *io* are feminine, when they signify any thing without a body; as *rātio, ratiōnis*, reason. So.

<i>Captio</i> , a quirk	<i>Perduellio</i> , treason	<i>Sanctio</i> , a confirmation
<i>Cautio</i> , caution, care	<i>Portio</i> , a part	<i>Secfio</i> , the confiscation or forfeiture of one's goods
<i>Concio</i> , an assembly, a speech	<i>Pōtio</i> , drink	<i>Sēdūtio</i> , a maid
<i>Cessio</i> , a yielding	<i>Prōditio</i> , treachery	<i>Sessio</i> , a sitting
<i>Dictio</i> , a word	<i>Proscripio</i> , a prescription, ordering citizens to be slain and confiscating their effects	<i>Statio</i> , a station
<i>Dēditio</i> , a surrender	<i>Quæstio</i> , an enquiry	<i>Suspensio</i> , mistrust
<i>Leccio</i> , a lesson	<i>Rēbellio</i> , rebellion	<i>Tūllūtio</i> , a tickling
<i>Lēgio</i> , a legion, a body of men	<i>Regio</i> , a country	<i>Translatio</i> , a transferring
<i>Mentio</i> , mention	<i>Rēlatio</i> , a telling	<i>Usucāpio</i> , the enjoyment of of a thing by prescription
<i>Nōtio</i> , a notion or idea	<i>Rēligio</i> , religion	<i>Vacatio</i> , freedom from la- bour, &c.
<i>Opīnio</i> , an opinion	<i>Rēmūtio</i> , a slackening	<i>Visio</i> , an apparition
<i>Optio</i> , a choice		
<i>Orātio</i> , a speech		
<i>Pensio</i> , a payment		

But when they mark any thing which has a body, or signify numbers, they are masculine; as,

<i>Curetillo</i> , the throat pipe, the weisand	<i>Serpis</i> , a staff	<i>Unlo</i> , a pearl
<i>Pāpilio</i> , a butterfly	<i>Scorpio</i> , a scorpion	<i>Vespertilio</i> , a bat
<i>Pūgio</i> , a dagger	<i>Septentio</i> , the north	<i>Ternio</i> , the number three
<i>Pūcio</i> , a little child	<i>Stellio</i> , a lizard	<i>Quāternio</i> , — four
	<i>Titlo</i> , a firebrand	<i>Senio</i> , — six

Exc. 2. Nouns in *io* and *go* are feminine, and have the genitive in *inis*; as, *ārundo, arundinis*, a reed; *imāgo, imāgīnis*, an image. So,

<i>Ārūgo, rust (of brass)</i>	<i>Hirundo</i> , a swallow	<i>Sartūgo</i> , a frying-pan
<i>Cālligo</i> , darkness	<i>Intercāpētio</i> , a space be- tween	<i>Scātūrgo</i> , a spring
<i>Carillūgo</i> , a gristle	<i>Lānūgo</i> , down	<i>Testūdo</i> , a tortoise
<i>Crēpūdo</i> , a creek, a bank	<i>Lentūgo</i> , a pimple	<i>Torpēdo</i> , a numbness
<i>Farrūgo</i> , a mixture	<i>Origo</i> , an origin	<i>Ullgo</i> , the natural moisture of the earth
<i>Ferrūdo, rust (of iron)</i>	<i>Porrigō</i> , scurf, or scales in the head; dandruff	<i>Vāletūdo</i> , a health
<i>Formūdo</i> , fear	<i>Prōpūgo</i> , a henage	<i>Vertūgo</i> , a dizziness
<i>Fūlligo</i> , soot	<i>Rūbūgo</i> , rust, mildeu	<i>Virgo</i> , a virgin
<i>Grandū</i> , hail		<i>Vōrūgo</i> , a gulf
<i>Hirūdo</i> , a horse-leech		

But the following are masculine;

<i>Cardo</i> , -inis, a hinge	<i>Margo</i> , -inis, the brink of a river; also f
<i>Cūdo</i> , -inis, a leather cap	<i>Ordo</i> , -inis, order
<i>Harpāgo</i> , -inis, a drag	<i>Tendo</i> , -inis, a tendon
<i>Ligo</i> , -inis, a spade	<i>Vādo</i> , -inis, a linen or woollen sock

*Cūplā*, desire, is often masc. with the poets; but in prose always fem.

Exc. 4. The following nouns have *inis* :

Apollō, -inis, the god Apollo	Nēmo, -inis, m. or f. no body
Hōmo, -inis, a man or woman	Turbo, -inis, m. a whirlwind
Cāro, flesh, fem. has <i>carnis</i> .	Arīs, masc. the name of a river, <i>Aniēns</i> . Neris, Ne-
rētēnis, the wife of the god Mars; from the obsolete nominatives, <i>Anien</i> , <i>Nerien</i> . Turbo, the name of a man, has <i>ōnis</i> .	

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *o* are feminine, and have us in the genitive, and *o* in the other cases singular; as, *Dīdo*, the name of a woman: genit. *Didās*; dat. *Didō*, &c. Sometimes they are declined regularly; thus, *Dido*, *Didōnis*; so *ēcho*, -ūs, f. the resounding of the voice from a rock or wood; *Argo*, -ūs, the name of a ship: *hālo*, -ōnis, f. a circle about the sun or moon.

### C, D, L.

3. Nouns in *c* and *l* are neuter, and form the genitive by adding *is*; as,

*anīmal*, *anīmālis*, a living creature; *tōral*, -ālis, a bed-cover; *hālec*, *halēcis*, a kind of pickle. So,

Cervīcal, a bolster	Mīnerval, entry-money	Pūteal, a well-cover
Cūbital, a cushion	Mīnūtal, minced meat	Vectīgal, a tax
Except,	Consul, -ūlis, m. a consul	Mūgīl, -ilis, m. a mullet-fish
	Fel, fellis, n. gall	Sal, sālis, m. or n. salt
	Lac, lactis, n. milk	Sāles, -ium, pl. m. witty sayings
	Mel, mellis, n. honey	Sol, sōlis, m. the sun

*D* is the termination only of a few proper names, which form the genitive by adding *is*; as, *Dāvid*, *Dāvīdis*.

### N.

4. Nouns in *n* are masculine, and add *is* in the genitive; as,

Cānon, -ōnis, a rule	Lien, Enis, the mill	Ren, rēnis the reins
Daemon, -ōnis, a spirit	Pagan, -ānis, a song	Splen, -ēnis, the spleen
Delphin, -ōnis, a dolphin	Physiognōmon, -ōnis, one who guesses at the dispositions of men from the face	Syren, -ēnis, f. a Syren
Cōnōmon, -ōnis, the cock of a dial		Tītan, -ānis, the sun
Hymen, ēnis, the god of marriage		

Exc. 1. Nouns in *men* are neuter, and make their genitive in *inis*; as, *flūmen*, *flūmēnis*, a river. So,

Abdōmen, the paunch	Discrīnen, a difference	Pūtāmen, a nut-shell
Acūmen, sharpness	Exūmen, a swarm of bees	Sagmen, certain, an herb
Agmen, an army on march	Fōrāmen, a hoe	Sēmen, a seed
Alūmen, alum	Gerāmen, a sprout	Spēclimen, a proof
Blūtūmen, a kind of clay	Grānen, grass	Sūknen, the warp
Cācūmen, the top	Lēgūmen, all kinds of pulse	Subtēmen, the woof
Carāmen, a song, a poem	Lūmen, light	Tegmen, a covering
Cognōmen, a surname	Nōmen, a name	Vīnū, a twig
Cōlūmen, a support	Nūmen, the Deity	Vōlūmen, a folding
Crīmen, a crane	Omen, a presage	

The following nouns are likewise neuter :

Glūten, -inis, glue	Inguen, -inis, the groin
Unguen, -inis, ointment	Pollen, -inis, fine flour

Exc. 2. The following masculines have *inis*; *pecten*, a comb; *tūbīcen*, a trumpeter; *tībīcen*, a piper; and *oscen*, v. *oscēnis*, sc. *avis*, f. a bird, which foreboded by singing.

Exc. 3. The following nouns are feminine: *Sindon*, -ōnis, fine linen; *ædon*, -ōnis, a nightingale; *halcyon*, ōnis, a bird called the king's fisher; *icon*, -ōnis, an image.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ontis*; as, *Laümēlon*, -ontis, a king of Troy. So *Achëron*, *Chamæleon*, *Phaëthon*, *Chäron*, &c.

## AR and UR.

5. Nouns in *ar* and *ur* are neuter, and add *is* to form the genitive; as,

*Calcār*, *calcāris*, a spur; *murmur*, *murmūris*, a noise. So,

Guttur, -ūris, the throat.

Jūbar, āris, a sun beam.

I.æcūnar, -āris, a ceiling.

Except, Ēbur, -ōris, n. ivory.

Far, farris, n. corn.

Fēmūr, -ōris, n. the thigh.

Furfur, -ūris, m. bran.

Fur, fūris, m. a thief.

Hēpar, -ātis, or -ātor, n. the liver.

Nectar, -āris, drink of the gods.

Pulvinar, -āris, a pillow.

Sulphur, -ūris, sulphur.

Jēcur, -ōris, or jecūnōris, n. the liver.

Rēbur, -ōris, n. strength.

Sālar, -āris, m. a trout.

Turtur, -ūris, m. a turtle-dove.

Vultur, -ūris, m. a vulture.

## ER and OR.

6. Nouns in *er* and *or* are masculine, and form the genitive by adding *is*; as,

*Anser*, *ansēris*, a goose, or gander; *agger*, -ēris, a rampart; *āer*, -ēris, the air; *carcer*, -ēris, a prison; *asser*, -ēris, & *assis*, -is, a plank; *dōlor*, -ōris, pain; *cōlor*, -ōris, a colour. So,

Actor, a deer, a pender.

Crēditor, he that trusts or lends.

Cruor, gore.

Dēbitor, a debtor.

Fætor, an ill smell.

Hōnor, honour.

Lector, a reader.

Lictor, an officer among the

Romanē, who attended

the magistrates.

Livor, paleness, malice.

Nidor, a strong smell.

Rhëtor, a rhetorician, has *rhetōris*; *castor*, a beaver, -ōris.

Ōdor, & -os, a smell.

Ōlor, a swan.

Pædor, filth.

Pastor, a shepherd.

Prætor, a commander.

Pūdor, shame.

Rūbor, blushing.

Rūmor, a report.

Sāpor, a taste.

Sartor, a cobler or tailor.

Sātor, a sower, a father.

Sūpor, sleep.

Splendor, brightness.

Sponsor, a surety.

Squālor, filthiness.

Sūpor, dirtiness.

Sūtor, a sewer.

Tēpor, warmth.

Terror, dread.

Tīmor, fear.

Tonsor, a barber.

Tūtor, a guardian.

Vāpor, a vapour.

Vēnator, a hunter.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are neuter:

Acēr, -ēris, a maple-tree.

Ador, -ōris, fine wheat

Æquor, -ōris, a plain, the sea.

Cādāver, -ēris, a dead carcass.

Cicēr, -ēris, vetches.

Cor, cordis, the heart.

Iter, itinēris, a journey.

Arbor, -ōris, a tree, is fem. *Tuber*, -ōris, the fruit of the tuber-tree, is masc. but when put for the tree, is fem.

Marmor, -ōris, marble.

Pāpāver, -ēris, poppy.

Pīper, -ēris, pepper.

Spinther, -ēris, a clasp.

Tūber, -ēris, a swelling.

Ūber, -ēris, a pap, or fatness.

Ver, vēris, the spring.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *ber* have *bris* in the genitive; as, *luc imber*, *imbris*, a shower. So *Insūber*, *Octōber*, &c.

Nouns in *ter* have *tris*; as, *venter*, *ventris*, the belly; *pāter*, *patris*, a father; *frāter*, -tris, a brother; *accipiter*, -tris, a hawk; but *crāter*, a cup, has *crātēris*; *sōter*, -ēris

a saviour; *lāter*, a tile, *latēris*; *Jūpiter*, the chief of the Heathen Gods, has *Jovis*; *linter*, -*tris*, a little boat, is *masc.* or *fem.*

## AS.

7. Nouns in *as* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ātis as, ætas, ætātis*, an age. So,

<i>Ætas</i> , the summer.	<i>Sīmultas</i> , a feud, a grudge.	<i>Vērītas</i> , truth.
<i>Piētas</i> , piety.	<i>Tempestat</i> , a time, a tempest.	<i>Vōluntās</i> , will.
<i>Pōtestas</i> , power.		<i>Vōluptās</i> , pleasure.
<i>Prōbitās</i> , probity.	<i>Ūbertas</i> , fertility.	<i>Xnas</i> , a duck, has <i>ānātis</i> .
<i>Satiētās</i> , a glut or disgust.		

Exc. 1. *As*, *Assis*, m. a piece of money, or any thing which may be divided into twelve parts.

Note. All the parts of *as* are likewise masculine, except *uncia*, an ounce, *fem.*; *as*, sextans, 2 ounces; *quadrans*, 3; *triens*, 4; *quincunx*, 5; *semis*, 6; *septunx*, 7; *denarius*, 8; *denarius*, 9; *denarius*, or *dēcunx*, 10; *denarius*, 11 ounces.

Exc. 2. Of Greek nouns in *as*, some are masculine; some feminine; some neuter. Those that are masculine have *antis* in the genit. *as*, *gigas*, *gigantis*, a giant; *ādāmas*, -*antis*, an adamant; *ēlēphas*, -*antis*, an elephant. Those that are feminine have *adis* or *ados*; *as*, *lampas*, *lampādis*, or *lampādos*, a lamp; *drōmas*, -*adis*, f. a dromedary: likewise *Arcas*, an Arcadian, though masculine, has *Arcādis* or -*ados*. Those that are neuter have *ātis*, *as*, *būchēras*, -*atis*, an herb; *artocreas*, -*ātis*, a pie.

## ES.

8. Nouns in *es* are feminine, and in the genitive change *es* into *is*; *as*,

*rūpes*, *rupis*, a rock; *hūbes*, *nubis*, a cloud. So,

<i>Ædes</i> , or - <i>is</i> , a temple; plur. a house.	<i>Fīdes</i> , a fiddle.	<i>Sēpes</i> , a hedge.
<i>Cautes</i> , a ragged rock.	<i>Linæ</i> , a plague.	<i>Sūbōles</i> , an offspring.
<i>Clādes</i> , an overthrow, destruction.	<i>Mūles</i> , a heap.	<i>Strāges</i> , a slaughter.
<i>Crūtes</i> , a hurdle.	<i>Nātes</i> , the buttock.	<i>Strues</i> , a heap.
<i>Fūmes</i> , a hunger.	<i>Pālumbes</i> , m or f. a pigeon.	<i>Sādes</i> , a stake.
	<i>Prōles</i> , an offspring.	<i>Tābes</i> , a consumption.
	<i>Pūbes</i> , youth.	<i>Vulpes</i> , a fox.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and most of them likewise excepted in the formation of the genitive:

<i>Ales</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a bird.	<i>Palmes</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a vine branch.
<i>Ames</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a fowler's staff.	<i>Pāries</i> , - <i>ētis</i> , a wall.
<i>Aries</i> , - <i>ētis</i> , a ram.	<i>Pes</i> , <i>pēdis</i> , the foot.
<i>Bes</i> , <i>bestis</i> , two-thirds of a pound.	<i>Pēdes</i> , <i>itis</i> , a footman.
<i>Cespes</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a turf.	<i>Poples</i> , - <i>itis</i> , the ham of the leg.
<i>Eques</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a horseman.	<i>Præses</i> , - <i>idis</i> , a president.
<i>Fōmes</i> , - <i>itis</i> , fuel.	<i>Sātelles</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a life guard.
<i>Gūrges</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a whirlpool.	<i>Stipes</i> , - <i>itis</i> , the stock of a tree.
<i>Hēres</i> , - <i>ēdis</i> , an heir.	<i>Termes</i> , - <i>itis</i> , an olive-bough.
<i>Indīges</i> , - <i>ētis</i> , a man deified.	<i>Trāmes</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a path.
<i>Interpres</i> , - <i>ētis</i> , an interpreter.	<i>Vēles</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a light-armed soldier.
<i>Līmes</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a limit or bound.	<i>Vātes</i> , <i>vātis</i> , a prophet.
<i>Mīles</i> , - <i>itis</i> , a soldier.	<i>Verres</i> , <i>verris</i> , a boar pig.
<i>Obses</i> , - <i>idis</i> , a hostage.	

But *ales*, *mīles*, *heres*, *interpres*, *obses*, and *vates*, are also used in the feminine.

Exc. 2. The following feminines are excepted in the formation of the genitive:

*Xbies, -ētis, a fir-tree.*  
*Cēres, -ētis, the goddess of corn.*  
*Merces, -ētis, a reward, hire.*  
*Merges, -ētis, a handful of corn.*  
*Quies, -ētis, rest.*

*Rēquies, -ētis; or requiēi, (of the fifth declension) rest.*  
*Sēges, -ētis, growing corn.*  
*Tēges, -ētis, a mat or coverlet.*  
*Tūdes, is, or -ētis, a hammer.*

To these add the following adjectives :

*Alēs, -ētis, swift.*  
*Bipes, -ētis, two-footed.*  
*Quadrupes, -ētis, four-footed.*  
*Deses, -ētis, slothful.*  
*Dives, -ētis, rich.*  
*Hēbes, -ētis, dull.*  
*Perpes, -ētis, perpetual.*

*Præpes, -ētis, swift-winged.*  
*Rēses, -ētis, idle.*  
*Sospes, -ētis, safe.*  
*Sūperstes, -ētis, surviving.*  
*Tēses, -ētis, round and long; smooth.*  
*Lēcuples, -ētis, rich.*  
*Mānuēs, -ētis, gentle.*

Exc. 3. Greek nouns in *es* are commonly masculine; as, *hic arīndes, -is*, a Persian sword, a scimitar; but some are neuter; as, *hoc cācoīthes*, an evil custom, *hippōmānes*, a kind of poison which grows in the forehead of a foal; *pānāces*, the herb all-heal; *nēpenthes*, the herb kill-grief. Dissyllables, and the monosyllables *Cres*, a Cretan, have *ētis*, in the genitive; as, *hic magnes, magnētis*, a loadstone; *tāpes, -ētis*, tapestry; *lēhes, -ētis*, a cauldron. The rest follow the general rule. Some proper nouns have either *ētis* or *is*; as, *Dāres, Darētis*, or *Daris*; which is also sometimes of the first declension; *Āchilles*, has *Āchillis*; or *Achilli*, contracted for *Achillēi*, or *Achillei*, of the second declension, from *Achillēus*: So *Ulysses, Pēricles, Verres, Aristotēles, &c.*

IS.

9. Nouns in *is* are feminine, and have their genitive the same with the nominative; as, *auris, auris*, the ear; *āvis, avis*, a bird. So,

*Apis, a bee.*  
*Bilis, the gall, anger.*  
*Classis, a fleet.*  
*Fēlis, a cat.*  
*Fōris, a door; oftener plur.*  
*Sires, -ium.*

*Messis, a harvest or crop.*  
*Nēris, the nostril.*  
*Neptis, a niece.*  
*Ovis, a sheep.*  
*Pellis, a skin.*  
*Pestis, a plague.*

*Rāvis, a raft.*  
*Rūdis, a root.*  
*Vallis, a valley.*  
*Vestis, a garment.*  
*Vitis, a vine.*

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and form the genitive according to the general rule :

*Axis, axis, an axle-tree.*  
*Aquālis, a water-pot, an ewer.*  
*Callis, a beaten road.*  
*Caulis, the stalk of an herb.*  
*Collis, a hill.*  
*Cenchris, a kind of serpent.*  
*Ensis, a sword.*

*Fascis, a bundle.*  
*Fēciālis, a herald.*  
*Follis, a pair of bellows.*  
*Fustis, a staff.*  
*Mensis, a month.*  
*Mūgillis, or -il, a mullet-fish.*  
*Orbis, a circle, the world.*  
*Patruēlis, a cousin-german.*

*Piscis, a fish.*  
*Postis, a post.*  
*Sōdālis, a companion.*  
*Tortis, a fire-brand.*  
*Unguis, the nail.*  
*Veetis, a lever.*  
*Vermis, a worm.*

To these add Latin nouns in *nis*; as, *pānis*, bread; *crīnis*, the hair; *ignis*, fire; *fūnis*, a rope, &c. But Greek nouns in *nis* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ēdis*; as, *tyrānis, tyrānēdis*, tyranny.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are also masculine, but form their genitive differently :

Cinis, -ēris, *ashes*.  
 Cucūnis, -is, or -ēris, *a cucumber*.  
 Dis, dītis, *the god of riches, or rich, an adj.*

Gris, grīris, *a dormouse, a rat*.  
 Impūbis, or impūbes, -is, or -ēris, *not marriageable*.

Lāpis, -idis, *a stone*.

*Pulvis and cinis are sometimes feminine. Semis is also sometimes neuter, and then it is indeclinable. Pubis and impubis, are properly adjectives: thus, Puberibus caulem foliis, a stalk with downy leaves, Virg. Æn. xii. 413. Impube corpus, the body of a boy not having yet got the down (pubes, -is, f.) of youth, Horat. Epod. 5. 12. Exsanguis, bloodless, an adjective, has exsanguis in the genitive.*

Exc. 3. The following are either masculine or feminine, and form the genitive according to the general rule.

Ammis, *a river*.

Anguis, *a snake*.

Cānālis, *a conduit-pipe*.

Clūnis, *the buttock*.

Corbis, *a basket*.

Pūbis, or pūbes, -is, or ostener -ēris, *marriageable*.

Pulvis, -ēris, *dust*.

Quiris, -itis, *a Roman*.

Sannis, -itis, *a Samnite*.

Sanguis, -inis, *blood*.

Sēmis, -issis, *the half of any thing*.

Vōmis, or -er, -ēris, *a ploughshare*.

Finis, *the end; fines, the boundaries of a*

*field, or territories, is always, masc.*

Serōbis, or serōbis, *a ditch*.

Torquis, *a chain*.

Exc. 4. These feminines have *idis*: *Cassis, -idis*, a helmet; *cuspis, -idis*, the point of a spear; *capis, -idis*, a kind of cup; *prōmulsis, -idis*, a kind of drink, metheglin. *Lis, strife, f. has, litis*.

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *is* are generally feminine, and form the genitive variously: some have *eos* or *ios*; as, *Ju-rēsis, -eos*, or *-ios*, or *-is*, a heresy; so, *bāsis, f.* the foot of a pillar; *phrasis*, a phrase; *phthisis*, a consumption; *poësis*, poetry; *metrōpōlis*, a chief city, &c. Some have *idis*, or *idos*; as, *Pāris, idis*, or *-idos*, the name of a man; *aspis, -idis, f.* an asp; *ēphēmēris, -idis, f.* a day book; *iris, -idis, f.* the rainbow; *pyxis, -idis, f.* a box. So, *Ægis*, the shield of Pallas; *canthāris*, a sort of fly; *pēriscōlis*, a gatter; *proboscis*, an elephant's trunk; *pyramis*, a pyramid; and *tigris*, a tiger, *-idis*, seldom *tigris*: all fem. Part have *inis*, as, *Psophis, -inis*, the name of a city: others have *inis*; as, *Eleusis, inis*, the name of a city; and some have *entis*; as, *Sīmois, Sīmoentis*, the name of a river. *Chāris*, one of the graces, has *Charītis*.

OS.

10. Nouns in *os* are masculine, and have the genitive in *ōtis*; as,

*nēpos, -ōtis*, a grandchild; *sacerdos, -ōtis*, a priest; also fem.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine:

Arbos, or -or, -ōris, *a tree*.

Cos, cōtis, *a whetstone*.

Dos, dōtis, *a dowry*.

Eos, eōis, *the morning*.

Glos, glōris, *the husband's sister, or brother's wife*.

Exc. 2. The following masculines are excepted in the genitive:

Flos, flōris, *a flower*.

Hōnos, or -or, -ōris, *honour*.

Lābos, or -or, -ōris, *labour*.

Lēpos, or -or, -ōris, *wit*.

Mos, mōris, *a custom*.

Ros, rōris, *dew*.

Custos, -ōdis, *a keeper*; also fem.

Hēros, herōis, *a hero*.

Mīnos, Mīs, *a king of Crete*.

Tros, Trōis, *a Trojan*.

Bos, bōris, m. or f. *an ox or cow*.

Exc. 3. *Os, ossis*, a bone; and *ōs, oris*, the mouth, are neuter.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ōis*, as, *hēros, -ōis*, a hero, or great man: So *Minos* a king of Crete; *Tros*, a Trojan; *thos* a kind of wolf.

US.

11. Nouns in *us* are neuter, and have their genitive in *ōris*; as,

*pectus, pectōris*, the breast; *tempus, tempōris*, time. So,

<i>Corpus, a body.</i>	<i>Frigus, cold.</i>	<i>Pennis, provisions.</i>
<i>Dēus, honour.</i>	<i>Littus, a shore.</i>	<i>Pignus, a pledge.</i>
<i>Dēdēus, disgrace.</i>	<i>Nēmus, a grove.</i>	<i>Stergos, dung.</i>
<i>Fācius, a great action.</i>	<i>Pēcus, cattle.</i>	<i>Tergus, a hid.</i>
<i>Foenus, usury.</i>		

Exc. 1. The following neuters have *ēris*:

<i>Aeus, chaff.</i>	<i>Mūnus, a gift or office.</i>	<i>Scēlus, a crime.</i>
<i>Fūnus, a funeral.</i>	<i>Ōnus, pot-herbs.</i>	<i>Sidus, a star.</i>
<i>Fœdus, a covenant.</i>	<i>Ōnus, a burden.</i>	<i>Vellus, a fleece of wool.</i>
<i>Gēnus, a kind or kindred.</i>	<i>Ōpus, a work.</i>	<i>Viscus, an entrail.</i>
<i>Glōmus, a clew.</i>	<i>Pondus, a weight.</i>	<i>Vicus, a bile.</i>
<i>Lātus, the side.</i>	<i>Rūdus, rubbish.</i>	<i>Vulnus, a wound.</i>

Thus *acēris, funēris*, &c. *Glōmus*, a clew, it sometimes masculine, and has *glōmi* of the second declension. *Vēnus*, the goddess of love, and *vētus*, old, an adjective, likewise have *ēris*.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are feminine, and form the genitive variously:

<i>Inens, -ūdis, an anvil.</i>	<i>Juventus, -ūtis, youth.</i>
<i>Pālus, -ūdis, a pool or morass.</i>	<i>Sāhis, -ūtis, safety.</i>
<i>Pēcus, (not used.) -ūdis, a sheep.</i>	<i>Sēnectus, -ūtis, old age.</i>
<i>Subseus, -ūdis, a dove-tail.</i>	<i>Servitus, -ūtis, slavery.</i>
<i>Tellus, -ūris, the earth, or goddess of the earth.</i>	<i>Virtus, -ūtis, virtue.</i>
	<i>Intercus, -ūtis, an hydropsy.</i>

[*Intercus* is properly an adjective, having *aqua intercus* understood.]

Exc. 3. Monosyllables of the neuter gender have *ūris* in the genitive; as,

<i>Crus, crūris, the leg.</i>	<i>Rus, rūris, the country.</i>
<i>ūs, ūris, law or right; also brass.</i>	<i>Thus, thūris, frankincense.</i>
<i>Pus, pūris, the corrupt matter of any sore.</i>	<i>So Mus, mūris, masc. a mouse.</i>

*Ligus*, or, -ur, a Ligurian, has *Ligūris*; *lēpus*, masc. a hare, *lēpōris*; *sus*, masc. or fem. a swine, *suis*; *grus*, masc. or fem. a crane, *gruis*.

*Œdipus*, the name of a man, has *Œdipōdis*: sometimes it is of the second declension, and has *Œdīpi*: The compounds of *pus* have *ōdis*; as, *tripus*, masc. a tripod, *trīpōdis*; but *lūgōpus, -ūdis*, a kind of bird, or the herb hare's foot, is fem. Names of cities have *ūris*; as, *Trāpexus, Trapexuntis*; *Opus, Opuntis*.

YS.

12. Nouns in *YS* are all borrowed from the Greek, and are for the most part feminine. In the genitive they have sometimes *yls* or *yos*; as, *hec chēlys chelys* or -*yos*, a harp; *Cēlys, cēlysis*, or -*yos*, the name of a man; sometimes they have *ylis*, or *ylor*; as *hēc chēlmis, chēlmīdis*, or *chēlmīdos*, a soldier's cloak; and sometimes *ynis*, or *ynas*; as, *Trāctyls, Trācthynis*, or *Trācthynas*, the name of a town.

ÆS, AUS, EUS.

13. The nouns ending in *æs* and *aus* are,

<i>Æs, æris, n. brass, or money.</i>	<i>Laus, laudis, f. praise.</i>
<i>Fraus, fraudis, f. fraud.</i>	<i>Præs, prædis, ra, or f. a surety.</i>

Substantives ending in the syllable *æus* are all proper names, and have the genitive *hæus*; as, *Orpheus, Orpheos*; *Tereus, Tereos*. But these nouns are also found in the second declension, where *æus* is divided into two syllables: thus, *Orphæus* genit. *Orphēi*, or sometimes contracted *Orphæi*, and that into *Orphii*.

*S* with a consonant before it.

14. Nouns ending in *s* with a consonant be-



fore it, are feminine; and form the genitive by changing the *s* into *is* or *tis*; as, *trabs, trābis*, a beam; *scobs, scōbis*, saw-dust; *hiems, hiēmis*, winter; *gens, gentis*, a nation; *stips, stīpts*, alms; *pars, partis*, a part; *sors, sortis*, a lot; *mors, -tis*, death.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine :

Chalybs, -ybis, *steel.*

Dens, -tis, *a tooth.*

Fons, -tis, *a well.*

Gryps, grypsis, *a griffin.*

Hydrops, -ōpis, *the dropery.*

Mērops, -ōpis, *a wood-pecker.*

Mons, -tis, *a mountain.*

Pons, -tis, *a bridge.*

Seps, sēpis, *a kind of serpent; but,*

Seps, sēpis, *a hedge, in fem.*

Exc. 2. The following are either masc. or feminine :

Aleps, adīpis, *fatness.*

Rūdēns, -tis, *a cable.*

Serōbs, scrōbis, *a ditch.*

Serpens, -tis, *a serpent.*

Stīrps, stīrpsis, *the root of a tree.*

Stīrps, *an offspring, always fem.*

*Animans*, a living creature, is found in all the genders, but most frequently in the feminine or neuter.

Exc. 3. Polysyllables in *eps* change *e* into *i*; as, *hæc forceps, forcīpis*, a pair of tongs; *princeps, -īpis*, a prince or princess; *particeps, -cīpis*, a partaker; so likewise *cælebs, cælibis*, an unmarried man or woman. The compounds of *cāput* have *cipītis*; as, *præceps, præcipītis*, headlong; *anceps, ancipītis*, doubtful; *biceps, -cipītis*, two-headed. *Auceps*, a fowler, has *aucūpis*.

Exc. 4. The following feminines have *dis* :

Frons, frondis, *the leaf of a tree.*

Glands, glandis, *an acorn.*

Juglans, dis, *a walnut.*

Lens, lendis, *a nit.*

So *libripens, libripēdis* m. a weigher, *nefrens, -dis*, m. or f. a grice, or pig; and the compounds of *cor*; as *concor, concordis*, agreeing; *discors*, disagreeing; *vēcor, mad*, &c. But *frons*, the forehead, has *frontis*, fem. and *lens*, a kind of pulse, *lendis*, also fem.

Exc. 5. *Iens* going, and *quiens*, being able, participles form the verbs *eo* and *queo*, with their compounds, have *euntis*: thus, *iens, euntis*; *quiens, queuntis*; *rediens, redeuntis*; *nēquiens, nequeuntis*; but *ambiens*, going round, has *ambientis*.

Exc. 6. *Tīryns*, a city in Greece, the birth-place of Hercules, has *Tiryntis*.

## T.

15. There is only one noun in *t*, namely, *cāput, captis*, the head, neuter. In like manner, its compounds, *sinciput, sincipītis*, the forehead; and *occiput, -itis*, the hind-head.

## X.

16. Nouns in *x* are feminine, and in the genitive change *x* into *cis*; as,

*vox, vōcis*, the voice; *lux, lūcis*, light.

So,

Appendix, -icis, *an addition*; Crux, erūcis, *a cross.*

Arx, arcis, *a castle.*

Cēlex, -icis, *a pinnace.*

Cervix, -icis, *the neck.*

Cycatrix, -icis, *a scar.*

Cornix, -icis, *a crew.*

Cōturnix, -icis, *a quail.*

Comendix, -icis, *the hip.*

Fœx, -icis, *dregs.*

Falx, -icis, *a scythe.*

Fax, -icis, *a torch.*

Fālix, -icis, *a fern.*

Laux, -icis, *a plate.*

Lōdix, -icis, *a sheet.*

Mēretrix, -icis, *a courtesan.*

Merx, -icis, *merchandise.*

Natrix, -icis, *a nurse.*

Nux, nūcis, *a nut.*

Pax, -icis, *peace.*

Pix, picis, *pitch.*

Rādix, -icis, *a root.*

Sālix, -icis, *a willow.*

Vibix, or -ex, -icis, *the mark*

*of a wound.*

**Exc. 1.** Polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are masculine; as, *thorax*, -*ācis*, a breast-plate; *Cōrax*, -*ācis*, a raven. *Ex* in the genitive is changed into *icis*; as, *pollex*, -*icis*, m. the thumb. So the following nouns, also masculine:

<i>Apex</i> , the tuft or tassel on the top of a priest's cap, the cap itself, or the top of any thing.	<i>Cūmex</i> , a bug.	<i>Podex</i> , the breech.
<i>Artifex</i> , an artist.	<i>Cōdex</i> , a book.	<i>Pontifex</i> , a chief priest.
<i>Carūfex</i> , an executioner.	<i>Cālex</i> , a goat, a midge.	<i>Pūlex</i> , a flea.
<i>Caudex</i> , the trunk of a tree.	<i>Fētēx</i> , a shrub.	<i>Rāmex</i> , a rupture.
<i>Verroex</i> , a wedded sheep, has <i>veroēcis</i> ; <i>fanitēx</i> , a mower of hay, <i>fanitēcis</i> ; <i>rētēx</i> , m. - <i>ēcis</i> , a vine-branch cut off.	<i>Indēx</i> , an informer.	<i>Sōrexx</i> , a rat.
	<i>Lātēx</i> , any liquor.	<i>Vertēx</i> , the crown of the head.
	<i>Mūrexx</i> , a shell-fish, purple.	<i>Vortēx</i> , a whirlpool.

To these masculines add,

*Cālix*, -*icis*, a cup.  
*Cālyx*, -*icis*, the bud of a flower.  
*Coccyx*, -*icis*, vel -*icis*, a cuckoo.  
*Formix*, -*icis*, a vault.

*Oryx*, -*icis*, a wild goat.  
*Phoenix*, -*icis*, a bird so called.  
*Trādūx*, -*icis*, a grass or off-set of a vine; also fem.

But the following polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are feminine:

*Forāx*, -*icis*, a furnace.  
*Pānax*, -*icis*, the herb all heal.  
*Clīmax*, -*icis*, a ladder.  
*Forfēx*, -*icis*, a pair of scissors.  
*Hālēx*, -*icis*, a herring.

*Smūlax*, -*icis*, the herb rope-wood.  
*Cērox*, -*icis*, a sedge.  
*Sūpellex*, *supellectilīa*, household furniture.

**Exc. 2.** A great many nouns in *x* are either masculine or feminine; as,

*Calx*, -*icis*, the heel, or the end of any thing, the goal; but *calx*, time, is always fem.  
*Cortex*, -*icis*, the bark of a tree.  
*Hystrix*, -*icis*, a porcupine.  
*Imbrexx*, -*icis*, a gutter or roof tile.  
*Lymx*, -*icis*, an ounce, a beast of a very quick sight.  
*Lunax*, -*icis*, a snail.

*Obēx*, -*icis*, a bolt or bar.  
*Peritēx*, -*icis*, a partridge.  
*Pūmēx*, -*icis*, a pumice-stone.  
*Rāmēx*, -*icis*, sorrel, an herb.  
*Saudix*, -*icis*, a purple colour.  
*Silēx*, -*icis*, a flint.  
*Vārix*, -*icis*, a swollen vein.

**Exc. 3.** The following nouns depart from the general rule in forming the genitive:

*Quātēx*, -*icis*, a well-maker.  
*Conjūnx*, or *ux*, -*icis*, a husband or wife.  
*Fruxx*, (not used,) *frūgis*, f. corn.  
*Grexx*, *grēgis*, m. or f. a flock.  
*Lex*, *lēgis*, f. a law.  
*Phālanx*, -*icis*, f. *phalanx*.

*Rēmēx*, -*icis*, a rower.  
*Rēxx*, *rēgis*, a king.  
*Nix*, *nivis*, f. snow.  
*Noxx*, *noctis*, f. night.  
*Sēnēx*, *sēnis*, (an adj.) old.

**Exc. 4.** Greek nouns in *x*, both with respect to gender and declension, are as various as Latin nouns; thus, *bombyx*, *bombōycis*, a silk worm, masc. but when it signifies silk, or the yarn spun by the worm, it is feminine; *onyx*, masc. or fem. *onūchis*, a precious stone; and so *sardōnyx*; *lārynx*, *laryngis*, fem. the top of the wind-pipe; *Phryxx*, *Phrygis*, a Phrygian; *sphīnx*, -*icis*, a fabulous hag; *strīxx*, -*icis*, f. a screech-owl; *Styxx*, -*icis*, f. a river in hell; *Hylāxx*, -*icis*, the name of a dog; *Bibrāxx*, *Bibractis*, the name of a town, &c.

#### DATIVE SINGULAR.

The dative singular anciently ended also in *e*; as, *Esuriēte leoni ex ore exculpere prādam*, To pull the prey out of the mouth of a hungry lion, Lucil. *Hæret pede pes*, Foot sticks to foot. *Æn.* x. 361. for *esuriēti* and *pedi*.

## EXCEPTIONS in the ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. The following nouns have the accusative in *im* :

*Xruasis*, *f.* a mason's rule.

*Bŭris*, *f.* the beam of a plough.

*Gummi*, *f.* gum.

*Mēphitis*, *f.* a damp or strong smell.

*Ravis*, *f.* hoarseness.

*Sināpis*, *f.* mustard.

*Cannābis*, *f.* hemp.

*Cŭcūmus*, *m.* a cucumber.

*Sitis*, *f.* thirst.

*Tussis*, *f.* the cough.

*Vis*, *f.* strength.

To these add proper names, 1. of cities, and other places; as, *Hispālis*, Seville, a city in Spain; *Syrtes*, a dangerous quicksand on the coast of Lybia — 2. of rivers; as, *Tiberis*, the Tiber, which runs past Rome; *Bætis*, the Guadalquivir, in Spain: So *Athēsis*, *Arāris*, *Athis*, *Liris*, &c. — 3. of gods; as, *Anŭbis*, *Apis*, *Osiris*, *Serāpis*, deities of the Egyptians. But these sometimes make the accusative also in *in*; thus, *Syrtim* or *Syrtin*, *Tiberim*, or *-in*, &c.

Exc. 2. Several nouns in *is* have either *em* or *im*; as,

*Clāvis*, *f.* a key.

*Cūtis*, *f.* the skin.

*Febri*, *f.* a fever.

*Nāvis*, *f.* a ship.

*Pelvis*, *f.* a basin.

*Puppis*, *f.* the stern of a ship.

*Restis*, *f.* a rope.

*Sēcūris*, *f.* an axe.

*Sēmētis*, *f.* a sowing.

*Strigillis*, *f.* a horse-comb.

*Turris*, *f.* a tower.

Thus *navem*, or *navim*; *puppem*, or *puppim*, &c. The ancients said *avim*, *aurim*, *ovim*, *pestim*, *vallim*, *vitim*, &c. which are not to be imitated.

Exc. 3. GREEK NOUNS form their accusative variously :

1. Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, that is, with a consonant going before, have the accusative in *em* or *a*, as *lampas*, *lampādis*, or *lampādos*, *lampādem*, or *lampāda*. In like manner, these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive, or *is* with a vowel before it: *Tros*, *Tyōis*, *Troem*, and *Troa*, a Trojan; *hēros*, a hero; *Mīnos*, a king of Crete. The three following have almost always *a*: *Pan*, the god of shepherds; *æther*, the sky; *delphn*, a dolphin: thus, *Pāna*, *æthēra*, *delphina*.

2. Masculine Greek nouns in *is*, which have their genitive in *is* or *os* impure, form the accusative in *im* or *in*; sometimes in *idem*, never *ida*; as, *Pūris*, *Paridis*; or *Partos*; *Partim*, or *Partin*, sometimes *Partidem*, never *Partila* — So *Daphnis*.

3. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, have commonly *idem* or *ida*, but rarely *im* or *in*; as, *Elis*, *Elidis* or *Elidos*, *Elidem* or *Elida*; seldom *Elim* or *Elin*; a city in Greece. In like manner feminines in *ys*, *ydas*, have *idem*, or *ida*, not *ym* or *yn* in the accusative; as, *chlāmys*, *-ydem*, or *-yda*, not *chlāmyn*, a soldier's cloak.

4. But all Greek nouns in *is* or *ys*, whether masculine or feminine, having *is* or *os* pure in the genitive, form the accusative by changing *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *metāmorphōsis*, *-cos*, or *-ias*, *metāmorphōsim* or *in*, a change; *Tēthys*, *-yos*, or *-yis*, *Tēthym*, or *-yn*; the name of a goddess.

5. Nouns ending in the diphthong *eus*, have the accusative in *eu*; as, *Thēseus*, *Thēseu*; *Tydeus*, *Tydeu*.

## EXCEPTIONS in the ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i*, in the ablative; as, *sedile*, *sedili*; *animal*, *animāli*; *calcar*, *calcāri*. Except proper names; as, *Præneste*, abl. *Præneste*, the name of a town: and the following neuters in *ar* :

*Far*, *farre*, corn.

*Hēpar*, *-āte*, the liver.

*Jūbar*, *-āre*, a sun-beam.

*Nectar*, *-āre*, drink of the gods.

*Par*, *pāre*, a match, a pair.

*Sal*, *sāle*, salt.

Exc. 2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis*, *vīm*, *vi*: but *canābis*, *Bætis*, and *tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, make their ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *tūrris*, *turre*, or *turri*; but *restis*, a rope; and *cūtis*, the skin, have *e* only.

Several nouns which have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative; as, *fīnis*, *supellex*, *vectis*, *pūgil*, a champion; *mūgil* or *mūgilis*; *ros*, *occlup*: Also, names of towns, when the question is made by *ubi*; as, *habitāt Carthagine* or *Carthagini*, he lives at Carthage. So, *civis*, *classis*, *sors*, *timber*, *anguis*, *avis*, *portis*, *justis*, *amnis*, and *ignis*; but these have otherwise *e*. *Canalis* has only *i*. The most ancient writers made the ablative of many other nouns in *i*; as, *vestat*, *cani*, *lepidi*, *ovi*, &c.

Exc. 3. Adjectives used as substantives; have commonly the same ablative with the adjectives; as, *bipennis*, -i, an halbert; *mōlāris*, -i, a millstone; *quadrirēmīs*, -i, a ship with four banks of oars. So names of months, *Aprīlis*, -i; *Dēcember*, -bri, &c. But *rūdis*, f. a rod given to gladiators when discharged; *jūvēnis*, a young man, have only *e*; and likewise nouns ending in *il*, *x*, *ceps*, or *ns*; as,

Adolescens, a young man. Princeps, a prince. Torrens, a brook.  
Infans, an infant. Senex, an old man. Vigil, a watchman.  
Thus, adolescentē, infante, senē, &c.

Exc. 4. Nouns in *ys* which have *ym* in the accusative, make their ablative in *ye* or *y*; as, *Atys*, *Atye*, or *Aty*, the name of a man.

#### NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

1. The nominative plural ends in *es*, when the noun is either masculine or feminine; as, *sermones*, *rupes*.

Nouns in *is* and *es* have sometimes in the nominative plural also *eis* or *is*; as, *puppēs*, *puppēis*, or *puppis*.

2. Neuters which have *e* in the ablative singular, have *a* in the nominative plural; as, *capita*, *itinēra*: but those which have *i* in the ablative, make *ia*; as, *sedilia*, *calcāria*.

#### GENITIVE PLURAL.

Nouns which in the ablative singular have *i* only, or *e* and *i* together, make the genitive plural in *ium*; but if the ablative be in *e*, the genitive plural has *um*; as, *sedile*, *sedili*, *sedilium*; *turris*, *turre* or *turri*, *turrium*; *caput*, *capite*, *capitum*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *as* have *ium*, though their ablative end in *e*; as, *mas*, a male, *māre*, *marium*; *vas*, a surety, *vādium*: but polysyllables have rather *um*; as, *civitas*, a state or city, *civitātum*, and sometimes *civitatium*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have also *ium*; as, *hostis*, an enemy, *hostium*. So likewise nouns ending in two consonants; as, *gens*, a nation, *gentium*; *urbs*, a city, *urbium*.

But the following have *um*; *parens*, *vātes*, *pānis*, *jūvēnis*, and *cānis*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns form the ablative plural in *ium*, though they have *e* only in the ablative singular:

Caro, carnis, f. flesh.	Lis, litis, f. strife.
Cohors, -tis, f. a company.	Mus, mūris, m. a mouse.
Cor, cordis, n. the heart.	Nix, nivis, f. snow.
Cos, cotis, f. a hone or whetstone.	Nox, noctis, f. the night.
Dos, dōtis, f. a dowry.	Os, ossis, n. a bone.
Faux, faucis, f. the jaws.	Quiris, -itis, a Roman.
Glis, gliris, m. a rat.	Samnis, -itis, m. or f. a Samnite.
Lar, laris, m. a household god.	Uter, utris, m. a bottle.
Linter, -tris, m. or f. a little boat.	

Thus *Samnitium*, *linterium*, *litium*, &c. Also the compounds of *uncia* and *as*: as, *septunx*, seven ounces, *septuncium*; *bes*, eight ounces, *bestium*; *Bos*, an ox or calf, *bos*, and in the dative, *bōbus* or *būbus*.

Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *Macedo*, a Macedonian; *Arabs*, an Arabian; *Æthiops*, an Ethiopian; *Mūnūctra*, an unicorn; *Lyax*, a beast so called; *Thrax*, a Thracian; *Macedōnum*, *Arābum*, *Æthiōpum*, *Monocerotum*, *Lyncum*, *Thracum*. But those which have *a* or *is* in the nominative singular sometimes form the genitive plural in *on*; as, *Epigramma*, *epigrammātum*, or *epigrammatōn*, an epigram; *metamorphosis*, *-ium*, or *-ōn*.

Obs. 1. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; thus, *manes*, m. souls departed, *manium*; *caelites*, m. inhabitants of heavens, *caelitum*; because they would have had in the sing. *manis*, or *manes* and *caeles*. But names of feasts often vary their declension; as, *Saturnalia*, the feast of Saturn, *Saturnalium* and *Saturnatorum*. So, *Bacchanalia*, *Compitalia*, *Terminalia*, &c.

Obs. 2. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, are, by the poets often contracted into *um*; as, *nocentium* for *nocentium*; and sometimes, to increase the number of syllables, a letter is inserted; as, *caelituum* for *caelitum*. The former of these is said to be done by the figure *Syncope*; and the latter by *Epenhēsis*.

#### EXCEPTIONS IN THE DATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Greek nouns in *a* have commonly *is* instead of *ibus*; as, *poēma*, a poem, *poēmatīs*, rather than *poematibus*, from the old nominative *poemātum* of the second declension.

Exc. 2. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns in *si*, or when the next word begins with a vowel, in *sin*; as, *Troāsi* or *Troāsin*, for *Troādibus*, from *Troas*, *Troadis*, a Trojan woman.

#### EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, make their accusative plural in *es*, *eis*, or *is*; as, *partes*, *partium*, acc. *partes*, *parteis*, or *partis*.

Exc. 2. If the accusative singular end in *a* the accusative plural also ends in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampādem*, or *lampāda*, *lampādes* or *lampādas*. So *Tros*, *Troas*; *heros*, *heroas*; *Æthiops*, *Æthiopas*, &c.

#### GREEK NOUNS through all the Cases.

*Lampas*, a lamp, f. *lampādis*, or, *-ādos*; *-ādi*, *ādem*, or *-āda*; *-as*; *āde*: Plur. *-ādes*; *-ādum*; *-ādibus*; *-ādes*, or *-ādas*; *-ādes*, *-adibus*.

*Troas*, f. *Troādis*, or *-ādos*; *-i*; *em* or *a*; *as*; *e*:

Pl. *Troades*, *-um*; *ibus si* or *sin*; *es* or *as*; *es*; *ibus*.

*Tros*, m. *Trois*; *Troi*; *Troem* or *-a*; *Tros*; *Troe*, &c.

*Phyllis*, f. *Phyllidis*, or *-dos*, *di*, *dem*, or *da*; *i* or *is*; *de*.

*Paris*, m. *Paridis* or *-dos*; *di*; *dem*, *Parim* or *in*; *i*; *de*.

*Chlāmys*, f. *Chlāmēdis* or *-ydos*, *ydi*, *ydem* or *yda*, *ys*, *yde*, &c.

*Cāpys*, m. *Cāpys*, or *-yos*; *yi*; *ym* or *yn*; *y*; *ye* or *y*.

*Mētāmorphōsis*, f. *-is* or *-eos*, *i*, *em* or *in*, *i*, *i*, &c.

*Orpheus*, m. *-eos*, *ēi* or *ei*, *ea*, *eu*, abl. *eo*, of the second decl.

*Dido*, f. *Didās* or *Didōnis*, *Dido* or *Didoni*, &c.

#### FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*.

Nouns in *us* are masculine; nouns in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.

The terminations of the cases are; nom. sing. *us*; gen.

*ūs*; dat. *ui*; acc. *um*; voc. *like the nom.*; nom. acc. voc. plur. *us* or *ua*; gen. *uum*; dat. and abl. *ibus*; as,

Fructus, <i>fruit masc.</i>		Cornu, <i>a horn, neut.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. fructus,	N. fructus,	N. cornu,	N. cornua,
G. fructūs,	G. fructuum,	G. cornu,	G. cornuuum,
D. fructui,	D. fructibus,	D. cornu,	D. cornibus,
A. fructum,	A. fructus,	A. cornu,	A. cornua,
V. fructus,	V. fructus,	V. cornu,	V. cornua,
A. fructu,	A. fructibus.	A. cornu,	A. cornibus.

## In like manner decline,

Aditūs, <i>an access.</i>	Hālitus, <i>breath.</i>	Rietus, <i>a grinning.</i>
Anfractus, <i>a winding.</i>	Hautus, <i>a draught.</i>	Ritus, <i>a rite, a ceremony.</i>
Auditus, <i>the sense of hearing.</i>	Ictus, <i>a stroke.</i>	Ritus, <i>laughter.</i>
Cantus, <i>a singing or song.</i>	Impētus, <i>an attack.</i>	Ructus, <i>a belching.</i>
Cāsus, <i>a fall, an accident or chance.</i>	Incessus, <i>a stately gate.</i>	Saltus, <i>a leap, a forest.</i>
Cēsus, <i>a gamslet.</i>	Luctus, <i>grief.</i>	Sēnātus, <i>the senate, the supreme council among the Romans.</i>
Ceatus, <i>a marriage-girdle.</i>	Luxus, <i>luxury, riot.</i>	Sensus, <i>a sense, feeling, meaning.</i>
Coetus, <i>an assembly.</i>	Mētus, <i>fear.</i>	Sexus, <i>a sex.</i>
Cultus, <i>worship, dress.</i>	Missus, <i>a throw; a turn or heat in races.</i>	Sinus, <i>a bosom.</i>
Curvus, <i>a chariot.</i>	Mōtus, <i>a motion.</i>	Singultus, <i>a sob, the hiccup.</i>
Cursus, <i>a race.</i>	Nexus, <i>servitude for debt.</i>	Situs, <i>a situation.</i>
Dēcessus, <i>a departure.</i>	Nūrus, <i>a daughter-in-law.</i>	Stātus, <i>a posture.</i>
Eventus, <i>an event.</i>	Nātus, <i>a nod.</i>	Soerus, <i>a mother-in-law.</i>
Exērcitus, <i>an army.</i>	Obtūtus, <i>a look.</i>	Spiritus, <i>a breathing, spirit.</i>
Exitus, <i>an issue.</i>	Odōrātus, <i>the sense of smelling.</i>	Successus, <i>success.</i>
Fastus, <i>pride.</i>	Passus, <i>a pace.</i>	Sumptus, <i>expense.</i>
Flātus, <i>a blast.</i>	Principātus, <i>pre-eminence.</i>	Tactus, <i>the touch.</i>
Flētus, <i>weeping.</i>	Prōcessus, <i>a progress.</i>	Tōnstru, <i>thunder.</i>
Fluctus, <i>a wave.</i>	Progressus, <i>an advancement.</i>	Transitus, <i>a passage.</i>
Foetus, <i>an offspring.</i>	Prospectus, <i>a view.</i>	Tīmultus, <i>an uproar.</i>
Gēlu, <i>ice.</i>	Prōventus, <i>an increase, revenue.</i>	Vēnātus, <i>hunting.</i>
Gēmītus, <i>a groan.</i>	Quæstus, <i>gain.</i>	Visus, <i>the sight.</i>
Grādus, <i>a step, a degree.</i>	Questus, <i>a complaint.</i>	Victus, <i>food.</i>
Gustus, <i>the taste.</i>	Rēditus, <i>a return, an income.</i>	Vultus, <i>the countenance.</i>
Hābitus, <i>a habit, the state of mind or body.</i>		

## Exc. 1. The following nouns are feminine :

Acus, <i>a needle.</i>	Ficus, <i>a fig.</i>	Porticus, <i>a gallery.</i>
Xnus, <i>an old woman.</i>	Mānus, <i>the hand.</i>	Spēcus, <i>a den.</i>
Dōmus, <i>a house.</i>	Pēnus, <i>a store-house.</i>	Tribus, <i>a tribe.</i>

*Penus* and *specus* are sometimes masc. *Ficus, penus*, and *domus*, with several others, are also of the second declension. *Capricornus*, m. the sign *Capricorn*, although from *cornu*, is always of the second decl. and so are the compounds *amanus; unimānus*, having one hand; *centimānus*, &c. adj. *Domus* is but partly of the second declension; thus,

Dōmus, *a house, fem.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom. domus,	Nom. domus;
Gen. domūs, or -mi,	Gen. domorum, or -uum,
Dat. domui, or -mo,	Dat. domibus,
Acc. domum,	Acc. domos, or -us,
Voc. domus,	Voc. domus,
Abl. domo.	Abl. domibus.

Note. *Domūs*, in the genit. signifies, of a house; and *domi*, at home, or of home; as *memineris domi*. Terent. iv. 7. 45.

Exc 2. The following nouns have *ibus*, in the dative and ablative plural.

*Acus, a needle.*  
*Arcus, a bow.*  
*Artus, a joint.*  
*Gēnu, the knee.*

*Lacus, a lake.*  
*Partus, a birth.*  
*Portus, a harbour.*

*Spēcus, a den.*  
*Tribus, a tribe.*  
*Vēru, a spit.*

*Portus, genu, and veru, have likewise ūs; as, portibus or portibus.*

**Exc. 3.** *Iesus*, the venerable name of our Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other cases.

Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were declined like *grus*, *gruis*, a crane; thus, *fructus, fructus, fructui, fructuam, fructus; fructus, fructuum, fructuibus, fructus, fructus, fructus, fructuibus*. So that all the cases are contracted except the dative singular, and genitive plural. In some writers, we still find the genitive singular in *uis*; as, *Ejus annuis causa*, for *antis*. Terent. Heaut. ii. 3. 46. and in others, the dative in *u*; as, *Resistere impetu*, for *impetui*, Cic. Fam. x. 24. *Esse usu*, *sibi, for usui*, lb. xiii. 71. The gen. plur. is sometimes contracted; as, *currum*, for *currum*.

### FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender; as,

		<i>Res, a thing, fem.</i>			
		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Terminations.</i>	
<i>Nom. res,</i>	<i>Nom. res,</i>			<i>es,</i>	<i>es,</i>
<i>Gen. rei,</i>	<i>Gen. rerum,</i>			<i>ei,</i>	<i>erum,</i>
<i>Dat. rei,</i>	<i>Dat. rebus,</i>			<i>ei,</i>	<i>ebus,</i>
<i>Acc. rem,</i>	<i>Acc. res,</i>			<i>em,</i>	<i>es,</i>
<i>Voc. res,</i>	<i>Voc. res,</i>			<i>es,</i>	<i>es,</i>
<i>Abl. re.</i>	<i>Abl. rebus.</i>			<i>e,</i>	<i>ebus.</i>

### In like manner decline,

<i>Acies, the edge of a thing, or an army in order of battle.</i>	<i>Ingluvies, g'uttony.</i>	<i>Sanies, gore.</i>
<i>Caries, rottenness.</i>	<i>Mæcies, leanness.</i>	<i>Scabies, the scab, or tick.</i>
<i>Cæsaries, the hair.</i>	<i>Mætēries, matter.</i>	<i>Sēries, an order.</i>
<i>Facies, the face.</i>	<i>Pernicies, destruction.</i>	<i>Spēcies, an appearance.</i>
<i>Glacies, ice.</i>	<i>Röllivies, a looseness.</i>	<i>Sūperficies, the surface.</i>
	<i>Rābies, madness.</i>	<i>Tempēries, temperateness.</i>

Except *dies*, a day, masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masc. in the plural; and *mēridies*, the mid-day, or noon, masc.

The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative, in *e*.

The nouns of this declension are few in number, not exceeding fifty, and seem anciently to have been comprehended under the third declension. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many the plural altogether.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in *ies*, except three, *fides*, faith; *spes*, hope; *res*, a thing; and all nouns in *ies* are of the fifth, except these four, *abies*, a fir tree; *dries*, a ram; *pāries*, a wall; and *quies*, rest; which are of the third declension.

### IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Irregular nouns may be reduced to three classes, *Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

#### I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Nouns are variable either in gender, or declension, or in both.

I. Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*, and may be reduced to the following classes:

1. *Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural.*

*Avernus, a lake in Campania, hell.*

*Dindymus, a hill in Phrygia.*

*Ismarus, a hill in Thrace.*

*Masilcus, a hill in Campania, famous for excellent wines.*

*Mosālus, a hill in Arcadia.*

*Pangæus, a promontory in Thrace.*

*Tænarus, a promontory in Laconia.*

*Tartarus, hell.*

*Täygētus, a hill in Laconia.*

Thus, *Averna*, *Avernorum*; *Dindyma*, -orum, &c. These are thought by some to be properly adjectives, having *mons* understood in the singular, and *jüga* or *cacumina*, or the like in the plural.

2. *Masc. in the sing. and in the plur. masc. and neuter.*

*Jocus*, a jest, pl. *joci* and *joca*; *locus*, a place, pl. *loci* and *loca*.—When we speak of passages in a book, or topics in discourse, *loci* only is used.

3. *Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural.*

*Carbäsus*, a sail, pl. *carbäsa*; *Pergämus*, the citadel of Troy, pl. *Pergama*.

4. *Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural.*

*Cælum*, pl. *cæli*, heaven; *Ëlysium*, pl. *Ëlysii*, the Elysian fields; *Argos*, pl. *Argi*, a city in Greece.

5. *Neuter in the sing. in the plur. masc. or neuter.*

*Rastrum*, a rake, pl. *rastri*, and *rastra*; *frænum*, a bridle, pl. *fræni* and *fræna*.

6. *Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural.*

*Dëlicium*, a delight, pl. *dëliciæ*; *Ëpülum*, a banquet, pl. *ëpülæ*; *Balneum*, a bath, pl. *balneæ*, and *balnea*.

II. Nouns which vary in declension are called *heteroclitës*; as, *vas*, *väs*, a vessel, plur. *väsa*, *vasorum*; *jügërum*, *jügëri*, an acre, plur. *jügëra*, *jügërum*, *jugëribus*, which has likewise sometimes *jügëris* and *jügëre*, in the singular, from the obsolete *jugus*, or *juger*.

## II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Nouns are defective, either in cases or in number.

Nouns are defective in cases different ways.

1. Some are altogether indeclinable; as, *pöndo*, a pound or pounds; *fas*, right; *nëfas*, wrong; *sinäpi*, mustard; *mäne*, the morning; as, *clärum mäne*, Pers. *A mane ad vesperam*, Plaut. *Multo mane*, &c.; *cëpe*, an onion; *gäusäpë*, a rough coat, &c.; all of them neuter. We may rank among indeclinable nouns, any word put for a noun; as, *vëlle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination, Pers. *Istud eras*, for *iste crastinus dies*, that to-morrow. *Mart. Omagnum Græcorum*, the *Omëga*, or the large O of the Greeks. *Infidus est compositum ex in et fidus*; *infidus* is compounded of *in* and *fidus*. To these add foreign or barbarous names; that is, names which are neither Greek nor Latin, as, *Job*, *Ëlisabet*, *Jerusalem*, &c.

2. Some are used only in one case, and therefore called *mönöpitöta*; as, *inquies*, want of rest, in the nominative singular; *dïcis*, and *nauci*, in the genit. sing.; thus, *dïcis gratiä*, for form's sake; *res nauci*, a thing of no value; *in-*



*ficias*, and *incta* or *incitas*, in the acc. plur.; thus *ire inficias*, to deny; *ad incitas redactus*, reduced to a strait or nonplus; *ingrātis*, in the abl. plur. in spite of one; and these ablatives singular, *noctu*, in the night-time; *die*, *interdiu*, in the day-time; *promptu*, in readiness; *nātu*, by birth; *injussu*, without command or leave; *ergō*, for the sake, as, *ergo illius*, Virg. *Ambāge*, f. with a winding or a tedious story; *compēde*, m. with a fetter; *oasse*, m. with a net; *veprem*, m. a briar: Plur. *ambāges*, *-ibus*, *compedes*, *-ibus*; *casses*, *-ium*; *vepres*, *-ium*, &c.

3. Some are used in two cases only, and therefore called *diptōta*; as, *nēcesse*, or *-um*, necessity; *vōlūpe*, or *volup*, pleasure; *instar*, likeness, bigness; *astu*, a town; *hir*, the palm of the hand; in the nom. and acc. singular; *vesper*, m. abl. *vespēre*, or *vespēri*, the evening; *sīromps*, the same, all alike, abl. *sīrompse*; *spontis*, f. in the genitive, and *sponte* in the ablative, of its own accord: so *impētis*, m. and *impēte*, force; *verbēris*, n. genit. and *verbēre*, abl. a stripe; in the plural entire; *verbēra*, *verberum*, *verberibus*, &c. *rēpētundarum*, abl. *repetundis*, sc. *pecuniis*, money unjustly taken in the time of one's office, extortion; *suppētiae*, nom. plur. *suppētias*, in the acc. help; *infēriæ*, *inferias*, sacrifices to the dead.

4. Several nouns are only used in three cases, and therefore called *triptōta*; as, *prēci*, *precum*, *preca*, f. a prayer, from *prex*, which is not used: in the plural it is entire, *preces*, *precum*, *precibus*, &c. *Fēmīnis*, gen. from the obsolete *femen*, the thigh; in the dat. and abl. sing.; in the nom. acc. and voc. plur. *femina*, *Dica*, a process, acc. sing. *dicam*, pl. *dicas*; *tantundem*, nom. and acc. *tantidem*, genit. even as much. Several nouns in the plural want the genitive, dative and ablative; as, *hiems*, *rus*, *thus*, *mētus*, *mel*, *far*, and most nouns of the fifth declension.

To this class of defective nouns may be added these neuter, *mēlos*, a song; *mēle*, songs: *ēpos*, a heroic poem; *cācōnēthes*, an evil custom; *cēte*, whales; *Tempē*, plur. a beautiful vale in Thessaly, &c. used only in the nom. acc. and voc.; also *grātes*, f. thanks.

5. The following nouns want the nominative, and of consequence the vocative, and therefore are called *tetrap-tōta*: *vīcis*, f. of the place or 'stead of another; *pēcūdis*, f. of a beast; *sordis*, f. of filth; *ditiōnis*, f. of dominion, power; *ōpis*, f. of help. Of these *pēcūdis* and *sordis* have the plural entire; *ditiōnis* wants it altogether; *vīcis* is not

used in the genitive plural; *divis* in the plural, generally signifies wealth, or power, seldom help. To these add *nox*, slaughter; *daps*, a dish of meat; and *frux*, corn; hardly used in the nominative singular, but in the plural mostly entire.

6. Some nouns only want one case, and are called *pentap-  
tōta*; thus, *os*, the mouth; *lux*, light; *fax*, a torch, together with some others, want the genitive plural. *Chaos*, n. a confused mass, wants the genit. sing. and the plural entirely; dat. sing. *chao*. So *ēctias*, i. e. *ēctietas*, a glut or fill of any thing. *Situs*, a situation, nastiness, of the fourth decl. wants the gen. and perhaps the dat. sing. also the gen. dat. and abl. plur.

Of nouns defective in number there are various sorts.

1. Several nouns want the plural, from the nature of the things which they express. Such are the names of virtues and vices, of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, most abstract nouns, &c.; as, *justitia*, justice; *ambitus*, ambition; *astus*, cunning; *mūsica*, music; *apium*, parsley; *argentum*, silver; *aurum*, gold; *lac*, milk; *tritium*, wheat; *hordeum*, barley; *avena*, oats; *juventus*, youth, &c. But of these we find several sometimes used in the plural.

2. The following masculines are hardly ever found in the plural:

*Aër*, -*eris*, the air.  
*Æther*, -*eris*, the sky.  
*Fimus*, -*i*, dung.  
*Hesperus*, -*i*, the evening-star.  
*Lūmus*, -*i*, slime.  
*Mēridies*, -*iei*, mid day.  
*Mundus*, a woman's ornaments.  
*Muscus*, -*i*, moss.

*Nēma*, -*inis*, no body.  
*Pēnus*, -*i*, or -*ūs*, all manner of provisions.  
*Pontus*, -*i*, the sea.  
*Pulvis*, -*eris*, dust.  
*Sanguis*, -*inis*, blood.  
*Sōpor*, -*oris*, sleep.  
*Viscus*, -*i*, bird-lime.

3. The following feminines are scarcely used in the plural:

*Argilla*, -*æ*, potter's earth.  
*Fāma*, -*æ*, fame.  
*Hūmus*, -*i*, the ground.  
*Lues*, -*i*, a plague.  
*Plebs*, *plēbis*, the common people.  
*Pūbes*, -*is*, the youth.  
*Quies*, -*ētis*, rest.

*Sālus*, -*ūtis*, safety.  
*Sitis*, -*is*, thirst.  
*Sūpelles*, -*etilis*, household furniture.  
*Tābes*, -*i*, a consumption.  
*Tellus*, -*uris*, the earth.  
*Vespēra*, -*æ*, the evening.

4. These neuters are seldom used in the plural:

*Album*, -*i*, a list of names.  
*Diluculum*, -*i*, the dawning of day.  
*Ēbur*, -*oris*, ivory.  
*Gēlu*, ind. frost.  
*Hilum*, -*i*, the black speck of a bean, a trifle.  
*Iustium*, -*i*, a vacation, the time when courts do not sit.  
*Lēthum*, death.

*Lūm*, -*i*, clay.  
*Nihil*, *nihilum*, or *nil*, nothing.  
*Pēlāgus*, -*i*, the sea.  
*Pēnum*, -*i*, and *pennus*, -*uris*, all kinds of provisions.  
*Sāls*, *sālis*, salt.  
*Sēnium*, -*is*, old age.  
*Vēs*, *vēris*, the spring.  
*Virus*, -*i*, poison.

5. Many nouns want the singular; as, the names of feasts, books, games, and several cities; thus,

Apollināres, -am, games in honour of Apollo.	Olympia, -arum, the Olympic games.
Bacchūnālia, -iaum, & -iorum, the feasts of Bacchus.	Syracūsae, -arum, Syracuse.
Būvōlta, -arum, a book of psalters.	Hierosolyma, -arum, Jerusalem; or Mieropolyma, &c. of the first declension.

6. The following masculines are hardly used in the singular :

Canecilli, lattices, or windows, made with cross-bars like a net; a rail or balustrade round any place; bounds or limits.	Fūri, the gangways of a ship, seats in the circus, or the cells of a bee-hive.
Cāni, grey hairs.	Fursures, -um, scales in the head.
Cassēs, -um, a hunter's net.	Infēri, the gods below.
Cēlēs, -um, the light-horse.	Lēnēs, -um, hobgoblins, or spirits in the dark.
Gōdlicilli, wirings.	Pibēri, children.
Druidēs, -um, the Druids, priests of the ancient Britons and Gauls.	Majōres, -um, ancestors.
Fusces, -ium, a bundle of rods carried before the chief magistrates of Rome.	Minōres, -um, successors.
Fasti, -orum, or fastus, -uum, calendars, in which were marked festival days, the names of magistrates, &c.	Nātāles, -ium, parentage.
Fines, -ium, the borders of a country, or a country.	Postēri, posterity.
	Prōcēs, -um, the nobles.
	Pūgillāres, -ium, writing-tables.
	Scētes, -ium, thorns.
	Sūpēri, the gods above.
	Vepux, -ium, briars.

7. The following feminines want the singular number :

Alpes, -ium, the Alps.	Fēriæ, holidays.	Ōpēre, workmen.
Augustæ, difficults.	Gādæ, -ium, Cadiz.	Parīentīnæ, ruinous walls.
Apīnæ, gurgaws.	Gerræ, trifles.	Partes, -ium, a party.
Argūtīæ, quarks, witticisms.	Hylæs, -um, the seven stars.	Phālæra, trappings.
Bigæ, a chariot drawn by two horses.	Indūciæ, a truce.	Plægæ, nets.
Trigæ, —by three.	Indūvīæ, clothes to put on.	Pleiādēs, -um, the seven stars.
Quadrigæ, —by four.	Ineptiæ, silly stories.	Præstīgiæ, enchantments.
Braceæ, breeches.	Insidīæ, snares.	Primītiæ, first fruits.
Branchiæ, the gills of a fish.	Kālēndæ, Nōnæ, Idus, -uum, names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month.	Quīntīliæ, excepting.
Charites, -um, the three graces.	Lāpleidīnæ, stone quarries.	Rēliqūiæ, a remainder.
Cūnæ, a cradle.	Litēre, an epistle.	Sālebræ, rugged places.
Dēclīnæ, tilles.	Luētēs, -ium, the small guts.	Sālinæ, salt-pile.
Dīræ, imprecations, the furies.	Mānūbiæ, spoils taken in war.	Scālæ, a ladder.
Dīvitiæ, riches.	Mīusæ, threats.	Scātebræ, a spring.
Dryādēs, -um, the nymphs of the woods.	Mīnūtīæ, little niceties.	Scōpæ, a bosom.
Exetibiæ, watches.	Nūgæ, trifles.	Tēnebræ, darkness.
Exsequiæ, funerals.	Nundīnæ, a market.	Thermæ, hot baths.
Exūviæ, spoils.	Nuptiæ, a marriage.	Thermōpīlæ, straits of mount Octa.
Fācētīæ, pleasant sayings.	Offīciæ, cheats.	Tricæ, toys.
Fœculatēs, -ium, one's goods and chattels.		Valvæ, folding doors.
		Vergīliæ, the seven stars.
		Vindīciæ, a claim of liberty, a defence.

8. The following neuter nouns want the singular :

Acta, public acts or records.	Cūnābūla, a cradle, an origin.
Æstīva, sc. castra, summer quarters.	Dietēria, scoffs, witticisms.
Arma, arms.	Exta, the entrails.
Bellāria, -orum, sweetmeats.	Februa, -orum, purifying sacrifices.
Bona, goods.	Flabra, blasts of wind.
Brēvia, -ium, shelves.	Frāga, strawberries.
Castra, a camp.	Hýbernā, sc. castra, winter quarters.
Chārcīta, -orum, a peace-feast.	Ius, -ium the entrails.
Cibāria, victuals.	Incūnābūla, a cradle.
Cōmītia, an assembly of the people, to make laws, elect magistrates, or hold trials.	Insecta, insects.
Crēpundia, children's baubles.	Iusta, funeral rites.
	Lāmenta, lamentations.

*Lautia*, provisions for the entertainment of foreign ambassadors.

*Lustra*, dens of wild beasts.

*Mägälia*, -ium, cottages.

*Moenia*, -ium, the walls of a city.

*Münia*, -iorum, offices.

*Orgia*, the sacred rites of Bacchus.

*Orilia*, -ium, an inclosure where the people went to give their votes.

*Päleäria*, -ium, the dew-lap of a bear.

*Päräpberna*, all things the wife brings her husband except her dowry.

*Pärentälia*, -ium, solemnities at the funeral of parents.

*Philtära*, love potions.

*Präcordia*, the bowels.

Several nouns in each of the above lists are found also in the singular, but in a different sense; thus, *castrum*, a castle; *littera*, a letter of the alphabet, &c.

*Principia*, the place in the camp where the general's tent stood.

*Pythia*, games in honour of Apollo.

*Rostra*, a place in Rome made of the beaks of ships, from which orators used to make orations to the people.

*Seräta*, old clothes.

*Sponsälia*, -ium, e-pousals.

*Stätiva*, sc. castra, a standing camp.

*Sacrätäurilia*, -ium, a sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and an ox.

*Täläria*, -ium, winged shoes.

*Tesqua*, rough places

*Tränstra*, the seats where the rowers sit in ships.

*Utensilia*, -ium, utensils.

### III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

Nouns are redundant in different ways: 1. In termination only; as, *arbor arboris*, a tree. 2. In declension only; as, *laurus*, genit. *lauri* and *lauris*, a laurel-tree; *äqueä*, *tri*, or *tris*, a mediator. 3. Only in gender; as, *hic* or *hoc vulgus*, the rabble. 4. Both in termination and declension; as, *mätäria*, -ä, or *materies*, -iä, matter; *plebs*, -is, the common people, or *plebes*, -is, -i, or contracted, *plebi*. 5. In termination and gender; as, *tonitrus*, -us, masc. *tonitru*, neut. thunder. 6. In declension and gender; as, *pénus*, -i, and -üs, m. or f. or *penus*, -tris, neut. all kinds of provisions. 7. In termination, gender, and declension; as, *ather*, -tris, masc. and *athra*, -ä, fem. the sky. 8. Several nouns in the same declension are differently varied; as, *tigris*, -is, or *idis*, a tyger; to which may be added, nouns which have the same signification in different numbers; as, *Fidäna*, -ä; or *Fidencä*, -arum, the name of a city.

The most numerous class of redundant nouns consists of those which express the same meaning by different terminations; as, *monda*, -ä; and *mondum*, -i, a fault; *cassis*, -idis; and *cassida*, -ä, a helmet. So,

*Xeläus*, & -um, a grape stone.

*Alveä*, & -e, & -ium, a bee-hive.

*Amäricus*, & -um, sweet marjoram.

*Anellä*, & -ium, an oval shield.

*Angpörtus*, -üs, & -i, & -um, a narrow lane.

*Aphractus*, & -um, an open ship.

*Aplustre*, & -um, the flag, colour.

*Bäcülus*, & -um, a staff.

*Bälteus*, & -um, a belt.

*Bätillus*, & -um, a fire shovel.

*Cäpülus*, & -um, a hill.

*Cäpus*, & -o, a capon.

*Cäpa*, & -e, indec. an onion.

*Clypeus*, & -um, a shield.

*Collävies*, & -io, flith. dirt.

*Compäges*, & -go, a joining.

*Conger*, & -grus, a large eel.

*Cröcus*, & -um, saffron.

*Cübäus*, & -um, a cubit.

*Dnävium*, & -es, a deluge.

*Eläphantus*, & *Elephas*, -antis, an elephant.

*Elägas*, & -äia, an elegy.

*Essäda*, & -um, a chariot.

*Eventus*, & -um, an event.

*Fulgetra*, & -um, lightning.

*Gälärus*, & -um, a hat.

*Gibbus*, & -a; & -er, *ëris*, or *-ëri*, a bunch, a swelling.

Note. The nouns which are called variable and defective, seem originally to have been redundant; thus, *väsa-orum*, properly comes from *väsium*, and not from *väs*:

*Glütinum*, & -en, glue.

*Hebdömas*, & -äda, a week.

*Intrita*, & -um, fine mortar, nituced meat;

*Librärrium*, & -a, a book-case.

*Mäcätia*, & -es, -iä, a wall.

*Milliare*, & -ium, a mile.

*Mönitum*, & -ua, -üs, an admonition.

*Murä*, & -es, -iä, brine or pickle.

*Näsus*, & -um, the nose.

*Obsädo*, & -um, a siege.

*Oestrus*, & -um, a gad-bee.

*Oästra*, & -um, an oyster.

*Peplus*, & -um, a veil, a robe.

*Pästrina*, & -um, a bake-house.

*Prätextus*, -us, & -um, a pretext.

*Räpa*, & -um, a turnip.

*Rüma*, & -mcn, the cud.

*Ruscus*, & -um, a brusk.

*Seps*, & *säpes*, f. an hedge.

*Segmen*, & -mentum, a piece or paring;

*Sibülus*, & -um, a hosing.

*Sinus*, & -um, a milk-pail.

*Spurectia*, & -es, nastiness.

*Strämen*, & -tam, straw.

*Sufflimes*, & -um, a perfume.

*Tignus*, & -um, a plank.

*Türal*, & -älo, a bed-covering.

*Torcülär*, & -are, a wine-press.

*Viscus*, & -um, bird-lime.

*Vätärnus*, & -um, a lethargy.

but custom, which gives laws to all languages, has dropt the singular and retained the plural; and so of others.

*Division of Nouns according to their signification and derivation.*

1. A substantive which signifies many in the singular number, is called a *Collective noun*; as, *pōpūlus*, a people; *exercitus*, an army.

2. A substantive derived from another substantive proper, signifying one's extraction, is called a *Patronymic noun*; as, *Priāmides*, the son of Priamus; *Æētias*, the daughter of Æetes; *Nērīne*, the daughter of Nereus. Patronymics are generally derived from the name of the father; but the poets, by whom they are chiefly used, derive them also from the grandfather, or from some other remarkable person of the family; sometimes likewise from the founder of a nation or people; as, *Ææcides*, the son, grandson, great-grandson, or one of the posterity of Ææcus; *Römūlīdæ*, the Romans, from their first king Romulus.

Patronymic names of men end in *des*; of women in *is*, *as*, or *ne*. Those in *des* and *ne*, are of the first declension, and those in *is* and *as*, of the third; as, *Priamides*, *-dæ*, &c. pl. *dæ*, *-darum*, &c.; *Nērīne*, *-es*; *Tyndāris*, *-īdis*, or *-īdos*; *Æētias*, *-ādis*, &c.

3. A noun derived from a substantive proper, signifying one's country, is called a *Partial or Gentile noun*; as, *Tros*, *Trois*, a man born at Troy; *Troas*, *-ādis*, a woman born at Troy. *Sicūlus*, *-i*, a Sicilian man; *Sicēlis*, *-īdis*, a Sicilian woman: so, *Mācēdo*, *-ōnis*; *Arpīnas*, *-ātis*, a man born in Macedonia, Arpinum; from *Troja*, *Sicilia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*. But partials for the most part are to be considered as adjectives, having a substantive understood; as, *Romānus*, *Athēniensis*, &c.

4. A substantive derived from an adjective, expressing simply the quality of the adjective, without regard to the thing in which the quality exists, is called an *Abstract*; as, *justītia*, justice; *bōnitas*, goodness; *dulcēdo*, sweetness: from *justus*, just; *bonus*, good; *ducis*, sweet. The adjectives from which these abstracts come, are called *Concretes*; because, besides the quality, they also suppose something to which it belongs. Abstracts commonly end in *a*, *as*, or *do*, and are very numerous, being derived from most adjectives in the Latin tongue.

5. A substantive derived from another substantive, signi-

fyng a diminution or lessening of its signification, is called a *Diminutive*; as, *libellus*, a little book; *chartula*, a little paper; *opusculum*, a little work; *corculum*, a little heart; *reticulum*, a small net; *scabellum*, a small form; *lapillus*, a little stone; *cultellus*, a little knife; *pä, ella*, a little page; from *liber*, *charta*, *opus*, *cor*, *rete*, *scamnum*, *lapis*, *culter*, *página*. Several diminutives are sometimes formed from the same primitive; as, from *puer*, *puerulus*, *puellus*, *puellulus*; from *cista*, *cistula*, *cistella*, *cistellula*; from *homo*, *homuncio*, *hōmānculus*. Diminutives for the most part end in *lus*, *la*, *lum*, and are generally of the same gender with their primitives. When the signification of the primitive is increased, it is called an *Amplificative*, and ends in *o*; as, *Capitō*, *-ōnis*, having a large head: so, *nāso*, *lābeo*, *bucco*, having a large nose, lips, cheeks.

6. A substantive derived from a verb is called a *Verbal noun*; as, *āmor* love; *doctrīna*, learning; from *āmo*, and *dōceo*. Verbal nouns are very numerous, and commonly end in *io*, *or*, *us*, and *ura*; as, *lectio*, a lesson; *āmātor*, a lover; *luctus*, grief; *creātūra*, a creature.

## ADJECTIVE.

An adjective is a word added to a substantive, to express its quality; as, *hard*, *soft*.

We know things by their qualities only. Every quality must belong to some subject. An adjective therefore always implies a substantive expressed or understood, and cannot make full sense without it.

An adjective may be thus distinguished from a substantive: If the word *thing* be joined to an adjective, it will make sense; but if it be joined to a substantive, it will make nonsense; thus we can say, "a good thing;" but we cannot say, "a book thing."

Adjectives in English admit of no variation except that of the degrees of comparison.

## LATIN ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives in Latin are varied by gender, number, and case, to agree with substantives in all these accidents.

An adjective properly hath neither genders, numbers, nor cases: but certain terminations answering to the gender, number, and case of the substantive with which it is joined.

Adjectives are varied like three substantives of the same termination and declension.

All adjectives are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

Adjectives of three terminations are of the first and second declension; but adjectives of one or two terminations are of the third.

Exc. The following adjectives, though they have three terminations, are of the third declension :

Xeer, sharp.	Cēlēber, famous.	Pēdester, on foot.
Alīker, cheerful.	Cēler, swift. [horse.	Sālūber, wholesome.
Campester, belonging to a plain.	Equester, belonging to a Pāluster, marshy.	Sylvester, woody.
		Vōlūker, swift.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the first and second declension have their masculine in *us* or *er*, their feminine always in *a*, and their neuter always in *um* ; as, *bōnus*, for the masc. *bona*, for the fem. *bonum*, for the neut. good : thus,

Sing.			Plur.		
N. bōn-us,	-a,	-um,	N. bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
G. bon-i,	-æ,	-i,	G. bon-orum,	-arum,	-orum,
D. bon-o,	-æ,	-o,	D. bon-is,	-is,	-is,
A. bōn-um,	-am,	-um,	A. bon-os,	-as,	-a,
V. bon-e,	-a,	-um,	V. bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
A. bon-o,	-ā,	-o.	A. bon-is,	-is,	-is.

In like manner decline,

Xeerbus unripe, bitter.	Cæcus blind.	Effetus past having young.
Acidus sour, tart.	Callidus cunning.	Egēnus poor.
Acutus sharp.	Calvus bald.	Egrēgius remarkable.
Adultērius wounterfeit.	Cāmurus crooked.	Elixus boiled.
Egrōtus sick.	Candidus fair, sincere.	Exiguus small.
Æmulus vying with.	Cānus hoary.	Eximius excellent.
Æquus equal, just.	Cārus dear.	Exōticus from a foreign country.
Ahēnus of brass.	Cassus void.	Externus outward.
Albus white.	Castus chaste.	Fæctus witty.
Altus high.	Cautus wary.	Fæcundus eloquent.
Amārus bitter.	Cævus hollow.	Falsus false, lying.
Amœnus pleasant.	Cælus high, lofty.	Fāmēliæus famished.
Ambiguus doubtful.	Cernuus sloping.	Fātuus foolish.
Amicus friendly.	Certus certain, sure.	Faustus lucky.
Amplius large.	Clārus famous.	Fērus wild, savage.
Annus yearly.	Claudus lame.	Fessus weary.
Angustus narrow.	Cærlus or -æus azure, sky-coloured.	Festinus hastening.
Antiquus ancient.	Commōdus convenient.	Festus festival.
Apricus sunny.	Obcinquus fine, neat.	Fidus faithful.
Aptus fit.	Cōruseus glittering.	Finistimus neighbouring.
Arcānus secret.	Crassus thick.	Firmus firm, steady.
Aretus strait.	Crēpērus doubtful.	Flaccus flap-eared.
Arduus lofty.	Crīpus curled.	Flāvus yellow.
Argūtus quiek, shrill.	Crūdus raw.	Fodus ugly.
Assus roasted, hot, pure.	Cunetus all.	Fōtus big with young.
Astūtus cunning.	Curtus short.	Formōsus fair.
Avārus covetous.	Curvus crooked.	Frētus trusting.
Avīdus greedy.	Cynicus churlish.	Frivōlus trifling.
Augustus venerable.	Dædālus, poet. curiously made.	Fulvus yellow.
Austērus harsh, rough.	Dēcōrus graceful.	Furvus swarthy.
Balbus stammering.	Densus thick.	Fuscus brown.
Barbārus savage.	Dignus worthy.	Garrūlus prattling.
Bardus dull, slow.	Dicus direful.	Gēlīdus cold as ice.
Beātus blessed.	Dicertus eloquent.	Gēminus double.
Bellus pretty.	Diūturnus lasting.	Germānus of the same stock, real.
Bēnignus kind.	Doctus learned.	Gibbus convex.
Bimus two years old.	Dūbius doubtful.	Gilvus flesh-coloured.
Blæsus slipping.	Dūrus hard.	Glauucus grey.
Blandus flattering.	Ebrius drunk.	Gnārus skilful.
Brūtus brutish, senseless.		
Cādūcus falling.		

<b>Grāvus, active.</b>	<b>Nimius, too much.</b>	<b>Reus, impeached.</b>
<b>Grātus, thankful.</b>	<b>Noxius, hurtful.</b>	<b>Rigidus, cold, stiff, severe.</b>
<b>Mirātus, hirtus, rough.</b>	<b>Nūdus, naked.</b>	<b>Riguus, moist, well-watered</b>
<b>Harpidus, rugged.</b>	<b>Nuntius, bringing news.</b>	<b>ei.</b>
<b>Honestus, honourable, honest.</b>	<b>Obesus, fat, dull.</b>	<b>Rōbustus, strong.</b>
<b>Hornus, of this year.</b>	<b>Obliquus, crooked.</b>	<b>Rocidus, dewy.</b>
<b>Hūmānus, human, belonging to a man, humane, polite.</b>	<b>Obscurus, obscure, ominous.</b>	<b>Rōtundus, round.</b>
<b>Hūmidus, moist.</b>	<b>Obscūrus, dark, mean.</b>	<b>Rūbescens, blushing.</b>
<b>Idōneus, fit.</b>	<b>Obsolētus, old, out of use.</b>	<b>Rūgus, reddish</b>
<b>Jejunus, fasting.</b>	<b>Obstipus, stiff, wry.</b>	<b>Russus, of a carnation colour.</b>
<b>Ignarus, ignorant.</b>	<b>Obtusus, blunt.</b>	<b>Rūtilus, fiery, red.</b>
<b>Ignāvus, slothful.</b>	<b>Odiosus, hateful.</b>	<b>Sævus, cruel.</b>
<b>Improbū, wicked.</b>	<b>Opacū, dark, shady.</b>	<b>Sægus, knowing.</b>
<b>Incastus, unchaste.</b>	<b>Opimus, rich, fat.</b>	<b>Salsus, salted, smart.</b>
<b>Inceptus, renowned.</b>	<b>Optimū, costly, dainty.</b>	<b>Salvus, safe.</b>
<b>Indignus, ready.</b>	<b>Opportū, seasonable.</b>	<b>Sanctus, holy.</b>
<b>Industrius, diligent.</b>	<b>Opulentus, v. -ens, rich.</b>	<b>Sanus, sound.</b>
<b>Ineptus, unfit.</b>	<b>Orbus, destitute.</b>	<b>Saucus, wounded.</b>
<b>Infidus, unfaithful.</b>	<b>Otiū, at leisure.</b>	<b>Sævus, left.</b>
<b>Ingenū, free-born.</b>	<b>Pæus, pink-eyed.</b>	<b>Seambus, bow-legged.</b>
<b>Inimicus, unfriendly.</b>	<b>Pallidus, pale.</b>	<b>Scarus, club-footed.</b>
<b>Iniquus, uneven, unjust.</b>	<b>Parcus, sparing.</b>	<b>Sæcūrus, secure, out of danger.</b>
<b>Intensus, intense, strict.</b>	<b>Patrimus, } having father</b>	<b>Seditus, careful.</b>
<b>Invidus, envious.</b>	<b>Matrimus, } and mother</b>	<b>Sentus, rough.</b>
<b>Involus, unwilling.</b>		<b>Serēnus, clear.</b>
<b>Iracundus, passionate.</b>		<b>Serius, earnest.</b>
<b>Iraus, angry.</b>		<b>Serū, late.</b>
<b>Irrū, fruitless, vain.</b>		<b>Seruus, severe, harsh.</b>
<b>Jucundus, pleasant.</b>		<b>Siccus, dry.</b>
<b>Lætus, joyful.</b>		<b>Stans, flat-nosed.</b>
<b>Lævus, on the left hand.</b>		<b>Sincerus, sincere, pure.</b>
<b>Largus, large.</b>		<b>Situs, situated, placed.</b>
<b>Lascivus, wanton.</b>		<b>Sobrius, sober, temperate.</b>
<b>Lassus, weary.</b>		<b>Socius, in alliance, a companion.</b>
<b>Latus, broad.</b>		<b>Solidus, solid.</b>
<b>Laxus, loose, slack.</b>		<b>Sordidus, dirty.</b>
<b>Lentus, slow, pliant.</b>		<b>Sordidus, prickly.</b>
<b>Lēpidus, pretty, witty.</b>		<b>Spissus, thick.</b>
<b>Limpidus, clear, pure.</b>		<b>Splendidus, bright.</b>
<b>Limpus, squinting.</b>		<b>Spūrus, base-born, not genuine.</b>
<b>Lippus, bicar-eyed.</b>		<b>Squallidus, nasty.</b>
<b>Longinquus, far off.</b>		<b>Sūbidus, foolish.</b>
<b>Longus, long.</b>		<b>Strēnus, active, stout.</b>
<b>Lubrius, slippery.</b>		<b>Strigōsus, lean, lank.</b>
<b>Lucidus, bright.</b>		<b>Stritus, foolish.</b>
<b>Lūridus, pale, ghastly.</b>		<b>Stupidus, stupid, dull.</b>
<b>Luscus, blind of one eye.</b>		<b>Stūbidus, rudder.</b>
<b>Mællentus, lean.</b>		<b>Subsecivus, cut off, or taken from other business.</b>
<b>Malignus, spiteful.</b>		<b>Sūsus, fair, without clouds.</b>
<b>Mancus, maimed, lame.</b>		<b>Sūperbas, proud.</b>
<b>Manifestus, evident.</b>		<b>Sūpinus, lying on the back.</b>
<b>Mareidus, rotten.</b>		<b>Surdus, deaf.</b>
<b>Mēdius, mid or middle.</b>		<b>Tacitus, silent.</b>
<b>Mendicus, beggar-like.</b>		<b>Tantus, so great.</b>
<b>Menstruus, monthly.</b>		<b>Tardus, slow.</b>
<b>Mēracus, without mixture.</b>		<b>Tēmērarius, rash.</b>
<b>Mērus, pure.</b>		<b>Tempestivus, seasonable.</b>
<b>Mirus, wonderful.</b>		<b>Tēmulentus, drunken.</b>
<b>Mōdestus, modest.</b>		<b>Tēpidus, lukewarm.</b>
<b>Mœxus, sad.</b>		<b>Timidus, fearful.</b>
<b>Mōlestus, troublesome.</b>		<b>Torvus, stern.</b>
<b>Mōrōsus, surly.</b>		<b>Tranquillus, calm.</b>
<b>Mōrus, foolish.</b>		<b>Trepidus, trembling for fear.</b>
<b>Mūcidus, musty.</b>		<b>Traculentus, cruel.</b>
<b>Mundus, neat.</b>		<b>Truncus, maimed, wanting.</b>
<b>Mūtus, maimed, without horns.</b>		<b>Tūmidus, swollen.</b>
<b>Mūtus, dumb.</b>		<b>Turbidus, muddy.</b>
<b>Mūtus, mutual, lent or borrowed.</b>		
	<b>Rectus, right, straight,</b>	



Tūta, <i>soft</i> .	Vānidus, <i>strong</i> .	Verrucōsus, <i>born in one's house</i> .
Ūdus, <i>wet</i> .	Vānus, <i>vain, empty</i> .	Vērus, <i>trap</i> .
Ūneus, <i>crooked</i> .	Vārius, <i>various, different</i> .	Vescus, <i>fit for eating</i> .
Ūnens, <i>only</i> .	Vārus, <i>bandy-legged</i> .	Viciuus, <i>neighbouring</i> .
Urbānus, <i>courteous</i> .	Vastus, <i>huge</i> .	Viduus, <i>deprived</i> .
Vāolvus, <i>at leisure</i> .	Vēgētus, <i>vigorous</i> .	Victus, <i>withered</i> .
Vācuus, <i>empty, void</i> .	Vēnustus, <i>comely</i> .	Vividus, <i>lively</i> .
Vāgus, <i>wandering</i> .	Verbosus, <i>talkative</i> .	Vivus, <i>alive</i> .
Valgus, <i>bow-legged</i> .	Vērecundus, <i>bashful</i> .	

Tēner, tenēra, tenērum, *tender*.

Sing.

Plur.

N. tē-er,	-ēra,	-ērūm,	N. ten-ēri,	-ēræ,	-ēra,
G. ten-ēri,	-ēræ,	-ēri,	G. ten-erorum,	-erarum,	-erorum,
D. ten-ero,	-eræ,	-ero,	D. ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris,
A. ten-erum,	-eram,	-erum,	A. ten-eros,	-eras,	-era,
V. ten-er,	-era,	-erum,	V. ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
A. ten-ero,	-erā,	-ero.	A. ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris.

## In like manner decline,

Asper, <i>rough</i> .	Gibber, <i>crook-backed</i> .	Miser, <i>wretched</i> .
Cēter, ( <i>hardly used</i> ) the root.	Lācer, <i>tear</i> .	Prosper, <i>prosperous</i> .
	Liber, <i>free</i> .	

Also the compounds of *gero* and *fero*; as, *lāniger*, bearing wool; *spīser*, bringing help, &c. Likewise *sātura*, *sātūra*, *sātūrum*, full. But most adjectives in *er* drop the *e*; as, *āter*, *atra*, *atrum*, black; gen. *atri*, *atræ*, *atri*; dat. *atra*, *atræ*, *atra*, &c. So, *Æger*, *stic*. Mācer, *lean*. Sacer, *sacred*. Crēber, *frequent*. Niger, *black*. Scāber, *rough*. Glāber, *smooth*. Piger, *slow*. Tēter, *ugly*. Intēger, *entire*. Pulcher, *fair*. Vāfer, *crafty*. Lūdicer, *ludicrous*. Rūber, *red*.

Dexter, *right*, has -tra, -trum, or -tēra, -tērum.

Obs. 1. The following adjectives have their genitive singular, in *ius*, and the dative in *i*, through all their genders: in the other cases like *bonus* and *tener*.

Dnus, -a, -um; gen. unius, dat. unī, one.	Alter, altērius, one of two, the other.
Alius, -ius, one of many, another.	Neuter, -trius, neither.
Nullus, nullius, none.	Ūter, utrius, <i>whether of the two</i> .
Solus, -ius, alone.	Ūterque, utriusque, <i>both</i> .
*Tōtus, -ius, whole.	Ūterlibet, -triuslibet, { <i>which of the two</i>
Ullus, -ius, any.	Ūtervis, -triusvis, { <i>you please</i> .
Alterūter, <i>the one or the other</i> , alterutrus, alterutri, and sometimes alterius utrius, alteri utri, &c.	

These adjectives except *totus*, are called *Partitivæ*; and seem to resemble, in their signification as well as declension, what are called pronominal adjectives. In ancient writers we find them declined like *bonus*.

Obs. 2. To decline an adjective properly, it should always be joined with a substantive in the different genders; as, *bonus liber*, a good book; *bona penna*, a good pen; *bonum sedile*, a good seat. But as the adjective in Latin is often found without its substantive joined with it, we therefore, in declining *bonus*, for instance, commonly say *bonus*, a good man, understanding *vir* or *homo*; *bona*, a good woman, understanding *femina*; and *bonum*, a good thing, understanding *negotium*.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1. Adjectives of one termination; as, *felix*, for the masc. *felix*, for the fem. *felix*, for the neut. happy; thus,

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N. fē-lix,	-ix,	-īx,	N. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
G. fel-icis,	-īcis,	-īcis,	G. fel-icium,	-icium,	-icium,
D. fel-ici,	-īci,	-īci,	D. fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus,
A. fel-icem,	-icem,	-ix,	A. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
V. fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	V. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
A. fel-ice, or	-īci, &c.		A. fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus.

## In like manner decline,

Amens, <i>wise.</i>	Philax, <i>deceitful.</i>	Rēpens, <i>fresh.</i>
Atrōx, <i>heavily, cruel.</i>	Fērax, <i>fertile.</i>	Rēpens, <i>sudden.</i>
Audax, <i>bold, &amp; -ens, -tis,</i>	Fērox, <i>fierce.</i>	Sāgax, <i>-ācia, sagacious.</i>
<i>bold.</i>	Frequens, <i>frequent.</i>	Sālix, <i>-mois, lustful.</i>
Bilix, <i>-icis, woven with a</i>	Ingens, <i>huge.</i>	Sāpiens, <i>wise.</i>
<i>double thread.</i>	Iners, <i>-tis, sluggish.</i>	Sōdors, <i>shrewd.</i>
Cāpax, <i>capacious.</i>	Insons, <i>guiltless.</i>	Sons, <i>guilty.</i>
Cleus, <i>-ūria, tame.</i>	Mendax, <i>lying.</i>	Tēnax, <i>tenacious.</i>
Clēmens, <i>-tis, merciful.</i>	Mordax, <i>biting, satirical.</i>	Trux, <i>-fcia, cruel.</i>
Contūnax, <i>stubborn.</i>	Pernix, <i>-icis, swift.</i>	Uber, <i>-ēria, fertile.</i>
Dēmens, <i>mad.</i>	Pervicax, <i>wilful.</i>	Vehermens, <i>vehement.</i>
Edax, <i>gluttonous.</i>	Pētūlans, <i>forward, saucy.</i>	Vēlox, <i>-fcis, swift.</i>
Efficax, <i>effectual.</i>	Prægnans, <i>with child.</i>	Vōrax, <i>devouring.</i>
Elégans, <i>handsome.</i>	Prūdens, <i>prudent.</i>	

2. Adjectives of two terminations; as, *mītis*, for the masc. and fem. *mitis*, for the neut. meek; so, *mitior*, *mitior*, *mitius*, meeker; thus,

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N. mītis,	mitis,	mīte,	N. mītes,	mites,	mitia,
G. mītis,	mitis,	mitis,	G. mītium,	mitium,	mitium,
D. mīti,	miti,	miti,	D. mītibus,	mitibus,	mitibus,
A. mītem,	mitem,	mīte,	A. mītes,	mites,	mitia,
V. mītis,	mitis,	mīte,	V. mītes,	mites,	mitia,
A. mīti,	miti,	miti.	A. mītibus,	mitibus,	mitibus.

## In like manner decline,

Agilis <i>active.</i>	Ignōbilis <i>of mean paren-</i>	Rūdis <i>raw.</i>
Amābilis <i>lovely.</i>	<i>tage.</i>	Sagax <i>shrewd.</i>
Biennis <i>of two years.</i>	Immanis <i>huge, cruel.</i>	Segnus <i>slow.</i>
Brēvis <i>short.</i>	Inānis <i>empty.</i>	Sōlennis <i>annual, solemn.</i>
Civīlis <i>courteous.</i>	Incōlūmis <i>safe.</i>	Stērilis <i>barren.</i>
Cœlestis <i>heavenly.</i>	Infāmis <i>infamous.</i>	Suāvis <i>sweet.</i>
Cōmis <i>kind, affable.</i>	Insignis <i>remarkable.</i>	Sublīmis <i> lofty.</i>
Crūdōlis <i>cruel.</i>	Jūgis <i>perpetual.</i>	Subtilis <i>subtle, fine.</i>
Debīlis <i>weak.</i>	Lævis <i>smooth.</i>	Tālis <i>such.</i>
Dēformis <i>ugly.</i>	Lēnis <i>gentle.</i>	Tēnūis <i>small.</i>
Dōcēlis <i>teachable.</i>	Lēvis <i>light.</i>	Terrestris <i>earthly.</i>
Dulcis <i>sweet in taste.</i>	Mēdiocris <i>middling.</i>	Torrēbilis <i>dreadful.</i>
Exilis <i>slender.</i>	Mirābilis <i>wonderful.</i>	Tristis <i>sad.</i>
Æmanguis <i>bloodless.</i>	Mollis <i>soft.</i>	Turpis <i>base.</i>
Fortis <i>brave.</i>	Omnis <i>all.</i>	Utilis <i>useful.</i>
Frāgilis <i>brittle.</i>	Pernix <i>swift, fleet.</i>	Vilis <i>worthless.</i>
Grandis <i>great.</i>	Putris <i>rotten.</i>	Viridis <i>green.</i>
Grāvus <i>heavy.</i>	Pinguis <i>fat.</i>	Vitilis <i>pitam.</i>
Hilaris <i>cheerful.</i>	Qualis <i>of what kind.</i>	

Sing.			Plur.		
N. mīti-or,	-or,	-us,	N. mīti-ōres,	-ōres,	-ōra,
G. mīti-ōris,	-ōris,	-ōris,	G. mīti-orum,	-orum,	-orum,
D. mīti-ori,	-ori,	-ori,	D. mīti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus,
A. mīti-orem,	-orem,	-us,	A. mīti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
V. mīti-or,	-or,	-us,	V. mīti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
A. mīti-ore, or -ori, &c.			A. mīti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus.

In this manner all comparatives are declined.

3. Adjectives of three terminations; as, *acer* or *acris*, for the masc. *acris*, for the fem. *acre*, for the neuter sharp; thus,

Sing.			Plur.		
N. ā-acer or ācris,	ācris,	ācre,	N. a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
G. a-cris,	-cris,	-cris,	G. a-crium,	-crium,	-crium,
D. a-cri,	-cri,	-cri,	D. a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus,
A. a-crem,	-crem,	-cre,	A. a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
V. a-cer, or acris,	-cris,	-cre,	V. a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
A. a-cri,	-cri,	-cri.	A. a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus.

In like manner *alacer*, or *alacris*, *cēlar*, or *cēlāris*, *cēlēber*, or *celebris*, *salūber* or *salūbris*, *volūcer* or *volucris*, &c.

### RULES.

1. Adjectives of the third declension have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular; but if the neuter be in *e*, the ablative has *i* only.

2. The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative, in *ia*: except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

#### Exceptions.

Exc. 1. *Dives*, *hospes*, *sospes*, *sūperates*, *jūvenis*, *sēnex*, and *pauper*, have *e* only in the ablative singular, and consequently *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. The following have also *e* in the abl. sing. and *um*, not *ium*, in the genit. plur. *Compos*, -*stis*, master of, that hath obtained his desire; *impos*, -*otis*, unable; *inops*, -*spis*, poor; *supplicax*, -*icis*, suppliant, humble; *uber*, -*eris*, fertile; *convors*, -*itis*, sharing, a partner; *dēgener*, -*eris*, degenerate, or degenerating; *vigil*, watchful; *pūber*, -*eris*, of age, marriageable; and *celēs*. Also compounds in *ceps*, sc. *pes*, and *corpor*; as, *particeps*, partaking of; *artifex*, -*icis*, cunning, an artist; *dīpes*, -*pēdis*, two-footed; *bicorpor*, -*oria*, two-bodied, &c. All these have seldom the neuter sing. and almost never the neuter plur. in the nominative and accusative. To which add *mēnor*, mindful, which has *memōri* and *memōrum*: also, *dēsēs*, rēse. *hēbēs*, *perpes*, *præpes*, *tēres*, *concolor*, *versticolor*, which likewise for the most part want the genitive plural.

Exc. 3. *Par*, equal, has only *pāri*: but its compounds have either *e* or *i*; as, *compāre*, or -*ri*. *Vetus*, old has *vetēra*, and *vetērum*: *plus*, more, which is only used in the neut. sing. has *plure*; and in the plural, *plūres*, *plura*, or *pluria*, *plurimum*.

Exc. 4. *Expes*, hopeless; and *pōtis*, -*e*, able, are only used in the nominative. *Potis* has also sometimes *potis* in the neuter.

#### Remarks.

1. Comparatives and adjectives in *ns*, have *e* more frequently than *i*: and participles in the ablative called absolute have generally *e*; as, *Tiberis regantē*, not *regantē*, in the reign of Tiberius.

2. Adjectives joined with substantives neuter for the most part have *i*; as, *victricis*, *ferro*, not *victrice*.

3. Different words are sometimes used to express the different genders; as, *victor*, victorious, for the masc. *victrix*. for the fem. *Victrix*, in the plur. ha. likewise the neuter gender; thus, *victrices*, *victricis* : so *ultor*, and *ultrix*, revengeful. *Victrix* is also neuter in the singular.

4. Several adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frenum*, *bacillum*, *arma*, *jugum*, *lunus*, *son nus*, and *animus*, end in *is* or *us*; and therefore are either of the first and second declension, or of the third; as, *declivus*, *-is, -e*; and *declivus*, *-a, -um*, steep; *imbécillus*, and *imbécillus*, weak; *semisomnis*, and *semisomnus*, half asleep; *exanimis*, and *exanimus*, lifeless. But several of them do not admit of this variation; thus we say, *magnánimus*, *flexánimus*, *effrénus*, *levisomnus*; not *magnánimis*, &c. On the contrary, we say, *juvillánimis*, *injúgia*, *úllimis*, *insomnis*, *exsomnis*; not *puustianimus*, &c. So *semianimis*, *intermis*, *sublimis*, *acclivis*, *declivis*, *proclivis*; rarely *semianimus*, &c.

5. Adjectives derived from nouns are called *Nominatives*; as, *cordátus*, *módrátus*, *cælestis*, *adámanthínus*, *corpóréus*, *agrestis*, *æstivus*, &c. from *cor*, *mos*, *cælum*, *adamas*, &c. Those which diminish the signification of their primitives, are called *Diminutives*; as, *missellus*, *parvulus*, *dúrtusculus*, &c. Those which signify a great deal of a thing, are called *Amplificatives*, and end in *osus*, or *entus*; as, *vínosus*, *vínulentus*, given to much wine; *opérósus*, laborious; *plumbósus*, full of lead; *nodósus*, knotty, full of knots; *corpóulentus*, corpulent, &c. Some end in *tus*; as, *aurítus*, having long or large ears; *nasútus*, having a large nose; *litératus*, learned, &c.

6. An adjective derived from a substantive or from another adjective, signifying possession or property, is called a *Possessive Adjective*; as, *Scóticus*, *paternus*, *heréditus*, *aliénus*, of or belonging to Scotland, a father, a master, another : from *Scotia*, *pater*, *herus*, and *alius*.

7. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *Verbals*; as, *amabílis* amiable; *capax*, capable; *docílis*, teachable : from *amo*, *capio*, *doceo*.

8. When participles become adjectives, they are called *Participials*; as, *sapiens*, wise; *acutus*, sharp; *disertus*, eloquent. Of these many also become substantives; as, *adolescens*, *animans*, *rudens*, *serpens*, *advocatus*, *sponsus*, *natus*, *legatus*; *sponsus*, *nata*, *serta*, se. *corona*, a garland; *prætexta*, se. *vestis*; *debitum*, *decretum*, *præceptum*, *ratum*, *tectum*, *votum*, &c.

9. Adjectives derived from adverbs, are called *Adverbials*; as, *hodiernus*, from *hodie*; *crastinus*, from *cras*; *binus*, from *bis*; &c. There are also adjectives derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, from *contra*; *anticus*, from *ante*; *posticus*, from *post*.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which signify number, are divided into four classes, *Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, *Distributive*, and *Multipliative*.

1. The *Cardinal* or *Principal* numbers are :

Unus,	one.	Trīginta,	thirty.
Duo,	two.	Quadrāginta,	forty.
Tres,	three.	Quinquāginta,	fifty.
Quātuor,	four.	Sexāginta,	sixty.
Quinque,	five.	Septuāginta,	seventy.
Sex,	six.	Octōginta,	eighty.
Septem,	seven.	Nōnaginta,	ninety.
Octo,	eight.	Centum,	a hundred.
Nōvem,	nine.	Dūcenti,	two hundred.
Dēc. m,	ten.	Trēcenti,	three hundred.
Undēcim,	eleven.	Quadrīngenti,	four hundred.
Dūdēcim,	twē.ve.	Quīngenti,	five hundred.
Trēdēcim,	thirteen.	Sexcenti,	six hundred.
Quatuordecim,	fourteen.	Septīngenti,	seven hundred.
Quīndecim,	fifteen.	Octīngenti,	eight hundred.
Sextācim,	sixteen.	Nongenti,	nine hundred.
Septēdecim,	seventeen.	Mille,	a thousand.
Octōdēcim,	eighteen.	Duo mīlla, or	two thousand.
Nōvēdecim,	nineteen.	bis mille,	
Vīginti,	twenty.	Decēta mīlla, or	ten thousand.
Vīginti unus, or	twenty-one.	dēcies mille,	
Unus & vīginti,		Vīginti mīlla, or	twenty thousand.
Vīginti duo, or	vices mille,		
Duo & vīginti,	twenty-two.		

The cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, want the singular.

*Unus* is not used in the plural, unless when joined with a substantive which wants the singular; as, in *unis adibus*, in one house. *Te cent. Eun.* ii. 3. 75. *Unæ nuptiæ.* *Id.* *And.* iv. 1. 81. In *una macchia convenire*, Sallust, *Cat.* 6. or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes, *Cic. Flacc.* 29.

*Duo* and *tres* are thus declined :

	<i>Plur.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>	
N. duo,	duæ,	duo,	N. tres,	tres,	tria,
G. duorum,	duarum,	duorum,	G. trium,	trium,	trium,
D. duobus,	duabus,	duobus,	D. tribus,	tribus,	tribus,
A. duos or duo,	duas,	duo,	A. tres,	tres,	tria,
V. duo,	duæ,	duo,	V. tres,	tres,	tria,
A. duobus,	duabus,	duobus.	A. tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

In the same manner with *duo*, decline *ambo*, both.

All the cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum*, including them both, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *millæ*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*; thus, *ducenti*, *tertia*; *ducentorum*, *terum*, *terum*, &c.

*Millæ* is used either as a substantive or adjective; when taken substantively, it is indeclinable in the singular number; and in the plural has *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, &c.

*Millæ*, an adjective, is commonly indeclinable, and to express more than one thousand, has the numeral adverbs joined with it; thus, *millæ homines*, a thousand men; *tria millia hominum*, of a thousand men, &c. *His mille homines*, two thousand men; *ter mille homines*, &c. But with *millæ*, a substantive, we say *millæ hominum*, a thousand men; *duo millia hominum*, *tria millia*, *quatuor millia*, *centum*, or *centena millia hominum*; *decies centena millia*, a million; *vicies centena millia*, two millions, &c.

2. The Ordinal numbers are, *primus*, first; *secundus*, second, &c. declined like *bonus*.

3. The distributive are, *singuli*, one by one; *bini*, two by two, &c. declined like the plural of *bonus*.

The following Table contains a list of the Ordinal and Distributive Numbers, together with the Numeral Adverbs, which are often joined with the Numeral Adjectives.

<i>Ordinal.</i>	<i>Distributive.</i>	<i>Numeral Adverbs.</i>
1 Primus, a, am.	Singuli, æ, æ.	Semel, once.
2 secundus.	bini.	bis, twice.
3 tertius.	terni.	ter, thrice.
4 quartus.	quaterni.	quater, four times.
5 quintus.	quini.	quinquies, &c.
6 sextus.	seni.	sexies.
7 septimus.	septeni.	septies.
8 octavus.	octidni.	octies.
9 nonus.	noveni.	novies.
10 decimus.	deni.	decies.
11 undecimus.	undeni.	undecies.
12 duodecimus.	duodeni.	duodecies.
13 decimus tertius.	tridni, terni deni.	tredecies.
14 decimus quartus.	quadri deni.	quatuordecies.
15 decimus quintus.	quidni.	quindecies.
16 decimus sextus.	seni deni.	sexdecies.
17 decimus septimus.	septeni deni.	decies ac septies.
18 decimus octavus.	octoni deni.	decies ac octies.
19 decimus nonus.	noveni deni.	decies et novies.
20 vigesimus, vicissimus.	vicedni.	vicies.
21 vigesimus primus.	vicedni singuli.	vicies semel.
30 trigesimus, tricissimus.	triceni.	trices.
40 quadragessimus.	quadrageni.	quadragies.
50 quinquagesimus.	quingenti.	quingages.
60 sexagesimus.	sexageni.	sexages.
70 septuagesimus.	septuageni.	septuages.
80 octogesimus.	octogeni.	octogies.
90 nonagesimus.	nonageni.	nonages.

100	centesimus.	centeni.	centies.
200	duccentesimus.	ducceni.	duccenties.
300	treccentesimus.	trecceni.	treccenties.
400	quadringentesimus.	quater centeni.	quadringenties.
500	quingentesimus.	quinqies centeni.	quingentia.
600	sexcentesimus.	sexies centeni.	sexcenties.
700	septingentesimus.	septies centeni.	septingenties.
800	octingentesimus.	octies centeni.	octingenties.
900	nongentesimus.	novies centeni.	nongingenties.
1000	millesimus.	milleni.	millia.
2000	bis millesimus.	bis millesi.	bis millia.

4. The multiplicative numbers are *simplex*, simple; *duplex*, double, or two-fold; *triplex*, triple, or three-fold; *quadruplex*, four-fold, &c.; all of them declined like *felix*; thus, *simplex*, *-icis*, &c.

The interrogative words to which the above numerals answer, are *quot*, *quōtus*, *quōtēni*, *quōties*, and *quōtūplex*.

*Quōt*, how many? is indeclinable: So *tot*, so many; *totidem*, just so many; *quotquot*, *quocunq̄ue*, how many soever; *aliquot*, some.

To these numeral adjectives may be added such as express division, proportion, time, weight, &c. as, *bipartitus*, *tripartitus*, &c. *duplus*, *triplus*, &c. *bi-mus*, *tri-mus*, &c. *biennis*, *triennis*, &c. *bimestris*, *trimetris*, &c. *bilibris*, *trilibris*, &c. *binarius*, *ternarius*, &c. which last are applied to the number of any kind of things whatever; as, *versus sēnārius*, a verse of six feet; *dēnārius nummus*, a coin of ten asses; *octogenarius senex*, an old man eighty years old; *grex centenarius*, a flock of an hundred, &c.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

The comparison of adjectives expresses the quality in different degrees; as, *hard*, *harder*, *hardest*.

Those adjectives only are compared, whose signification admits the distinction of *more* and *less*.

The degrees of comparison are three, the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

The *Positive* seems improperly to be called a degree. It simply signifies the quality; as, *durus*, hard: and serves only as a foundation for the other degrees. By it we express the relation of equality; as, *he is as tall as I*.

The *Comparative* expresses a greater degree of the quality, ~~and~~ always a reference to a less degree of the same; as, *stronger*, *wiser*.

The *Superlative* expresses the quality carried to the greater degree; as, *strongest*, *wisest*.

### Comparison of ENGLISH Adjectives.

In English the comparative is formed from the positive, by adding to the end of the word *r* or *er*; and the superlative by adding *st* or *est*; as, *wise*, *wiser*, *wisest*; *cold*, *colder*, *coldest*. The adverbs *more* and *most* put before the adjective, have the same effect; as *brave*, *more brave*, *most brave*.

Monosyllables for the most part are compared by *er* and *est*; as, *fair*, *fairer*, *fairest*; and Polysyllables by *more* and *most*; as, *beautiful*, *more beautiful*, *most beautiful*.

In some few adjectives, the superlative is formed by adding *most*; as, *undermost*, *utmost*, or *ulmost*, *uppermost*, *neithermost*, *foremost*.

### Comparison of LATIN Adjectives.

The comparative degree is formed from the first case of the positive in *i*, by adding the syllable *or*, for the mascu-

line and feminine, and *us* for the neuter. The superlative is formed from the same case, by adding *ssimus*; as, *altus*, high, genit. *alti*: comparative, *altior*, for the masc. *altior*, for the fem. *altius*, for the neut. higher; superlative, *altissimus*, -a, -um, highest. So *mitis*, meek; dative *miti*; *mitior*, -or, -us, meeker; *mitissimus*, -a, -um, meekest.

If the positive end in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rimus*; as, *pauper*, poor; *pauperrimus*, poorest.

The comparative is always of the third declension: the superlative of the first and second; as, *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*; *alta*, *altior*, *altissima*; *altum*, *altius*, *altissimum*; gen. *alti*, *altiōris*, *altissimi*, &c.

### Irregular and defective Comparison.

1. Bonus,	mēlior,	optimus,	good,	better,	best.
Mālus,	pejor,	peſsimus,	bad,	worse,	worst.
Magnus,	major,	maximus,	great,	greater,	greatest.
Parvus,	minor,	minimus,	small,	less,	least.
Multus,	—	plūrimus,	much,	more.	most.

Fem. Multa, plurima; neut. multum, plus, plurimum; plur. multi, plures, plurimi; multae, plures; plurimae, &c.

In several of these, both in English and Latin, the comparative and superlative seem to be formed from some other adjective, which in the positive has fallen into disuse; in others, the regular form is contracted; as, *maximus*, for *magnissimus*; *most*, for *morest*; *least*, for *leaste*; *worst*, for *worrest*.

### 2. These five have their superlative in *limus*:

Fācilis, facilior, facillimus, easy.	Imbecillus, imbecillior, imbecillimus, weak.
Grācilis, gracilior, gracillimus, lean.	Similis, similior, simillimus, like.
Hūmilis, humilior, humillimus, low.	

3. The following adjectives have regular comparatives, but form the superlative differently:

Citer, eterior, citimus, near.	Intērus, intērior, intimus, inward.
Dexter, dexterior, dextimus, right.	Mātūrus, -ior, maturimus, or maturissimus, ripe.
Sinister, sinisterior, sinistimus, left.	Postērus, posterior, postremus, behind.
Exter, -erior, extimus, or extrēmus, outward.	Sūpērus, -rior, suprēmus, or summus, high.
Infērus, -ior, infimus, or imus, below.	Vētus, vētērior, vēterrimus, old.

4. Compounds in *dicus*, *lōquus*, *ficus*, and *volus*, have *entior*, and *entissimus*; as, *mālēdicus*, railing, *mālēdicentior*, *maledicentissimus*: So *magnīlōquus*, one that boasteth; *bēnēficus*, beneficent; *mālēvōlus*, malevolent; *mirīficus*, wonderful; -*entior*, -*entissimus*, or *mirīficissimus*. *Nēquam*, indecl. worthless, vicious, has *nēquior*, *nequissimus*.

There are a great many adjectives, which, though capable of having their signification increased; yet either want one of the degrees of comparison, or are not compared at all.

### 1. The following adjectives are not used in the positive:

*Detērior, worse, deterrimus.*  
*Ocior, swifter, oc is ātraus.*  
*Prior, former, prius.*

*Prāpior, nearer, proximus, near: it or nēx.*  
*Ultērio, farther, ultimus.*

## 2. The following want the comparative :

*Incēptus, incolytissimus, renowned.*  
*Mēritus, meritissimus, deserving.*  
*Nōvus, novissimus, new.*

*Nāpērus, nuperrimus, late.*  
*Par, pārisimus, equal.*  
*Sāctē, sacerrimus, sacred.*

## 3. The following want the superlative :

*Adōlescēna, adōlescentior, young.*  
*Diūtarnus, diūtarnior, lasting.*  
*Ingeni, ingentior, huge.*  
*Jūvēnia, junior, young.*

*Optimus, opinior, rich.*  
*Prōnus, pronior, inclined downwards.*  
*Sātur, satūrior, f. il.*  
*Sēnex, senior, old.*

To supply the superlative of *jūvēnia*, or *adōlescens*, we say, *minimus natu*, the youngest; and of *senex*, *maximus natu*, the oldest.

Adjectives in *ilis, illa*, and *illud*, also want the superlative: as, *civillis, civillior, civill;* *regalis, regalius, regali;* *lābilis, lābilior, lamentable.* So *juventūs, youthful;* *castris, small,* &c.

To these add several others of different terminations: Thus, *arcānus, -ior, secret;* *declivis, -ior, bending downwards;* *longinquus, -ior, far off;* *prōpinquus, -ior, near.*

*Antērior, former;* *sequior, worse;* *salior, better,* are only found in the comparative.

4. Many adjectives are not compared at all; such are those compounded with nouns or verbs; as, *veretiblor, of divers colours;* *pestifer, poisonous;* also adjectives in *us* pure, in *ious, ious, orus, orinus*, and diminutives; as, *dubius, doubtful;* *vācuis, empty;* *fūgitiuus, that flieth away;* *mātūrius, early;* *cāndrus, shrill;* *lēgētius, lawful;* *tēnelus, somewhat tender;* *majuscūlus, &c.*: together with a great many others of various terminations; as, *almus, gracious;* *præcax, -ctis, soon or early ripe;* *mirus, egēnus, lācer, mēmor, suspes, &c.*

This defect of comparison is supplied by putting the adverb *magis* before the adjective, for the comparative degree; and *valde* or *maxime* for the superlative; thus, *egētus, needy;* *magis egēnus, more needy;* *valde or maxime egēnus, very or most needy.* Which form of comparison is also used in those adjectives which are regularly compared.

## PRONOUN.

A Pronoun is a word which stands instead of a Noun.

Thus, *I* stands for the name of the person who speaks; *thou* for the name of the person addressed.

Pronouns serve to point out objects, whose names we either do not know, or do not want to mention. They also serve to shorten discourse, and prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word; thus, instead of saying, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, Cæsar turned Cæsar's arms against Cæsar's country*, we say, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, he turned his arms against his country.*

## ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

In English there are five substantive pronouns, *I, thou, he, she, and it.*

The first is used, when one speaks of himself; as, *I love*: the second, when the person spoken to is the subject of the discourse; as, *thou lovest*: and the last three in speaking of any other person or thing; as, *he, she, or it falls.*

*I* is said to be of the first person; *thou*, of the second; and *he, she, or it*, together with all other words, of the third; and so in the plural number, *we, ye, they.* Hence these are called *Personal Pronouns.*

The person speaking, and the person spoken to, do not need the distinction of gender; because they are supposed to be present, and therefore their sex is commonly known.



But the third person, or thing spoken of, being frequently absent, and often unknown, requires to be distinguished by different genders; thus, *he, she, it*.

Substantive pronouns in English have three cases, the *nominative*, the *genitive* or *possessive*, and the *objective* or *accusative* case, which follows the verb active, or the preposition.

*Substantive Pronouns, according to their Cases, Numbers, and Persons.*

Cases.	Singular. Persons.			Plural. Persons.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Nom.	I,	thou,	he, she, it;	we,	ye or you,	they.
Gen.	mine,	thine,	his, hers, its;	ours,	yours,	theirs.
Acc.	me,	thee,	him, her, it;	us,	you,	them.

All other pronouns are adjectives; as, *this, that, our, your, &c.* A pronominal adjective differs from a common adjective in this, that it does not express quality.

Several adjective pronouns do not admit the article before them, because they very much resemble it in their signification; as, *that man, &c.*

From the personal pronouns are formed these pronominal adjectives, *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their*. *Mine* and *thine* are often used as adjectives for *my* and *thy*, when the substantive following them begins with a vowel.

Some adjective pronouns are varied to mark number; as, *this, these; that, those*. To these add the adjectives *other, one*, which, when their substantive is not expressed, have in the plural *others, ones*: as, *many others, great ones*; in which case they seem to be used as substantives.

*Who, which, him*, are called *Relatives*, because they refer to some substantive going before, which is therefore called the *Antecedent*. *Who* is varied by cases, thus, *whó, whose, whom*. *His*, and *whose* seem to be contractions for *him's* and *whom's*, the possessive case being formed from the objective; as, *hers* from *her*; *mine* from *me*, &c.

*Who, which, what, whether*, are called *Interrogatives*, when used in asking questions; when used otherwise, they are called *Indefinites*.

*Own*, and *self*, in the plural  *selves*, are joined to the possessives, *my, our, thy, your, his, her, their*; as, *my, or mine own hand, myself, yourselves*. *Self* is likewise joined to the substantive pronoun *it*, as *itself*. *Himself, themselves*, seem to be used by corruption for *hissself, theirselves*.

## LATIN PRONOUNS.

The simple pronouns in Latin are eighteen; *ego, tu, sui; ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui; meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester; nostras, vestras*, and *cujas*.

Three of them are substantives, *ego, tu, sui*; the other fifteen are adjectives.

		Ego, I.		
		Sing.	Plur.	
Nom.	<i>ego, I,</i>		Nom.	<i>nos, we,</i>
Gen.	<i>mei, of me,</i>		Gen.	<i>nostrum, or nostri, of us,</i>
Dat.	<i>mihi, to me,</i>		Dat.	<i>nobis, to us,</i>
Acc.	<i>me, me,</i>		Acc.	<i>nos, us,</i>
Voc.	_____		Voc.	_____
Abl.	<i>me, with me.</i>		Abl.	<i>nobis, with us.</i>

## Tu, thou.

Sing.		Plur.	
N. tu, <i>thou</i> ,	}	or you.	N. vos, <i>ye or you</i> .
G. tui, <i>of thee</i> ,			G. vestrum, <i>or vestri, of you</i> .
D. tibi, <i>to thee</i> ,			D. vobis, <i>to you</i> .
A. te, <i>thee</i> ,			A. vos, <i>you</i> .
V. tu, <i>O thou</i> ,			V. vos, <i>O ye or you</i> .
A. te, <i>with thee</i> ,			A. vobis, <i>with you</i> .

## Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.

Sing.		Plur.
N. _____	}	N. _____
G. sui, <i>of himself, of herself, of itself</i> ,		G. sui, <i>of themselves</i> .
D. sibi, <i>to himself, to herself, &amp;c.</i>		D. sibi, <i>to themselves</i> .
A. se, <i>himself, &amp;c.</i>		A. se, <i>themselves</i> .
V. _____		V. _____
A. se, <i>with himself, &amp;c.</i>		A. se, <i>with themselves</i> .

Obs. 1. *Ego* wants the vocative, because one cannot call upon himself, except as a second person: thus, we cannot say, *O ego*, *O I*; *O nos*, *O we*.

Obs. 2. *Mihi* in the dative is sometimes by the poets contracted into *mi*.

Obs. 3. The genitive plural of *ego* was anciently *nostrorum* and *nostrarum*; of *tu*, *vestrorum* and *vestrarum*, which were afterwards contracted into *nostrum* and *vestrum*.

We commonly used *nostrum* and *vestrum* after participles, numerals, comparatives, or superlatives; and *nostrum* and *vestrum* after other words.

The English substantive pronouns, *he*, *she*, *it*, are expressed in Latin by these pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *iste*, *hic* or *is*; as,

*Ille*, for the masc. *illa*, for the fem. *illud*, for the neut. that: or, *ille*, he; *illa*, she; *illud*, it, or that; thus,

Sing.			Plur.		
N. ille,	illa,	illud,	N. illi,	illæ,	illa,
G. illius,	illius,	illius,	G. illorum,	illarum,	illorum,
D. illi,	illi,	illi,	D. illis,	illis,	illis,
A. illum,	illam,	illud,	A. illos,	illas,	illa,
V. ille,	illa,	illud,	V. illi,	illæ,	illa,
A. illo,	illâ,	illo.	A. illis,	illis,	illis.

*Ipse*, he himself, *ipsa*, she herself, *ipsum*, itself; and *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, that, are declined like *ille*; only *ipse* has *ipsum* in the nom. acc. and voc. sing. neut.

*Ipse*, is often joined to *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; and has in Latin the same force with *self* in English, when joined with a possessive pronoun; as, *ego, ipse*, I myself.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *this*.

Sing.			Plur.		
N. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	N. hi,	hæc,	hæc,
G. hujus,	hujus,	hujus,	G. horum,	harum,	horum,
D. huic,	huic,	huic,	D. his,	his,	his,
A. hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	A. hos,	has,	hæc,
V. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	V. hi,	hæc,	hæc,
A. hoc,	hac,	hoc.	A. his,	his,	his.

Is, ea, id; *he, she, it; or that*.

Sing.			Plur.		
N. is,	ea,	id,	N. ii,	eæ,	ea,
G. ejus,	ejus,	ejus,	G. eorum,	earum,	eorum,
D. ei,	ei,	ei,	D. iis, or	eis, &c.	
A. eum,	eam,	id,	A. eos,	eas,	ea,
V. _____			V. _____		
A. eo,	eâ,	eo.	A. iis, or	eis, &c.	

*Quis, quæ, quod, or quid?* which, what? Or *quis?* who? or what man? *quæ?* who? or what woman? *quod* or *quid?* what? which thing? or what thing? thus,

Sing.			Plur.		
N. quis,	quæ,	quod or quid,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	D. queis, or	quibus, &c.	
A. quem,quam,	quod or quid,		A. ques,	quas,	quæ,
V. _____			V. _____		
A. quo,	qua,	quo.	A. queis, or	quibus, &c.	

*Qui, quæ, quod,* who, which, that; Or *vir qui,* the man *who* or *that*; *scemina quæ,* the woman *who* or *that*; *negotium quod,* the thing *which* or *that*: genit. *vir cujus,* the man *whose* or *of whom*; *mulier cujus,* the woman *whose* or *of whom*; *negotium cujus,* the thing *of which,* seldom *whose,* &c. thus,

Sing.			Plur.		
N. qui,	quæ,	quod,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	D. queis or	quibus, &c.	
A. quem,	quam,	quod,	A. quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. _____	_____	_____	V. _____	_____	_____
quo,	qua,	quo.	A. queis, or	quibus, &c.	

The other pronouns are derivatives, coming from *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*. *Meus*, my or mine; *tuus*, thy or thine; *suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *lonus*, -a, -um; and *noster*, our; *vester*, your, like *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum, of the first and second declension.

*Nostras*, of our country; *vestras*, of your country; *cujas*, of what or which country, are declined like *felix*, of the third declension: gen. *nostrātis*, dat. *nostrāti*, &c.

Pronouns as well as nouns, that signify things which cannot be addressed or called upon, want the vocative.

*Meus* hath *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the voc. sing. masc.

The relative *qui* has frequently *qui* in the ablative, and that, which is remarkable, in all genders and numbers.

*Qui* is, sometimes used for *quis*: and instead of *cujus*, the gen. of *quis*, we find an adjective pronoun, *cujus*, -a, -um.

Simple pronouns, with respect to their signification, are divided into the following classes.

1. *Demonstratives*, which point out any person or thing present, or as if present. *Ego*, *tu*, *hic*, *iste*, and sometimes *ille*, *is*, *ipse*.
2. *Relatives*, which refer to something going before: *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *qui*.
3. *Possessives*, which signify possession: *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*.
4. *Patrids or Gentiles*, which signify one's country: *nostras*, *vestras*, *cujas*.
5. *Interrogatives*, by which we ask a question: *quis*? *cujas*? When they do not ask a question, they are called *Indefinites*, like other words of the same nature.
6. *Reciprocals*, which again call back or represent the same object to the mind: *ut* and *suus*.

*Compound Latin Pronouns.*

Pronouns are compounded variously:

1. With other pronouns; as, *isthic*, *isthac*, *isthoc*, *isthuc*, or *istuc*. Acc. *Isthuc* *isthac*, *isthoc*, or *isthuc*. Abl. *Isthoc*, *isthac*, *isthec*. Nom. and acc. plur. neut. *isthæ*, of *iste*, and *hic*. So *illuc*, of *ille* and *hic*.

2. With some other parts of speech; as *hujusmodi*, *cujusmodi*, &c. *mecum*, *trecum*, *tecum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*, *quocum* or *quicum* and *quibuscum*: *eccam*, *eccam*; *eccos*, *eccas*, and sometimes *ecca*, in the nom. sing. of *ecce* and *is*. So *elium*, of *ecce* and *ille*.

3. With some syllable added; as, *tute* of *tu* and *te*, used only in the nom. *egomet*, *tutemet*, *suimet*, through all the cases, thus, *meimet*, *tutimer*. &c. of *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, and *met*. Instead of *tumet*, in the nom. we say, *tutemet*: *hiscine*, *hæccine*, &c. in all the cases that end in *c*; of *hic* and *cine*: *Meopte*, *tuapte*, *suapte*, and *nostrapte*, &c. in the abl. f. fem. and sometimes *meopte*, *tuopte*, &c. of *meus*, &c. and *pte*: *hicce*, *hæcce*, *hocce*: *hujusce*, *hæcce*, *hæcce*, of *hic*, and *ce*: whence *hujuscemodi*, *ejuscemodi*, *cujuscemodi*. So *IDEM*, the same, compounded of *is* and *dem*, which is thus declined:

Sing.			Plur.		
Idem,	eādem,	īdem,	N. īdem,	eādem,	eādem,
G. ejusdem,	ejusdem,	ejusdem,	G. eorundem,	eorundem,	eorundem,
D. eidem,	eīdem,	eīdem,	D. eisdem, or	īisdem, &c.	
A. eundem,	eandem,	īdem,	A. eosdem,	eādem,	eādem,
V. idem,	eādem,	īdem,	V. iidem,	eādem,	eādem,
A. eōdem,	eādem,	eōdem,	A. eisdem or	īisdem, &c.	

The pronouns which we find most frequently compounded, are *quis* and *qui*:

*Quis* in composition is sometimes the first, sometimes the last, and sometimes likewise the middle part of the word compounded; but *qui* is always the first.

1. The compounds of *quis*, in which it is put first, are, *quisnam*, who? *quispiam*, *quisquam* any one; *quisque*, every one; *quisquis*, whosoever; which are thus declined:

Nom.				Gen.		Dat.	
Quisnam,	quisenam,	quodnam or	quidnam;	cujusnam,	cuinam,		
Quispiam,	quisepiam,	quodpiam or	quidpiam;	cujuspiam,	cuipiam,		
Quisquam,	quisequam,	quodquam or	quidquam;	cujusquam,	cuiquam,		
Quisque,	quiseque,	quodque or	quidque;	cujusque,	cuique,		
Quisquis,	quisequis,	quidquid or	quidquid;	cujusequis,	cuiqui,		

And so in the other cases, according to the simple *quis*. But *quisquis* has not the fem. at all, and the neuter only in the nominative and accusative. *Quisquam* has al-

so *quicquam* for *quidquam*. Accusative *quenquam*, without the feminine. The plural is scarcely used.

2. The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis*, is part last, have *qua* in the nom. sing. fem. and in the nominative and accusative plur. neut. as, *aliquis*, some; *ecquis* who? *et quis*; also *nequis*, *aliquis*, *numquis*, which for the most part are read separately, thus, *ne quis*, *si quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined:

Nom.		Gen.		Dat.	
Aliquis, aliqua,	aliquid or aliquid,	alicujus,	alicui,		
Ecquis, ecqua or ecque,	ecquod or ecquid,	eccujus,	eccui,		
Si quis, si qua,	si quod or si quid,	si ejus,	si cui,		
Ne quis, ne qua,	ne quod or ne quid,	ne ejus,	ne cui,		
Num quis, num qua,	num quod or num quid,	num ejus,	num cui.		

3. The compounds which have *quis* in the middle, are *ecquisquam*, who? *unusquisque*, gen. *unusquisque*, every one. The former is used only in the nom. sing. and the latter wants the plural.

4. The compounds of *qui* are *quicumque*, whosoever; *quidam*, some; *quilibet*, *quivis*, any one whom you please; which are thus declined:

Nom.			Gen.		Dat.	
Quicumque,	quæcumque,	quodcumque,	ejuscumque,	cuiuscumque,	cuiuscumque,	
Quidam,	quædam,	quoddam or quiddam,	ejusdam,	cuiusdam,	cuiusdam,	
Quilibet,	quælibet,	quodlibet, or quilibet,	ejuslibet,	cuiuslibet,	cuiuslibet,	
Quivis,	quævis,	quodvis, or quivis,	ejusvis,	cuiusvis,	cuiusvis.	

Obs. 1. All these compounds have seldom or never *quis*, but *quibus*, in their dat. and abl. plur.; thus *aliquibus*, &c.

Obs. 2. *Quis*, and its compounds in classic writers, have sometimes *quæ* in the feminine gender.

Obs. 3. *Quidam* has *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam*, or *quiddam*, in the acc. sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the gen. plur. s. being put instead of *m*, for the better sound.

Obs. 4. *Quod*, with its compounds, *aliquid*, *quodvis*, *quoddam*, &c. are used, when they agree with a substantive in the s' ac case; *quid*, with its compounds, *aliquid*, *quidvis*, &c. for the most part have either no substantive expressed, or govern one in the genitive. For this reason, they are by some reckoned substantives.

## VERB.

A verb is a word which expresses what is affirmed of things; as, The boy *reads*. The sun *shines*. The man *loves*.

Or, *A verb is that part of speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer.*

It is called *Verb* or *Word*, by way of eminence, because it is the most essential word in a sentence, without which the other parts of speech can form no complete sense. Thus, *the diligent boy reads his lesson with care*, is a perfect sentence; but if we take away the affirmation, or the word *reads*, it is rendered imperfect, or rather becomes no sentence at all; thus, *the diligent boy his lesson with care*.

A verb therefore may be thus distinguished from any other part of speech: Whatever word, expresses an affirmation, or assertion is a verb; or thus, whatever word, with a substantive noun, or pronoun before or after it, makes full sense, is a verb; as, *stones fall, I walk, walk thou*. Here *fall* and *walk* are verbs because they contain an affirmation; but when we say, *a long walk, a dangerous fall*, there is no affirmation expressed; and the same words *walk* and *fall* become substantives or nouns. We often find likewise in Latin the same word used as a verb, and also as some other part of speech; thus, *amor*, -*oris*, love; a substantive; and *amor*, I am loved, a verb.

Verbs, with respect to their signification, are divided into three different classes, *Active*, *Passive* and *Neuter*; because we consider things either as acting, or being acted upon; or as neither acting, nor being acted upon; but sim-

ply existing, or existing in a certain state or condition; as in a state of motion or rest, &c.

1. An *Active* verb expresses an action, and necessarily supposes an agent, and an object acted upon; as, *amāre*, to love; *amo te*, I love thee.

2. A verb *Passive* expresses a passion or suffering, or the receiving of an action; and necessarily implies an object acted upon, and an agent, by which it is acted upon; as, *amāri*, to be loved; *tu amāris a me*, thou art loved by me.

3. A *Neuter* verb properly expresses neither action nor passion, but simply the being, state, or condition of things; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo* I sit.

The verb *Active* is also called *Transitive*, when the action *passeth over* to the object, or hath an effect on some other thing; as, *scribo litēras*, I write letters: but when the action is confined within the agent, and *passeth not over* to any object, it is called *Intransitive*; as, *ambūlo*, I walk; *curro*, I run, which are likewise called *Neuter* verbs. Many verbs in Latin and English are used both in a-transitive and in an intransitive or neuter sense; as, *sistere*, to stop; *incipere*, to begin; *durare*, to endure, or to harden, &c.

Verbs which simply signify *being*, are likewise called *Substantive* verbs; as, *esse* or *existere*, to be or to exist. The notion of existence is implied in the signification of every verb; thus, *I love*, may be resolved into, *I am loving*.

When the meaning of a verb is expressed without any affirmation, or in such a form as to be joined to a substantive noun, partaking thereby of the nature of an adjective, it is called a *Participle*; as, *amans*, loving; *amatus*, loved. But when it has the form of a substantive, it is called a *Gerund*, or a *Supine*; as, *amandum*, loving; *amatum*, to love; *amatu*, to love, or to be loved.

A verb is varied or declined by *Voices*, *Modes*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*.

There are two voices; the *Active* and *Passive*.

The modes are four; *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive*.

The tenses are five; the *Present*, the *Preter-imperfect*, the *Preter-perfect*, the *Preter-pluperfect*, and the *Future*.

The numbers are two; *Singular and Plural.*  
The persons are three; *First, Second, Third.*

1. *Voice* expresses the different circumstances in which we consider an object, whether as acting or being acted upon. The *Active voice* signifies action; as, *amo*, I love; the *Passive*, suffering, or being the object of an action; as, *amor*, I am loved.

2. *Modes or moods* are the various manners of expressing the signification of the verb. The *Indicative* declares or affirms positively; as, *amo*, I love; *amābo*, I shall love; or asks a question; as, *an tu amas?* dost thou love?

The *Subjunctive* is usually joined to some other verbs, and cannot make a full meaning by itself; as, *si me obsecret reitibo*, if he entreat me, I will return. *Ter.*

The *Imperative* commands, exhorts, or entreats; as, *ama*, love thou.

The *Infinitive* simply expresses the signification of the verb without limiting it to any person or number; as, *amāre*, to love.

3. *Tenses or Times* express the time when any thing is supposed to be, to act, or to suffer.

Time in general is divided into three parts, the present, past, and future.

Past time is expressed three different ways. When we speak of a thing, which was doing, but not finished at some former time, we use the *Preter-Imperfect*, or past time not completed; as, *scribēbam*, I was writing.

When we speak of a thing now finished, we use the *Preter-perfect*, or past time completed; as, *scripsi*, I wrote, or have written.

When we speak of a thing finished at or before some past time, we use the *Preter-pluperfect*, or past time more than completed; as, *scripsēram*, I had written.

Future time is expressed two different ways. A thing may be considered either as simply about to be done, or as actually finished, as some future time; as, *scribam*, I shall write, or, I shall [then] be writing; *scripsēro*, I shall have written.

4. *Number* marks how many we suppose to be, to act, or to suffer.

5. *Person* shews to what the meaning of the verb is applied, whether to the person speaking, to the person addressed, or to some other person or thing.

Verbs have two numbers and three persons, to agree with substantive nouns and pronouns, in these respects: for a verb properly hath neither numbers nor persons, but certain terminations answering to the person and number of its nominative.

A verb is properly said to be *conjugated*, when all its parts are properly classed, as if it were, yoked together, according to Voice, Mode, Tense, Number, and Person.

*English Verbs.*

English verbs change their termination to express only the present and the past time of the Active voice; and in regular verbs, the Perfect participle is always the same with the perfect or past time, both of them ending in *ed* or *'d*. The present participle always ends in *ing*. The English has no future participle, which defect is supplied by a circumlocution; as, *about to love*.

An English-Verb is thus varied:

To LOVE:

*Active Voice.*

*Indicative Mode.*

	<i>Present Time.</i>		<i>Past Time.</i>
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	
<i>Person.</i>	1. I love,	We love,	1. I loved,
	2. Thou lovest,	Ye or you love,	2. Thou lovedst,
	3. He loveth or loves;	They love.	3. He loved;
			<i>Plur.</i>
			We loved,
			Ye or you loved,
			They loved.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Present Time.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I love,	We love,
2. Thou love,	Ye or you love,
3. He love;	They love.

*Imperative Mode.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
2. Love thou,	Love ye or love you.

*Infinitive Mode.*

*Present, To love.*

*Participle Present, Loving; Perfect, Loved.*

The several remaining parts of the English verb are formed by the assistance of other verbs, called therefore *Auxiliaries* or *Helpers*. The chief of these are *have*, *be*, *shall*, and *will*, which are thus varied.





When an auxiliary is joined to a verb, the auxiliary is varied according to number and person, and the verb itself always continues the same. When there are two or more auxiliaries joined to the verb, the first of them only is varied according to person and number. The auxiliary *must* admits of no variation.

*Shall* and *will* are always employed to express future time: *Will*, in the first person singular and plural, promises or threatens; in the second and third persons, only foretells; *shall*, on the contrary, in the first person, simply foretells; in the second and third persons, promises, commands, or threatens. But the contrary of this holds, when we ask a question; thus, "I *shall* go," "you *will* go;" express event only; but "will you go?" imports intention: and "shall I go?" refers to the will of another.

The neuter verb is varied like the active; but sometimes it assumes the passive form; as, *I had fallen, or I was fallen.*

## IRREGULAR ENGLISH VERBS.

The English language abounds in irregular verbs.

A verb in English is said to be irregular, which has not the Past Time and the Participle Perfect in *ed*.

Most English verbs are liable to some irregularity from contraction.

To this we are led by the nature of the language, and the manner of pronouncing it. Thus, instead of *loved, lovedest, we say, lov'd, lovedest.* Hence in many verbs *ed* is changed into *t*; as, *snatch'd, check'd, snatch, mixt, duck, past, meant, felt, left, bereft, &c.* for *snatched, checked, &c.* In such words, however, the entire form is also used, and in general to be preferred. They are not, therefore, commonly ranked among irregular verbs.

Irregular verbs in English, properly so called, are all monosyllables, unless compounded; and may be reduced to the three following classes, in which those marked thus, \* are likewise used in the regular form.

### 1. Irregulars by contraction.

These commonly end in *d* or *t*, and have the Present, the Past Time, and the Participle Perfect, all alike, without any variation; as, *beat, burst, cast, cost, cut, hit, hurt, knit, let, lift,\* light,\* put, quit,\* read, rent, rid, set, shed, shred, shut, slit, split, spread, thrust, wet,\** all of which are contracted for *beated, bursted, cated, &c.*

The following in the Past Time, and Participle Perfect, vary a little from the Present; as, *lead, led; sweat, sved,\* meet, met; breed, bred; feed, fed; speed, sped; bend, bent,\* bind, lent; rend, rent; send, sent; spend, spent; build, built,\* geld, gelt,\* gild, gilt,\* gird, girt,\* lose, lost.*

*Sold, told, had, made, fled, shod, clad,\** from *sell, tell, have, make, flee, shoe, clothe;* are contracted for *selled, telled, &c.* *Stand has stood; smell, smelt; dare, durst,* in the participle *dared.*

### 2. Irregulars in ght.

These are few in number, and have the Past Time and Participle in *ght*; as, *bring, brought; buy, bought; catch, caught; fight, fought; teach, taught; think, thought; seek, sought; work, wrought.*

### 3. Irregulars in en.

This is by far the most numerous class of irregular verbs. They have commonly the Participle Perfect in *en*, and from the Past Time by changing the vowel or diphthong of the present. Some form the Past Time regularly.

Present.	Past.	Participle.	Present.	Past.	Participle.
Fall,	fell,	fallen.	Cleave,	clave, or clove,*	cloven.
Awake	awoke*	(awaken.)	Speak,	spake, or spoke,	spoken.
Forake,	forsook,	forsaken.	Sware,	sware, or swore	sworn.
Shake,	shook,	shaken.	Tear,	tare or tore,	torn.
Take,	took,	taken.	Wear,	ware or wore,	worn.
Draw,	drew,	drawn.	Heave,	hove,*	hoven.*
Slay,	slew,	slain.	Shear,	shore,	shorn.
Get,	got or got,	gotten,	Steal,	stole,	stolen.
Help,	(helped.)	holpen.*	Tread,	trod,	trodden.
Melt,	melted,	molted.*	Weave,	wove,	woven.
Swell,	swelled,	swollen.*	Croep,	erope,*	crept.*
Eat,	ate,	aten.	Freeze,	froze,	frozen.
Bear,	bare, or bore,	borne.			
Break,	brake, or broke,	broken.			

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
See, the,	sod,	sodden.	Hold,	held,	holden.
See,	saw	seen.	Do,	did,	done.
Bite,	bit,	bitten.	Blow,	blew,	blown.
Hide,	hid,	hidden.	Crow,	crew,	(crowed.)
Hide,	hid,	hidden.	Grow,	grew,	grown.
Slide,	slid,	slidden.	Know,	knew,	known.
Abide,	abode,	(climbed.)	Throw,	threw,	thrown.
Climb,	clomb,	driven.	Fly,	flew,	flown.
Drive,	drove,	driven.	Make,	(baked.)	baken.*
Ride,	rode,	ridden.	Grave,	(graved.)	graven.*
Rise,	rose,	risen.	Hew,	(hewed.)	hewn or
Shine,	shone,*	shined.	Lade,	(laded.)	laden.
Strive,	strove,*	striven.*	Load,	(loaded.)	loaden.*
Smite,	smote,*	smitten.	Mow,	(mowed.)	mown.*
Stride,	strode,	stridden.	Rive,	(rived.)	riven.
Shrive,	shrove,	shriven.	Saw,	(sawed.)	sawn.*
Thrive,	throve,	thriven.	Shave,	(shaved.)	shaven.*
Write,	wrote,	written.	Shew,	(shewed.)	shewn.*
Strike,	struck,	stricken or	Show,	(showed.)	shown.
		strucken.	Sow,	(sowed.)	sown.*
Bid,	bade,	bidden.	Straw, strew,	(strawed, &c.)	strawn.*
Give,	gave,	given.	or strow,		
Sit,	sat,	sitten.	Wash,	(washed.)	washen.*
Spit,	spat,	spitten.	Wax,	(waxed.)	waxen.*
Dig,	dug,*	digged.	Wreath,	(wreathed.)	wreathen.*
Lie,	lay,	lain or lien.	Writhe,	(writhed.)	writen.
Choose,	chose,	chosen.			

Several verbs seem to have dropt the termination *en* in the Participle; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Began,	began,	began.	Stink,	stank or	stunk.
Cling,	clang or	clung.	String,	strung,	strung.
	clung,		Swim,	swam or	swum.
Drink,	drank,	drunk or	Swing,	swung,	swung.
		drunken.	Wring,	wrang,	wrung.
Fling,	flung,	flung.	Bind,	bound,	bound or
Ring,	rang or rung,	rung.			bounden.
Shrink,	shrank or	shrunk.	Find,	found,	found.
	shrunk,		Grind,	ground,	ground.
Sing,	sang or sung,	sung.	Wind,	wound,	wound.
Sink,	sank or sunk,	sank.	Hang,	hung,*	hung.*
Sling,	slang or	slung.	Shoot,	shot,	shot.
	slung,		Stick,	stuck,	stuck.
Slink,	slunk,	slunk.	Come,	came,	come.
Spin,	span or spun,	spun.	Run,	ran,	run.
Spring,	sprang or	sprung.	Win,	won,	won.
	sprung,				
Sting,	stung,	stung.			

Frequent mistakes are committed with regard to those verbs which make the Participle Perfect different from the Past Time; thus it is said, *he began* for *he began*; *he run* for *he ran*; the Participle being used instead of the Past Time; and much more frequently the Past Time instead of the Participle; as, *I had wrote*, for *I had written*; *it was wrote*, for *it was written*; *so bore* for *borne*; *chose* for *chosen*; *bid* for *bidden*; *drove* for *driven*; *broke* for *broken*; *rode* for *ridden*, &c.

Several verbs are either defective, or made up of parts derived from different verbs of the same signification; as, *go*, *went*, *gone*, *roet*, *wit* or *root*, *was*, *wist*; *ought*, *quoth*, *must*, together with most of the auxiliary verbs.

LATIN VERBS.

The Latins have four different ways of varying verbs, called the *First*, the *Second*, the *Third*, and the *Fourth Conjugation*.

The Conjugations are thus distinguished :

The First has *a* long before *re* of the Infinitive ; the Second has *e* long, the Third has *e* short, and the Fourth has *i* long, before *re* of the Infinitive.

Except *dāre*, to give, which has *ā* short, and also its compounds ; thus, *Circumdāre*, to surround ; *circumdāmus*, -*dātis*, -*dābam*, -*dābō*, &c.

The different conjugations are likewise distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the following tenses :

### ACTIVE VOICE.

#### *Indicative Mode.*

#### Present Tense.

Conjugation.	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>Persons.</i>			<i>Persons.</i>		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
} 1.	-o,	-as,	-at ;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
	2. -eo	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
	3. -o,	-is,	-it ;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-unt.
	4. -io	-is,	-it ;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.

#### Imperfect.

1. -ābam,	-ābas,	-ābat ;	-ābāmus,	-ābātis,	-ābant.
2. -ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
3. -ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
4. -iēbam,	-iēbas,	-iēbat ;	-iēbāmus,	-iēbātis,	-iēbant.

#### Future.

1. -ābō,	-ābis,	-ābit ;	-ābīmus,	-ābītis,	-ābunt.
2. -ēbō,	-ēbis,	-ēbit ;	-ēbīmus,	-ēbītis,	-ēbunt.
3. -am,	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
4. -iam,	-ies,	-iet ;	-iēmus,	-iētis,	-ient.

#### *Subjunctive Mode.*

#### Present Tense.

1. -em,	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
2. -eāmus,	-eās,	-eat ;	-eāmus,	-eātis,	-eant.
3. -am,	-as,	-at ;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
4. -iam,	-ias,	-iat ;	-iāmus,	-iātis,	-iant.

## Imperfect.

1. -ārem,	-āres,	-āret;	-ārēmus,	-ārētis,	-ārent.
2. -ērem,	-ēres,	-ēret;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
3. -ērem,	-ēres,	-ēret;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
4. -īrem,	-īres,	-īret;	-irēmus,	-irētis,	-īrent.

*Imperative Mode.*

	2.	3.	2.	3.
1.	-a or -āto,	-āto;	-āte or -ātōte,	-anto.
2.	-e or -ēto,	-ēto;	-ēte or -ētōte,	-ento.
3.	-e or -īto,	-īto;	-ite or -itōte,	-unto.
4.	-i or -īto,	-īto;	-ite or -itōte,	-iunto.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*Indicative Mode.*

## Present Tense.

1. -or,	-āris or -āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-āminī,	-antur.
2. -eor,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēminī,	-entur.
3. -or,	-ēris or -ēre,	-itur;	-imur,	-imīnī,	-untur.
4. -ior,	-īris or -īre,	-itur;	-imur,	-imīnī,	-iuntur.

## Imperfect.

1. -ābar,	-ābāris or -ābāre,	-ābātur;	-ābāmur,	-ābāminī,	-ābantur.
2. -ēbar,	-ēbāris or -ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāminī,	-ēbantur.
3. -ēbar,	-ēbāris or -ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāminī,	-ēbantur.
4. -iēbar,	-iēbāris or -iēbāre,	-iēbātur;	-iēbāmur,	-iēbāminī,	-iēbantur.

## Future.

1. -ābor,	-ābēris or -ābēre,	-ābītur;	-ābīmur,	-ābīminī,	-ābuntur.
2. -ēbor,	-ēbēris or -ēbēre,	-ēbītur;	-ēbīmur,	-ēbīminī,	-ēbuntur.
3. -ar,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēminī,	-entur.
4. -iar,	-iēris or -iēre,	-iētur;	-iēmur,	-iēminī,	-ientur.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

## Present Tense.

1. -er,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēminī,	-entur.
2. -ear,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēminī,	-entur.
3. -ar,	-āris or -āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-āminī,	-antur.
4. -iar,	-iāris or -iāre,	-iātur;	-iāmur,	-iāminī,	-iantur.

## Imperfect.

1. -ārer,	-ārēris or -ārēre,	-ārētur;	-ārēmur,	-ārēmīnī,	-ārentur.
2. -ērer,	-ērēris or -ērēre,	-ērētur;	-ērēmur,	-ērēmīnī,	-ērentur.
3. -ēre,	-ērēris or -ērēre,	-ērētur;	-ērēmur,	-ērēmīnī,	-ērentur.
4. -īrer,	-īrēris or -īrēre,	-īrētur;	-īrēmur,	-īrēmīnī,	-īrentur.

*Imperative Mode.*

	2.	3.	2.	3.
1.	-āre or -ātor,	-ātor ;	-āmīni,	-āntor.
2.	-ēre or -ētor,	-ētor ;	-ēmīni,	-ēntor.
3.	-ēre or -itor,	-itor ;	-īmīni,	-untor,
4.	-īre or -itor,	-itor ;	-imīni,	-iuntor.

Observe, Verbs in *is* of the third conjugation have *iunt* in the third person plur. of the present indic. active, and *iuntur* in the passive ; and so in the imperative, *iunto* and *iuntor*. In the imperfect and future of the indicative they have always the terminations of the fourth conjugation, *iſſem* and *iſſet* ; *iſſer* and *iſſet*, &c.

The terminations of the other tenses are the same through all the Conjugations. Thus,

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*Indicative Mode.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Perf.	-i,	-isti,	-it ;	-imus,	-istis,	erunt or ere.
Plu.	-eram,	-eras,	-erat ;	-eramus,	-eratis,	-erant.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

Perf.	-erim,	-eris,	-erit ;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.
Plu.	-issem,	-isses,	-isset ;	-issemus,	-issetis,	-issent.
Fut.	-ero,	-eris,	-erit ;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.

These Tenses, in the Passive Voice, are formed by the Participle Perfect, and the auxiliary verb *sum*, which is also used to express the Future of the Infinitive Active.

**SUM** is an irregular verb, and thus conjugated :

## Principal Parts.

Pres. Indic.	Perf. Indic.	Pres. Infjn.	
Sum,	fui,	esse,	To be.

*Indicative Mode.*Present Tense. *am.*

	Sing.	Plur.
Person.	1. Sum, I am,	Sumus, We are,
	2. Es, Thou art, or you are,	Estis, Ye or you are
	3. Est, He is ;	Sunt, They are.

Imperfect. *was.*

- |   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| 1. Eram, <i>I was,</i>                  | Erāmus, <i>We were,</i>  |
| 2. Eras, <i>Thou wast, or you were,</i> | Erātis, <i>Ye were,</i>  |
| 3. Erat, <i>He was ;</i>                | Erant, <i>They were.</i> |

Perfect. *have been or was.*

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1. Fui, <i>I have been,</i>       | Fuimus, <i>We have been,</i>             |
| 2. Fuisti, <i>Thou hast been,</i> | Fuistis, <i>Ye have been,</i>            |
| 3. Fuit, <i>He hath been ;</i>    | Fuerunt, or -ere, <i>They have been.</i> |

Plu-perfect. *had been.*

- |                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Fuēram, <i>I had been,</i>      | Fuērāmus, <i>We had been,</i>  |
| 2. Fueras, <i>Thou hadst been,</i> | Fueratis, <i>Ye had been,</i>  |
| 3. Fuerat, <i>He had been ;</i>    | Fuerant, <i>They had been.</i> |

Future. *shall or will.*

- |                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Ero, <i>I shall be,</i>     | Erimus, <i>We shall be,</i>  |
| 2. Eris, <i>Thou shalt be,</i> | Erītis, <i>Ye shall be,</i>  |
| 3. Erit, <i>He shall be ;</i>  | Erunt, <i>They shall be.</i> |

## Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. *may or can.*

- |                                |                           |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Sim, <i>I may be,</i>       | Simus, <i>We may be,</i>  |
| 2. Sis, <i>Thou mayest be,</i> | Sitis, <i>Ye may be,</i>  |
| 3. Sit, <i>He may be ;</i>     | Sint, <i>They may be.</i> |

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

- |                                    |                               |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Essem, <i>I might be,</i>       | Essēmus, <i>We might be,</i>  |
| 2. Esses, <i>Thou mightest be,</i> | Essetis, <i>Ye might be.</i>  |
| 3. Esset, <i>He might be ;</i>     | Essent, <i>They might be.</i> |

Perfect. *may have.*

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Fuērim, <i>I may have been,</i>       | Fuērīmus, <i>We may have been,</i>  |
| 2. Fueris, <i>Thou mayest have been,</i> | Fueritis, <i>Ye may have been,</i>  |
| 3. Fuerit, <i>He may have been ;</i>     | Fuerint, <i>They may have been.</i> |

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would, or should have ; or had.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Fuissē, <i>I might have been,</i>        | Fuissēmus, <i>We might have been,</i>  |
| 2. Fuisses, <i>Thou mightest have been,</i> | Fuissetis, <i>Ye might have been,</i>  |
| 3. Fuisset, <i>He might have been ;</i>     | Fuissent, <i>They might have been.</i> |

Future. *shall have.*

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Fuēro, <i>I shall have been,</i>     | Fuērīmus, <i>We shall have been,</i>  |
| 2. Fueris, <i>Thou shalt have been,</i> | Fueritis, <i>Ye shall have been,</i>  |
| 3. Fuerit, <i>He shall have been,</i>   | Fuerint, <i>They shall have been.</i> |

*Imperative Mode.*

2. Es *vel* esto, *Bethou,*            Este *vel* estôte, *Be ye,*  
 3. Esto,            *Let him be;*            Suntó,            *Let them be.*

*Infinitive Mode.*

*Pres.* Esse, *To be.*

*Perf.* Fuisse, *To, have been.*

*Fut.* Esse futurus, -a, -um, *To be about to be.*

Fuisse futurus, -a, -um, *To have been about to be.*

*Participle.*

*Future.* Fütürus, -a, -um, *About to be.*

Obs. 1. The personal pronouns, which in English are, for the most part, added to the verb, in Latin are commonly understood; because the several persons are sufficiently distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the verb, though the persons themselves be not expressed. The learner, however, at first may be accustomed to join them with the verb; thus, *ego sum*, I am; *tu es*, thou art, or you are; *ille est*, he is; *nos sumus*, we are, &c. So, *ego amo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love; *ille amat*, he loveth or loves; *nos amamus*, we love, &c.

Obs. 2. In the second person singular in English, we commonly use the plural form, except in solemn discourse: as, *tu es*, thou art, or much oftener, you are; *tu eras*, thou wast, or you were; *tu sis*, thou mayest be, or you may be, &c. So *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love; *tu amabas*, thou lovedst, or you loved, &c.

Verbs are thus varied in the different Conjugations.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## Principal Parts.

<i>Present Indic.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>
Amo,	ãmãvi,	ãmãtum,	ãmãre, <i>To love.</i>

*Indicative Mode.*

*Present Tense.* love, do love, or am loving.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. <b>A</b> M-o,	<i>I love,</i>
	2. Am-as,	<i>Thou lovest, or you love,</i>
	3. Am-at,	<i>He loveth, or he loves;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Am-ãmus,	<i>We love,</i>
	2. Am-atis,	<i>Ye or you love,</i>
	3. Am-ant,	<i>They love.</i>

**Imperfect. loved, did love, or was loving.**

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ābam,	<i>I loved,</i>
2. Am-abas,	<i>Thou lovedst,</i>
3. Am-abat,	<i>He loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-abamus,	<i>We loved,</i>
2. Am-abatis,	<i>Ye or you loved,</i>
3. Am-abant,	<i>They loved.</i>

**Perfect. loved, have loved, or did love.**

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-āvi,	<i>I have loved,</i>
2. Am-avisti,	<i>Thou hast loved,</i>
3. Am-avit,	<i>He hath loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-āvīmus,	<i>We have loved,</i>
2. Am-avistis,	<i>Ye have loved,</i>
3. Am-avērunt, v. avēre,	<i>They have loved.</i>

**Plu-perfect. had.**

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-āvērā,	<i>I had loved,</i>
2. Am-averas,	<i>Thou hadst loved,</i>
3. Am-averat,	<i>He had loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-averamus,	<i>We had loved,</i>
2. Am-averatis,	<i>Ye had loved,</i>
3. Am-averant,	<i>They had loved.</i>

**Future. shall or will.**

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ābo,	<i>I shall love,</i>
2. Am-abis,	<i>Thou shalt love,</i>
3. Am-abit,	<i>He shall love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-abīmus,	<i>We shall love,</i>
2. Am-abitis,	<i>Ye shall love.</i>
3. Am-abunt,	<i>They shall love.</i>

**Subjunctive Mode.****Present Tense. may or can.**

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-em,	<i>I may love,</i>
2. Am-es,	<i>Thou mayst love,</i>
3. Am-et,	<i>He may love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-ēmus,	<i>We may love,</i>
2. Am-etis,	<i>Ye may love,</i>
3. Am-ent,	<i>They may love.</i>



Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ārem,	<i>I might love,</i>
2. Am-ares,	<i>Thou mightest love,</i>
3. Am-aret,	<i>He might love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-arēmus,	<i>We might love,</i>
2. Am-aretis,	<i>Ye might love,</i>
3. Am-arent,	<i>They might love.</i>

Perfect. *may have.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-āvērī,	<i>I may have loved,</i>
2. Am-averis,	<i>Thou mayest have loved,</i>
3. Am-averit,	<i>He may have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-averīmus,	<i>We may have loved,</i>
2. Am-averitis,	<i>Ye may have loved,</i>
3. Am-averint,	<i>They may have loved.</i>

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would, or should have ; or had.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-avissem,	<i>I might have loved,</i>
2. Am-avisses,	<i>Thou mightest have loved,</i>
3. Am-avisset,	<i>He might have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-avissemus,	<i>We might have loved,</i>
2. Am-avissetis,	<i>Ye might have loved,</i>
3. Am-avissent,	<i>They might have loved.</i>

Future. *shall have.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-āvērō,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>
2. Am-averis,	<i>Thou shalt have loved,</i>
3. Am-averit,	<i>He shall have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-averīmus,	<i>We shall have loved,</i>
2. Am-averitis,	<i>Ye shall have loved,</i>
3. Am-averint,	<i>They shall have loved.</i>

*Imperative Mode.*

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Am-a, <i>vel</i> am-āto,	<i>Love thou, or do thou love,</i>
3. Am-ato,	<i>Let him love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Am-āte, <i>vel</i> am-atōte,	<i>Love ye or do ye love,</i>
3. Am-anto,	<i>Let them love.</i>

*Infinitive Mode.*

<i>Pres.</i> Am-āre,	<i>To love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> Am-avisse,	<i>To have loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Esse amaturus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to love.</i>
Fuisse amaturus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to love.</i>

*Participle.*

<i>Present,</i> Am-ans,	<i>Loving.</i>
<i>Future,</i> Am-aturus, -a, um,	<i>About to love.</i>

*Gerunds.*

<i>Nom.</i> Am-andum,	<i>Loving,</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Am-andi,	<i>Of loving,</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Am-ando,	<i>To loving,</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Am-andum,	<i>Loving,</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Am-ando,	<i>With loving.</i>

*Supine.*

<i>Former.</i> Am-atum,	<i>To love,</i>
<i>Latter.</i> Am-atu,	<i>To love, or to be loved.</i>

## PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Present Indicative.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>
Amor,	amatus,	amari, to be loved.

*Indicative Mode.**Present Tense. am.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-or,	<i>I am loved,</i>
2. Am-āris, vel -āre,	<i>Thou art loved,</i>
3. Am-atur,	<i>He is loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-amur,	<i>We are loved,</i>
2. Am-amīni,	<i>Ye or you are loved,</i>
3. Am-antur,	<i>They are loved.</i>

*Imperfect. was.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ābar,	<i>I was loved,</i>
2. Am-abāris vel -abāre,	<i>Thou wast loved,</i>
3. Am-abatur,	<i>He was loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-abamur,	<i>We were loved,</i>
2. Am-abamīni,	<i>Ye were loved,</i>
3. Am-abantur,	<i>They were loved.</i>

*Perfect. am ; have been, or was.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Amatus sum, vel fui,	<i>I have been loved,</i>
2. Amatus es, v. fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been loved,</i>
3. Amatus est, v. fuit,	<i>He hath been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Amati sumus, v. fuimus,	<i>We have been loved,</i>
2. Amati estis, v. fuistis,	<i>Ye have been loved,</i>
3. Amati sunt, fuerunt, v. fuerē,	<i>They have been loved.</i>

Plu-perfect. *had been, or was.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Amatus eram vel fueram,	<i>I had been loved,</i>
2. Amatus eras v. fueras,	<i>Thou hadst been loved,</i>
3. Amatus erat v. fuerat,	<i>He had been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Amati eramus v. fueramus,	<i>We had been loved.</i>
2. Amati eratis, v. fueratis,	<i>Ye had been loved,</i>
3. Amati erant v. fuerant,	<i>They had been loved.</i>

Future. *shall or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ābor,	<i>I shall be loved,</i>
2. Am-abēris vel -abēre,	<i>Thou shalt be loved,</i>
3. Am-abitur,	<i>He shall be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-ābimur,	<i>We shall be loved,</i>
2. Am-abimini,	<i>Ye shall be loved,</i>
3. Am-abuntur,	<i>They shall be loved.</i>

## Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. *may or can be.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-er,	<i>I may be loved,</i>
2. Am-ēris vel -ēre,	<i>Thou mayest be loved,</i>
3. Am-etur,	<i>He may be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-ēmur,	<i>We may be loved,</i>
2. Am-emini,	<i>Ye may be loved,</i>
3. Am-entur,	<i>They may be loved.</i>

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ārer,	<i>I might be loved,</i>
2. Am-arēris vel arēre,	<i>Thou mightest be loved,</i>
3. Am-aretur,	<i>He might be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-ārēmur,	<i>We might be loved,</i>
2. Am-aremini,	<i>Ye might be loved,</i>
3. Am-arentur,	<i>They might be loved.</i>

Perfect. *may have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Amatus sim vel fuerim,	<i>I may have been loved.</i>
2. Amatus sis v. fueris,	<i>Thou mayst have been loved,</i>
3. Amatus sit v. fuerit,	<i>He may have been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Amati simus v. fuerimus,	<i>We may have been loved,</i>
2. Amati sitis v. fueritis,	<i>Ye may have been loved,</i>
3. Amati sint v. fuerint,	<i>They may have been loved.</i>

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would, or should, have been ; or had been.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Amatus essem vel fuisset,	<i>I might have been loved,</i>
2. Amatus esses, v. fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have been loved,</i>
3. Amatus esset v. fuisset,	<i>He might have been loved ;</i>

<i>Plur.</i>	1. Amati essemus v. fuissetmus,	<i>We might have been loved,</i>
	2. Amati essetis v. fuissetis,	<i>Ye might have been loved,</i>
	3. Amati essent v. fuissent,	<i>They might have been loved.</i>

*Future. shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Amatus fuero,	<i>I shall have been loved;</i>
	2. Amatus fueris,	<i>Thou shalt have been loved,</i>
	3. Amatus fuerit,	<i>He shall have been loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Amati fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been loved,</i>
	2. Amati fueritis,	<i>Ye shall have been loved,</i>
	3. Amati fuerint,	<i>They shall have been loved.</i>

*Imperative Mode.*

<i>Sing.</i>	2. Am-āre vel am-ātor,	<i>Be thou loved,</i>
	3. Am-ātor,	<i>Let him be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	2. Am-amīni,	<i>Be ye loved,</i>
	3. Am-antor,	<i>Let them be loved.</i>

*Infinitive Mode.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Am-āri,	<i>To be loved.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	Esse v. fuisse amatus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	Amāt-um iri,	<i>To be about to be loved.</i>

*Participle.*

<i>Perf.</i>	Amat-us, -a, -um,	<i>Loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	Aman-dus, -a, -um,	<i>To be loved.</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*Dōceo, dōcui, doctum, dōcēre, To teach.*

*Indicative Mode.*

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Præs.</i>	<b>D</b> oc-eo,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Doc-ēbam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebāmus,	-ebatis,	-ēbant.
<i>Perf.</i>	Doc-ui,	-uisti,	-it;	-uimus,	-uistis,	-uerunt, v. -uēre,
<i>Plu.</i>	Doc-uēram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-uerāmus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Doc-ēbo,	-ebis,	-ebit;	-ebimus,	-ebitis,	-ebunt.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Præs.</i>	Doc-eam,	-eas,	-eat;	-eāmus,	-eatis,	-eant.
<i>Imp.</i>	Doc-ērem,	-eres,	-eret;	-erēmus,	-eretis,	-erent.

*Perf.* Doc-uērim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerīmus, -ueritīs, -uerint.  
*Plu.* Doc-uissēm, -uissēs, -uisset; -uissēmūs, -uissetis, -uissent.  
*Fut.* Doc-uēro, -ueris, -uerit; -uerīmus, -ueritis, -uerint.

### Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i> Doc-e	vel -ēto,	-ēto;	-ēte vel etote,	-ento,
	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Doc-ēre.	<i>Pr.</i> Doc-ens.	Doc-endum,	1. Doct-um.	
<i>Perf</i> Doc-uisse.	<i>Fut.</i> Doct-ūrus.	Doc-endi,	2. Doct-u.	
<i>Fut.</i> Esse docturus,	-a, -um.	Doc-endo, &c.		
	• Fuisse docturus, -a, -um.			

### PASSIVE VOICE.

Dōceor, doctus, dōcēri, To be taught.

### Indicative Mode.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
<i>Pres.</i> Doc-eor,	-ēris, vel -ēre,	-etur;	-emur,	-emīni, -entur.
<i>Imp.</i> Doc-ēhar,	-ēhāris, vel -ehare,	-ebatur;	-ebamur,	-ebamīni, -ebantur.
<i>Perf.</i> Doctus sum	vel fui, doctus es	vel fuisti, &c.		
<i>Plu.</i> Doctus eram	v fueram, doctus eras	v fueras, &c.		
<i>Fut.</i> Doc-ebor,	-ēbēris, vel -ebere,	-ebitur;	-ebimur,	-ebimīni, -ebuntur.

### Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pres.</i> Doc-ear,	-eāris, vel -care,	-eatur;	-eamur,	-eamīni, -eantur.
<i>Imp.</i> Doc ere,	-erēris, vel erēre,	-eretur;	-eremur,	-eremīni, -erentur.
<i>Perf.</i> Doctus sim	vel fuerim, doctus sis	vel fueris, &c.		
<i>Plu.</i> Doctus essem	v fuissem, doctus esses	v fui-ssēs, &c.		
<i>Fut.</i> Doctus fuero,	doctus fueris, doctus	fuerit, docti fuerimus, &c.		

### Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i> Doc-ēre	vel -ētor;	-etor;	-entīni,	-entor.

### Infinitive.

### Participles.

<i>Pres.</i> Doc-eri,	<i>Perf.</i> Doct-us, -a, -um.
<i>Perf.</i> Esse vel fuisse doctus, -a, -um,	<i>Fut.</i> Doc-endus, -a, -um.
<i>Fut.</i> Doctum iri.	

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

Lēgo, lēgi, lēctum, lēgēre, To read.

## Indicative Mode.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Pres. <b>L</b>	Eg-o,	-is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-unt.
Imp. Leg-ēbam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.	
Perf. Lēg-i,	-isti,	-it;	-īmus,	-istis,	-ērunt, -ēre.	
Plu. Lēg-eram,	-eras,	-erat;	-eramus,	-eratis,	-eraat.	
Fut. Lēg-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-etis,	-ent.	

## Subjunctive Mode.

Pres. Lēg-am,	-as,	-at;	-amus,	-atis,	-ant.
Imp. Lēg-ērem,	-eres,	-eret;	-ērēmus,	-eretis,	-erent.
Perf. Lēg-erim,	-eris,	-erit;	-erīmus,	-eritis,	-erint.
Plu. Lēg-issem,	-issem,	-isset;	-issemus,	-issetis,	-issent.
Fut. Lēg-ero,	-eris,	-erit;	-erīmus,	-eritis,	-erint.

## Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
Pres. Lēg-e, vel -ito,	-ito;	ite, vel -itōte,	-unto.	

Infinitive.	Participles.	Gerunds.	Supines.
Pres. Lēg-ēre,	Pr. Leg-ens.	Lēg-endum.	1. Lect-um.
Perf. Lēg-isse,	Fut. Lect-ūrus.	Lēg-endi.	2. Lect-u.
Fut. Esse lectūrus,	-a, -um,	Lēg-endo, &c.	
Fuisse lectūrus,	-a, -um.		

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Lēgor, lectus, lēgi, To be read.

## Indicative Mode.

	Sing.			Plur.		
Pres. Leg-or,	-ēris, vel -ēre,	-itur;	-imur,	-imini,	-untur.	
Imp. Leg-ēbar,	-ēbaris, vel -ēbare,	-ebatur;	-ebamur,	-ebamini,	-ebantor.	
Perf. Lectus sum	vel fui,	lectus es	vel fuisti,	&c.		
Plu. Lectus eram	vel fueram,	lectus eras	vel fueras,	&c.		
Fut. Leg-ar,	-ēris, vel -ere,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmini,	-entur.	

*Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Pres.</i> Lēg-ar,	-āre, vel -āre,	-atur;	-amur,	-amini,	-antur.
<i>Imp.</i> Lēg-ērer,	-erēris, vel erēre,	-eretur;	-eremur,	-eremini,	-erentur.
<i>Perf.</i>	Lectus sim vel fueris, lectus sis vel fueris, &c.				
<i>Plu.</i>	Lectus essem v. fuisssem, lectus esses v. fuisses, &c.				
<i>Fut.</i>	Lectus fuerō, lectus fueris, lectus fuerit, &c.				

*Imperative Mode.*

	2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i> Lēg-ēre, vel -itor,	-itor;	-imū,	-untor.	

*Infinitive.**Pres.* Lēg-i.*Perf.* Esse v. fuisse lectus, -a, -um.*Fut.* Lectum iri.*Participles.**Perf.* Lect-us, -a, -um.*Fut.* Lēg-endus, -a, -um.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, audīvi, auditum, audire, To hear.

*Indicative Mode.*

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plu.</i>		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Pr.</i>	Aud-io,	-is,	-it;	-imus,	-itis,	-iunt.
<i>Imp.</i>	Aud-iēbam,	-iebas,	-iebat;	-iebamus,	-iebatis,	-iebant.
<i>Per.</i>	Aud-īvi,	-ivisti,	-ivit;	-ivimus,	-ivistis,	-iverunt, vel -ivēre.
<i>Plu.</i>	Aud-ivēram,	-iveras,	-iverat;	-iveramus,	-iveratis,	-iverant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Aud-iam,	-ies,	-iet;	-iemus,	-ietis,	-ient.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Pr.</i>	Aud-iam,	-ias,	-iat;	-iamus,	-iatis,	-iant.
<i>Imp.</i>	Aud-irem,	-ires,	-iret;	-irēmus,	-iretis,	-irent.
<i>Per.</i>	Aud-iverim,	-iveris,	-iverit;	-iverimus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Aud-ivissē,	-ivisses,	-ivisset;	-ivissēmus,	-ivissetis,	-ivissent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Aud-ivero,	-iveris,	-iverit;	-iverimus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.

*Imperative Mode.*

	2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pr.</i> Aud-i, vel -īto;	-īto;	-ite,	vel itōte,	-iunto.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> Aud-ire.	<i>Pr.</i> Aud-iens.	Aud-iendum.	1. Auditum.
<i>Per.</i> Aud-ivisse.	<i>Fu.</i> Aud-iturus.	Aud-iendi.	2. Auditū.
<i>Fut.</i> Esse auditorus, -a, -um, Fuisse auditorus, -a, -um.		Aud-iendo, &c.	

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Audior,      Auditus,      Audiri,      *To be heard:*

*Indicative Mode.*

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>	
<i>Pres.</i>	Aud-ior,	-iris, vel -ire,	-itur;	-imur,	-imini, -iuntur.
<i>Imp.</i>	Aud-iēbar,	-iebaris, vel -iebare,	-iebatur;	-iebamur,	-iebamini, -iebantur.
<i>Perf.</i>	Auditus sum vel fui, Auditus es v. fuisti, &c.				
<i>Plu.</i>	Auditus eram v. fueram, Auditus eras v. fueras, &c.				
<i>Fut.</i>	Aud-iar,	-ieris, vel -iere,	-ietur;	-iemur,	-iemini, -ientur.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Aud-iar,	-iaris, vel -iare,	-iatur;	-iamur,	-iamini, -iantur.
<i>Imp.</i>	Aud-irer,	-ireris, vel -irere,	-iretur;	-iremur,	-iremini, -irentur.
<i>Perf.</i>	Auditus sim vel fuerim, Auditus sis v. fueris, &c.				
<i>Plu.</i>	Auditus essem v. fuissem, Auditus esses v. fuisset, &c.				
<i>Fut.</i>	Auditus fuero, Auditus fueris, &c.				

*Imperative Mode.*

	2.		3.		2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i>	Aud-ire, vel -itor,		-itor;		-imini,	-iuntor.

*Infinitive.**Participles.*

<i>Pr.</i> Aud-iri,	<i>Per.</i> Audit-us, -a, -um.
<i>Per.</i> Esse v. fuisse audit-us, -a, -um,	<i>Fut.</i> Audiend-us, -a, -um.
<i>Fut.</i> Audit-um iri.	

## FORMATION OF VERBS.

There are four principal parts of a verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely, *o* of the present, *i* of the perfect, *um* of the supine, and *re* of the infinitive; according to the following rhyme:



1. From *o* are formed *am* and *em*.
2. From *i*; *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, *sse*, and *ssem*.
3. *U*, *us*, and *rus*, are form'd from *um*.
4. All other parts from *re* do come; as, *bam*, *be*, *rem*; *a*, *e*, and *i*; *ns* and *dus*; *dum*, *do*, and *di*; as,

Am-o, -em; Am-avi, -eram, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse; Amat-um, -u, -urus, -us; Am-are, -abam, -abo, -erem, &c. -aus, andum, di, do; -andus.

Doc-co, -eram; Doc-ui, -ueram, &c.; Doct-um, -u, -urus, -us; Doc-ere, -ebam, -ebo, -erem, -e, -ens, -endum, di, do, -endus.

Leg-o, -am; Leg-i, -eram, &c.; Lect-um, -u, -urus, -us; Leg-ere, -ebam, -erem, -e, -ens, -endum, &c.

Aud-io, -iam; Aud-ivi, -iveram, &c.; Audit-um, -u, -urus, -us; Aud-ire, -iebam, -irem, -i, -iens, -ieptum, di, do, -icndus.—So verbs of the third conjugation in *io*, as, Cap-io, -iam; Cep-i, -eram, &c.; Capt-um, -u, &c.; Cap-ere, -iebam, -ieram, -e, -iens, -icndum, di, do, -icndus.

The passive voice is formed from the active, by adding *r* to *a*, or changing *m* into *r*.

But it is much more easy and natural to form all the parts of a verb from the present and perfect of the indicative, and from the supine; thus,

Am-o, -abam, -äbo, -em, -ärem, -a or -äto, -äre, -ans, -andam, di, do, &c. -andus:

Am-avi, -eram, -ärim, -issem, -äro, -isse: Amat-um, -us, -ärus.

So Doc-co, -ebam, -ebo, -eram, -erem, -e or -eto, -ere, -as, -endum, di, &c. -endus; Doc-cu-i, -eram, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse: Doct-um, -us, -ärus.

Läg-o, -ebam, -am, -es, -et, &c. -am, -as, -at, &c. -erem, -e, or -äto, -äre, -ens, -endum, &c. -endus:

Läg-i, -eram, &c. Lect-um, -us, -ärus:

Cäp-io, -iebam, -iam, -ics, -iet, &c. -iam, -ias, &c. -erem, -e or -äto, -äre, -iens, -icndum, -icndus: Cäg-i, -eram, &c. Capt-um, -us, -ärus.

Aud-io, -iebam, &c. Aud-iv-i, -eram, &c.

A verb is commonly said to be conjugated, when only its principal parts are mentioned, because from them all the rest are derived.

The first person of the Present of the indicative is called the *Theme* or the *Root* of the verb, because from it the other three principal parts are formed.

The letters of a verb which always remain the same, are called *Radical* letters; as, *am* in *am-o*. The rest are called the *Termination*; as, *abamus* in *am-abamus*.

All the letters which come before *-äre*, *-äre*, *-äre*, or *-äre*, of the infinitive, are radical letters. By putting these before the terminations, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenses.

#### Signification of the Tenses in the various Modes.

The tenses formed from the present of the indicative or infinitive signify in general the continuance of an action or passion, or represent them as present at some particular time: the other tenses express an action or passion completed: but not always so absolutely, as entirely to exclude the continuance of the same action or passion; thus, *Amo*, I love, do love or am loving; *amabam*, I loved, did love or was loving, &c.

*Amavi*, I loved, did love, or have loved, *that is*, have done with loving, &c. In like manner in the passive voice; *Amor*, I am loved, I am in loving, or in being loved, &c.

Part time in the passive voice is expressed several different ways, by means of the auxiliary verb *sum*, and the participle perfect; thus,

## Indicative Mode.

Perfect. *Amatus sum*, I am, or have been loved, or *ostener*, I was loved.

*Amatus fui*, I have been loved, or I was loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus eram*, I was or had been loved.

*Amatus fueram*, I had been loved.

## Subjunctive Mode.

Perfect. *Amatus sim*, I may be or may have been loved.

*Amatus fuerim*, I may have been loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus essem*, I might, could, would, or should be or have been loved.

*Amatus fuissetm*, I might, could, would, or should have been loved; or had been loved.

Future. *Amatus fuero*, I shall have been loved.

The verb *sum* is also employed to express future time in the indicative mode, both active and passive: thus,

*Amaturus sum*, I am about to love, I am to love, I am going to love, or I will love.

We chiefly use this form when some purpose or intention is signified.

*Amatus ero*, I shall be loved.

Obs. 1. The participles *amatus* and *amaturus* are put before the auxiliary verb, because we commonly find them so placed in the classics.

Obs. 2. In these compound tenses the learner should be taught to vary the participle like an adjective: noun, according to the gender and number of the different substantives to which it is applied; thus, *amatus est*, he is or was loved, when applied to a man; *amata est*, she was loved, when applied to a woman; *amatum est*, it was loved, when applied to a thing: *amati sunt*, they were loved, when applied to men. &c. The connecting of syntax, so far as it is necessary, with the inflection of nouns and verbs, seems to be the most proper method of teaching both.

Obs. 3. The past time and participle perfect in English are taken in different meanings, according to the different tenses in Latin which they are used to express. Thus, "I loved," when put for *amabam*, is taken in a sense different from what it has when put for *amavi*: so *am-r.* and *amatus sum*, I am loved; *amabat.* and *amatus eram*, I was loved; *amer.* and *amatus sim*, &c. In the one, *loved* is taken in a present, in the other, in a past sense. This ambiguity arises from the defective nature of the English verb.

Obs. 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mode may be variously rendered, according to their connexion with the other parts of a sentence. They are often expressed in English as the same tenses of the indicative, and sometimes one tense apparently put for another.

Thus, *Quart intelligan, qualis sit*, As if they understood, what kind of person he is, Cic. *In iudicium jurasse putes*, You would think, &c. Ov. *Eloquar an sileam?* Shall I speak out, or be silent? *Nec v-rs arguerim*, *Teuor.* for *arguam*, Virg. *Si quid te fugerit, ego perierim, for peribo*, Ter. *Hunc ego si potui tantum sperare dolorem; Et proferré, soror, potero*: for *potuissem* and *possem*, Virg. *Singula quid referam?* Why should I mention every thing? Id. *Prædiceres mihi*, You should have told me before hand, Ter. *At tu dictis, Albane, maneres*, Ought to have stood to your word, Virg. *Clitus crediderim*, I should sooner believe, Juv. *Hauserit ensis*, The sword would have destroyed, Virg. *Fuorint tristi*, Grant or suppose they were angry. *Si id fecisset*, If he did or should do that, Cic. The same promiscuous use of the tenses seems also to take place sometimes in the indicative and infinitive; and the indicative to be put for the subjunctive: as, *Animus meminisse horret, luctuque refugit*, for *refugit*, Virg. *Fuerat melius, for fuisset*, II. *Invidiæ dilapsa erat*, for *fuit et*, Sall. *Quamdiu in portum venis?* for *venisti*, Plant. *Quam mox navigo Ephesum*, for *navigabo*, Id. *Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias*, Ter. for *esses* and *sentires*. *Cæsar affirmat, se divo, illum non triumphare, for triumphaturum esse*, Cic. *Persuadet Castice, ut occuparet, for occupet*, Cæsar.

Obs. 5. The future of the subjunctive, and also of the indicative is often rendered by the present of the subjunctive in English; as, *nisi hoc faciet, or fecerit*, unless he do this, Ter.

Obs. 6. Instead of the imperative we often use the present of the subjunctive: as, *valeas*, farewell; *huc venias*, come hither, &c. And also the future both of the indicative and subjunctive: as, *non occides*, do not kill; *ne feceris*, do not do it; *valebis, meque, amabis*, farewell, and love me, Cic.

The present time and the preter-in-perfect of the infinitive are both expressed under the same form. All the varieties of past and future time are expressed by the other two tenses. But in order properly to exemplify the tenses of the infinitive mode, we must put an accusative, and some other verb, before each of them; thus,

*Dicit me scribere*; he says that I write, do write, or am writing.  
*Dixit me scribere*; he said that I wrote, did write, or was writing.  
*Dicit me scripsisse*; he says that I wrote, did write, or have written.  
*Dixit me scripsisse*; he said that I had written.  
*Dicit me scrip-urum esse*; he says that I will write.  
*Dixit nos scrip-turos esse*; he said that we would write.  
*Dicit nos scrip-turos fuisse*; he says that we would have written.  
*Dicit literas scribi*; he says that letters are written, writing, a writing, or in writing.  
*Dixit literas scribi*; he said that letters were writing, or written.  
*Dicit literas scriptas esse*; he says that letters are or were written.  
*Dixit literas scriptas fuisse*; he says that letters have been written.  
*Dicit literas, scriptas fuisse*; he said that letters had been written.  
*Dicit literas scrip-turum iri*; he says that letters will be written.  
*Dixit literas scrip-turum iri*; he said that letters would be written.

The future, *scrip-turum iri*, is made up of the former supine, and the infinitive passive of the verb *es*, and therefore never admits of any variation.

The future of the infinitive is sometimes expressed by a *periphrasis* or circumlocution; thus, *scio fore vel futurum esse ut scribant*.—*ut literas scriban-tur*; I know that they will write;—that letters will be written. *Scivi fore vel futurum esse ut scriberent*,—*ut literas scriberentur*; I knew that they would write, &c. *Scivi futurum fuisse, ut literas scriberentur*; I knew that letters would have been written. This form is necessary in verbs which want the supine.

Obs. 7. The different tenses, when joined with any expediency or necessity, are thus expressed:

*Scribendum est mihi, puero, nobis, &c. Literas*; I, the boy, we, &c. must write letters.  
*Scribendum fuit mihi, puero, nobis, &c.* I must have written, &c.  
*Scribendum erit mihi*; I shall be obliged to write.  
*Scio scribendum esse mihi literas*; I know that I must write letters.  
 — *Scribendum fuisse mihi*;—that I must have written.

*Dixit scribendum fore mihi*; He said that I should be obliged to write.

Or with the participle in *du*.

*Literae sunt scribendae mihi, puero, hominibus, &c. or a me, puero, &c.*; Letters are to be, or must be written by me, by the boy, by men, &c. So *literas scribendae, erunt, fuerunt, erunt, &c. Si literas scribendae sint, essent, furent, &c. Scio literas scribendas esse*; I know that letters are to be, or must be written. *Scivi literas scribendas fuisse*; I knew that letters ought to have been, or must have been written.

*Note.* Most of the simple tenses of a verb in Latin may be expressed; as in English by the participle and the auxiliary verb *sum*; as, *Sum amans, for amo, I am loving; am amans, for amabam, &c. Fui te carens, for carui, Plaut. Ut sis sciens, for ut actus, Ter.* Only the tenses in the active which come from the preterite, and those in the passive which come from the present, cannot be properly expressed in this manner; because the Latins have no participle perfect active, nor participle present passive. This manner of expression, however does not often occur.

## FORMATION OF THE PRETERITE AND SUPINE.

### GENERAL RULES.

1. Compound and simple verbs form the preterite and supine in the same manner; as,

*Voco; vocavi, vocatum, to call: eo, revoca, revocavi, revocatum, to recall:*

Exc. 1. When the simple verb in the preterite doubles the first syllable of the present, the compounds lose the former syllable; as, *pello, pepuli*, to beat; *repello, repuli*, never *repepuli*, to beat back. But the compounds of *do, sto, disco*, and *posco*, follow the general rule; thus, *edisco, edidici*, to get by heart; *deposco, depoposci*, to demand: so, *praecurro, praecurrui*; *repungo, repupugi*.

Exc. 2. Compounds which change *a* of the simple verb into *i*, have *e* in the supine; as, *facio, fēci, factum*, to make; *perficio, perfēci, perfectum*, to perfect. But compound verbs ending in *do* and *go*; also the compounds of *habeo, placeo, sc̄ipio, sc̄ilio*, and *statuo*, observe the general rule.

2. Verbs which want the preterite, want likewise the supine.

## SPECIAL RULES.

## First Conjugation.

Verbs of the first conjugation have *avi* in the preterite, and *atum* in the supine; as,

*Creo, creāvi, creatum*, to create; *pr̄o, pr̄āvī, pr̄atum*, to prepare.—*So,*

<i>Abundo, to abound.</i>	<i>Centurio, &amp; concenturio, to divide into companies.</i>	<i>Dedico, to dedicate.</i>
<i>Accuso, to charge with a crime.</i>	<i>Certo, to strive, to fight.</i>	<i>Dellecto, to delight.</i>
<i>Adumbrō, to shade, to delimitate.</i>	<i>Cesso, to cease.</i>	<i>Delibero, to deliberate.</i>
<i>Edificio, to build.</i>	<i>Clamo, to cry.</i>	<i>Dellino, to trace, to chide out.</i>
<i>Estimo, to value.</i>	<i>Clandulo, to limp.</i>	<i>Dellro, to deat, to rave.</i>
<i>Ambulo, to walk.</i>	<i>Collulo, to curdle.</i>	<i>Delumbo, to weaken.</i>
<i>Amplo, to enlarge, to put off a cause.</i>	<i>Collulo, to think.</i>	<i>Desidero, to desire.</i>
<i>Animo, to encourage.</i>	<i>Collino, to aim at, to hit the mark.</i>	<i>Dessulo, to lay waste.</i>
<i>Anticipo, to anticipate.</i>	<i>Colo, to strain.</i>	<i>Destino, to destine.</i>
<i>Antiquo, i. e. antiqua probō, to reject a law.</i>	<i>Communulo, to impart.</i>	<i>Dico, to dedicate.</i>
<i>Appello, to call.</i>	<i>Comparo, to compare.</i>	<i>Discepto, disputo, to debate.</i>
<i>Appropinquo, to approach.</i>	<i>Compensō, to make amends.</i>	<i>Disallo, to scatter.</i>
<i>Ardo, to push like a ram.</i>	<i>Comprensulo, to put off a cause to the day after tomorrow.</i>	<i>Dito, to hew or cut.</i>
<i>Aspo, to sit.</i>	<i>Compulo, to pile up, to pil-lage.</i> [cile.]	<i>Dino, to present.</i>
<i>Arō, to plough.</i>	<i>Concilio, to gain, to recon-til.</i>	<i>Duplico, to double.</i>
<i>Ascio, to cut or hew.</i>	<i>Concordo, to agree.</i>	<i>Edico, to bring up.</i>
<i>Asservo, to affirm.</i>	<i>Constituto, resulo, to disprove.</i>	<i>Ejulo, to mail, to weep.</i>
<i>Asculco, to listen.</i>	<i>Congelo, to freeze.</i>	<i>Emancipo, to free a man from the power of his father.</i>
<i>Aucturo, to engage for service.</i>	<i>Considero, to consider.</i>	<i>Emendo, to amend.</i>
<i>Autumo, to suppose.</i>	<i>Contamulo, to pollute.</i>	<i>Emuelo, to take out the kernel, to explain.</i>
<i>Averrunco, to avert.</i>	<i>Copulo, to couple.</i>	<i>Emudo, to unknil, to explain.</i>
<i>Bajulo, to carry.</i>	<i>Corruo, to wrinkle.</i>	<i>Equito, to ride.</i>
<i>Balo, to beat.</i>	<i>Cocruco, to brandish.</i>	<i>Errō, to wander.</i>
<i>Basio, to kiss.</i>	<i>Creo, to create.</i>	<i>Examino, to examine, to try.</i>
<i>Bello, to war.</i>	<i>Crisbro, to sift.</i>	<i>Exantio, to empty, to endure.</i>
<i>Beo, to bless.</i>	<i>Crispo, to curl.</i>	<i>Exaro, to plough up, to scrawl, to write fast.</i>
<i>Blaturo, to babble.</i>	<i>Cruo, to torment.</i>	<i>Exenturo, to take out the guts.</i>
<i>Buo, to bellow.</i>	<i>Curo, to care.</i>	<i>Exintimō, to think.</i>
<i>Buulo, to hoot like an owl.</i>	<i>Damno, to condemn.</i>	<i>Expluro, to search.</i>
<i>Chao, to go to stool.</i>	<i>Delmo, to take the tenth part, or punish every tenth man.</i>	<i>Extrico, to disentangle.</i>
<i>Caeo, to blind or dazzle.</i>	<i>Declaro, to declare.</i>	<i>Fabrulo, to frame.</i>
<i>Caesio, to carve.</i>	<i>Decollo, to loose a thing from off the neck, to behead.</i>	<i>Fascino, to bewitch.</i>
<i>Calceo, to put on shoes, to shoe.</i>	<i>Deduro, to adorn.</i>	<i>Fatigo, to weary.</i>
<i>Calcitro, to kick.</i>	<i>Deduro, to divide soldiers into files or small companies, or citizens into wards.</i>	<i>Fermento, to leaven with dough, to ferment with.</i>
<i>Calco, to tread.</i>		<i>Festino, to hasten.</i>
<i>Caligo, to be dark or dim-sighted.</i>		<i>Fligito, to dun.</i>
<i>Carmino, to card wool.</i>		<i>Flagro, to be on fire.</i>
<i>Castigo, to chastise.</i>		<i>Flo, to blow.</i>
<i>Castro, to cut off.</i>		<i>Focillo, resocillo, to cherish, to warm.</i>
<i>Celebro, to make fumetti.</i>		<i>Fodico, to pierce or push.</i>
<i>Celo, to conceal.</i>		

- Fôra, to bore.**  
**Fartino, to prosper.**  
**Fragro, to smell sweetly.**  
**Fraudo, to defraud.**  
**Fruis, to crumble.**  
**Frustrô, & -or, to disappoint.**  
**Fûco, to colour, to paint.**  
**Fûgo, to put to flight.**  
**Fundo, to sound.**  
**Genêro, to beget.**  
**Grâvo, to weigh down.**  
**Gûberno, to govern.**  
**Gusto, to taste.**  
**Hâbitô, to dwell.**  
**Hâsita, to doubt.**  
**Hâlo, to breathe.**  
**Hip, to gape.**  
**Hônôro, to honour.**  
**Jacto, to boast, to brag.**  
**Jento, to breakfast.**  
**Ignôro, to be ignorant.**  
**Immôlo, to sacrifice.**  
**Inpêro, to command.**  
**Inpêtro, to obtain.**  
**Inauro, to gild.**  
**Inchoo, to begin.**  
**Inclino, to incline.**  
**Indâgo, to trace out.**  
**Indico, to show.**  
**Inquina, to pollute.**  
**Inspico, to sharpen at the end.**  
**Instauro, to renew.**  
**Instigo, to push on.**  
**Intercallo, to insert one or more days, to make the year agree with the course of the sun.**  
**Intro, to enter.**  
**Invito, to invite.**  
**Irrâdia, to shine upon.**  
**Irrito, to provoke.**  
**Itêro, to do again.**  
**Jûbilo, to shout for joy.**  
**Jurgo, & -or, to chide or scold.**  
**Jûro, to swear.**  
**Lâbôro, to labour.**  
**Lâcêro, to tear.**  
**Lachrymo, & -or, to weep.**  
**Lævigo, to smooth or polish.**  
**Lallo, to sing as a nurse to a child.**  
**Lânio, to tear.**  
**Latro, to bark.**  
**Laxo, to loose.**  
**Lêgo, to send as an ambassador, to bequeath.**  
**Lêvo, to lighten.**  
**Libo, to taste.**  
**Libêro, to free.**  
**Ligo, to bind.**  
**Liquo, to melt.**  
**Litigo, to quarrel.**  
**Lio, to appease by sacrifice.**  
**Lûcubro, to sit up late to study.**  
**Lustro, to survey.**  
**Luxo, to put out of joint.**  
**Maeto, to slay, to sacrifice.**  
**Mando, to command, to commit.**  
**Mâno, to flow.**  
**Mâstro, to hasten.**  
**Mêdico, & -or, to cure.**  
**Mêmôro, to tell.**  
**Mes, to go or pass.**  
**Mêrûlo, & -or, to sleep at noon.**  
**Migro, to remove.**  
**Milito, to be a soldier.**  
**Ministro, to serve.**  
**Mitigo, to pacify.**  
**Monstro, to show or tell.**  
**Mulco, to beat.**  
**Multo, & -cto, to fine.**  
**Musso, & -ito, to mutter.**  
**Mûll, to maim.**  
**Mûro, to change.**  
**Narro, to tell.**  
**Nausco, to be sea-sick.**  
**Nâvigo, to sail.**  
**Nâvo, to act vigorously.**  
**Nêgo, to deny.**  
**Nicto, to wink.**  
**No, to swim.**  
**Nôdo, to knot, rar. act.**  
**Nûmino, to name.**  
**Nûto, to mark.**  
**Nôvo, to renew.**  
**Nûdo, to make bare.**  
**Nûmero, to count.**  
**Nuncûpo, to call.**  
**Nuntio, to tell.**  
**Nûto, to nod.**  
**Obscero, to beseech.**  
**Obsêro, to look.**  
**Obtempêro, to obey.**  
**Obtrusco, to kill.**  
**Occuro, to stop up.**  
**Occo, to harrow.**  
**Osûro, to perfume.**  
**Onêro, to load.**  
**Opto, to wish.**  
**Oibo, to deprive.**  
**Ordino, to put in order.**  
**Oino, to deck, to adorn.**  
**Oio, to beg.**  
**Oselto, & -or, to yawn, to be listless.**  
**Pæo, to subdue.**  
**Palpito, to beat or throb.**  
**Palpo, to stroke, to gain by flattery.**  
**Pânato, to perform funeral rites, to revenge.**  
**Pâro, to prepare.**  
**Patro, to perform.**  
**Pæco, to sin.**  
**Pênetro, to pierce.**  
**Persevêro, to continue constant.**  
**Pio, to expiate.**  
**Piæco, to appease.**  
**Piûro, to bewail.**  
**Porto, to carry.**  
**Postûlo, to demand.**  
**Privo, to deprive.**  
**Prôbo, to approve.**  
**Procrastino, to delay.**  
**Profligo, to rout.**  
**Prômulgo, to publish.**  
**Propâgo, to propagate.**  
**Prôpêro, to hasten.**  
**Propino, to drink to.**  
**Prôtêlo, to chase away.**  
**Publico, to publish, to denounce.**  
**Pugno, to fight.**  
**Pullûto, to bud.**  
**Purgo, to cleanse.**  
**Pûto, to think.**  
**Quadro, to square.**  
**Rêcupêro, to recover.**  
**Rêfûso, to refuse.**  
**Rêfrigêro, to cool.**  
**Rêgêro, to thaw.**  
**Rêpâro, to repair.**  
**Rêprensento, to resemble, to show; to pay money in advance.**  
**Rêvêro, to unlock.**  
**Rîvo, to water.**  
**Rôgo, to ask.**  
**Rôto, to wheel about.**  
**Ructo, & -or, to belch.**  
**Rûmino, to chew the cud.**  
**Rûuco, to weed.**  
**Sacro, to consecrate.**  
**Sâcûro, to fatten.**  
**Sâcivo, to spit or slaver.**  
**Salto, to dance.**  
**Sâlûto, to salute.**  
**Sâno, to heal.**  
**Sâo, to satisfy.**  
**Sâtûro, to fill to glut.**  
**Scârifico, to lance or open.**  
**Serco, to hawk or watch its spitting.**  
**Sêcundo, to prosper.**  
**Sêdq, to allay.**  
**Sêpâro, to sever.**  
**Servo, to keep.**  
**Sibilo, to hiss.**  
**Sicco, to dry.**  
**Signo, to mark out.**  
**Sig. ifico, to mean, to give notice.**  
**Simûlo, to pretend.**  
**Sôcio, to match, to join.**  
**Sôllicito, to stir up, to disquiet.**  
**Somniao, to dream.**  
**Specro, to behold.**  
**Spêro, to hope.**  
**Spêro, to breathe.**  
**Spôlio, to rob.**  
**Spûmo, to foam.**  
**Stagno, to stand as water.**  
**Stallo, to drop.**  
**Stimûlo, to goad, to vex.**  
**Stîpo, to stuff, to guard.**  
**Strangûlo, to strangle.**  
**Strigo, to breathe, or rest in work, as oxen or horses do.**  
**Sûdo, to sweat.**  
**Suffûco, to strangle.**  
**Suffûco, to burn incense.**  
**Suffûlo, to taunt or jeer.**  
**Suleo, to furrow.**  
**Sûpêro, to overcome.**  
**Suppêditto, to afford.**  
**Sûcuro, to whisper.**  
**Tardo, to stop.**  
**Taxo, to rate, reprove.**  
**Têmêro, to defile.**  
**Tempêro, to temper.**  
**Tênuo, to make small.**

Těrbro, to bore.  
 Těrnáno, to bound.  
 Těúlo, to tickle.  
 Těúbo, to stagger.  
 Těšěro, to bear.  
 Tráno, to swim over.  
 Trípúdia, to caper.  
 Triúmpho, to triumph.  
 Trěúdo, to kill.  
 Turbo, to disturb.  
 Úúlo, to hoist.  
 Umbro, to shade.

Věcillo, to water.  
 Věco, to want, to be at leisure.  
 Vasto, to lay waste.  
 Vellico, to pluck, twitch or pinch; to taunt or rail at.  
 Vělo, to cover.  
 Ventlo, to fan.  
 Verběro, to whip.  
 Vestigo, to search for.  
 Vibro, to brandish, to shake.  
 Viduo, to deprive.

Viglo, to watch.  
 Vindico, to claim, to revenge.  
 Višlo, to violate.  
 Vito, to soil.  
 Vira, to shun.  
 Vitúpěro, to blame.  
 Vúso, to call.  
 Vúlo, to fly.  
 Vúro, to devour.  
 Vulgo, to spread abroad.  
 Vulnuro, to wound.

Exc. 1. *Do, dēdi, dátum, dāre, to give: se, venundo, to sell; circundo, to surround; pessundo, to overthrow; satisdo, to give surety; venundēdi, venundátum, venundāre, &c.* The other compounds of *do* are of the third conjugation.

*Sto, stēli, statum, to stand.* Its compounds have *stīti, stītum*, and oftener *státum*; as, *præsto, præstīti, præstītum, or præstátum, to excel, to perform.* So *ad-, ante-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-sto.*

Exc. 2. *Lāvo, lāvi, lōtum, lautum, lāvátum, to wash.*

*Pōto, pōtavī, pōtum, or pōtátum, to drink.*

*Jūvo, jūvi, jūtum, to help; fut. part. juvaturus.* So *ad-jūvo.*

Exc. 3. *Cūbo, cūbui, cūbītum, to lie.* So; *ac-, ex-, oc-, rē-cūbo.* The other compounds insert an *m*, and are of the third conjugation.

*Dōmo, dōmui, dōmītum, to subdue.* So *ē-, per-dōmo.*

*Sōno, sōnui, sōnītum, to sound.* So *as-, circum-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, re-sōno.*

*Tōno, tōnuī, tōnītum, to thunder.* So *at-, circum-, in-, superin-, rē-tōno.* Horace has *intōnatus.*

*Věto, vētūi, vētītum, to forbid.*

*Crěpo, crěpui, crěpītum, to make a noise.* So *con-, in-, per-, rē-crěpo: discrěpo* has rather *discrěpūvi.*

Exc. 4. *Frīco, frīcui, frīclum, to rub.* So *af-, circum-, con-, de-, ef-, in-, per-, re-frīco.* But some of these have also *atum.*

*Sěco, sēcui, sēctum, to cut.* So *circum-, con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, præ-, rē-, sub-sěco.*

*Něco, něcui, or něcavi, něcátum, to kill.* So *inter-, ē-něco:* but these have oftener *ectum; enectum, internectum.*

*Mīco, mīcui, — to glitter, to shine.* So *inter-, prō-mīco.* *Emīco, has emīcui, emīcátum: dimīco, dimīcavi, dimīcátum, rarely dimīcui, to fight.*

Exc. 5. These three want both preterite and supine;

*labo*, to fall or faint; *nexo*, to bind; and *plico*, to fold.

*Plico*, compounded with a noun, or with the prepositions, *re-*, *sub-*, has *āvi*, *ātum*; as, *duplico*, *duplicavi*, *duplicatum*, to double. So *multi-*, *sup-*, *re-plico*.

The other compounds of *plico* have either *āvi* and *ātum*, or *ui* and *itum*; as, *applico*, *applicui*, *applicatum*, or *-āvi*, *ātum*, to apply. So *im-*, *com-plico*. *Explico*, to unfold, has commonly *explicui*, *explicatum*; but when it signifies to explain or interpret, *explicāvi*, *explicātum*.

### Second Conjugation.

Verbs of the second conjugation have *ui* and *itum*; as, *habeo*, *habui*, *habutum*, to have. So,

*Adhibeo*, to admit, to use.  
*Cohibeo*, *inhibeo*, to restrain.  
*Exhibeo*, to show, to give.  
*Præhibeo*, to say to give out.  
*Prohibeo*, to hinder.  
*Prothibeo*, to venture less.  
*Præbeo*, to afford.  
*Rēdhibeo*, to return, or take back a thing

that was sold for some fault.

*Dēbeo*, to owe.

*Mēreo*, to deserve: *Com-*, *de-*, *e-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *mēreo*, or *mercor*.

*Mōneo*, to admonish: *Ad-*, *com-*, *præ-*, *mōneo*.

*Terro*, to terrify: *Abe-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *per-*, *terro*

*Distribuo*, to count over, to distribute.

Neuter verbs which have *ui* want the supine; as, *arreo*, *arui*, to be dry. So,

*Acero*, & *-seo*, to be sour.  
*Albeo*, to be white.  
*Candeo*, to be white.  
*Calleo*, to be hard.  
*Cāneo*, to be hoary.  
*Clāreo*, to be bright.  
*Egeo*, *indigeo*, to want.  
*Emineo*, to stand above others  
*Flaccō*, to wither.  
*Flōreo*, to flourish.  
*Fœtuo*, to stink.  
*Frēdeo*, to gnash the teeth.  
*Frondeo*, to bear leaves.

*Horreo*, to be rough.  
*Hūreo*, to be wet.  
*Inmineo*, to hang over.  
*Languo*, to languish.  
*Liquo*, *licui*, to melt, to be clear.  
*Māceo*, to be lean.  
*Mādeo*, to be wet.  
*Marceo*, to wither.  
*Mūreo*, to be mouldy.  
*Nitro*, to shine.  
*Palleo*, to be pale.  
*Pāteo*, to be open.  
*Pūteo*, to stink.

*Putreo*, to rot.  
*Rancō*, to be mouldy.  
*Rigeo*, to be stiff.  
*Rūbeo*, to be red.  
*Squāleo*, to be foul.  
*Souleo*, to be nasty.  
*Stūdeo*, to savour.  
*Stūpeo*, to be amazed.  
*Splendeo*, to shine.  
*Torpeo*, to be benumbed.  
*Tūneo*, to swell.  
*Vigeo*, to be strong.  
*Vireo*, to be green.

But the neuter verbs which follow, together with their compounds, have the supine, and are regularly conjugated: *Valeo*, to be in health; and *æqui-*, *con-*, *e-*, *in-*, *præ-valeo*: *Plāceo*, to please; and *com-*, *per-plāceo*: *Displāceo*, to displease: *Cāreo*, to want: *Pāreo*, to appear, to obey; and *ap-*, *com-pāreo*: *Jāceo*, to lie; and *ad-*, *circum-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *sub-*, *super-jāceo*: *Caleo*, to be warm; and *cōn-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *re-cāleo*: *Nōceo*, to hurt; *Dōleo*, to be grieved; and *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *per-doleo*: *Cōāleo*, to grow together: *Litceo*, which in the active signifies, to be lawful, to be valued; and what is singular, in the passive, to bid a price: *Lāteo*, to lurk, the compounds of which want the supine,

*deliteo, inter-, sub-lateo*, as likewise do those of *Taceo, -cui, -cūm*, to be silent; *con-, ob-, rē-ticeo*.

These three active verbs likewise want the supine: *Ty-meo, -ui*, to fear; *Sileo, -ui*, to conceal; *Arceo, -cui*, to drive away: But the compounds of *arceo* have the supine; as, *exerceo, exercui, exercitum*, to exercise. So *coerceo*, to restrain.

Exc. 1. The following verbs in *BEO* and *CEO*:

*Jūbeo, jussi; jussum*, to order. So *fidē-jūbeo*, to bail, or be surety for.

*Sorbeo, sorbui, sorptum*, to sup. So *ab-sorbeo*, to suck in; *ex, rē-sorbeo*. We also find *absorpsi, exsorpsi; Exsorptum, rēsorptum*, are not in use.

*Dūceo, dūcui, doctum*, to teach. So, *ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, sub-dūceo*.

*Misceo, miscui, mistum, or mixtum*, to mix. So *ad-, com-, im-, inter-, per-, rē-misceo*.

*Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum*, to stroke, to soothe. So *ad-, circum-, com-, de-, per-, rē-mulceo*.

*Lūceo, luxi, —* to shine. So *al-, circum-, col-, di-, ē-, il-, inter-, per-, or pel-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, trans-lūceo*.

Exc. 2. The following verbs in *DEO*:

*Prandeo, prandi, pransum*, to dine.

*Vīdeo, vīdi, visum*, to see. So *in-, per-, præ-, pro-, rē-video*.

*Sēdeo, sēdi, sessum*, to sit. So *as-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, ob-, per-, pos-, præ-, re-, sub-sēdeo*: *Circumsēdeo, or circumsēdeo, supersēdeo*. But *dē-, dis-, per-, præ-, rē-, sub-sēdeo*, seem to want the supine.

*Strīdeo, strīdi, —* to make a noise.

*Pendeo, pēpendi, pensum*, to hang. So *de-, im-, pro-, super-pendeo*.

*Mordeo, mōmordi, morsum*, to bite. So *ad-, com-, de-, ob-, præ-, re-mordeo*.

*Spondeo, spōpōndi, sponsum*, to promise. So *de-, re-spondeo*.

*Tondeo, tātondi, tonsum*, to clip. So *at-, circum-, de-tondeo*.

But the compounds of these verbs do not double the first syllable; thus, *dependi, remordi, respondi, attondi, &c.*

*Rīdeo, rīsi, rīsum*, to laugh. So *ar-, de-, ir-, sub-rīdeo*.

*Suādeo, suāsi, suāsum*, to advise. So *dis-, per-suādeo*.

*Ardeo, arsi, arsum*, to burn. So *ex-, in-, ob-ardeo*.

Exc. 3. The following verbs in *GEO*:

*Augeo, auxi, auctum*, to increase. So *ad-, ex-augeo*.



*Lūgeo, lūxi,* — to mourn. So *e-, pro-, sub-lūgeo.*

*Frigeo, frīxi,* — to be cold. So *per-, re-frigeo.*

*Tergeo, tersi, tertum,* to wipe. So *abs-, circum-, de-, ex-, per-tergeo.*

*Mulgeo, mulsī, mulsum* or *mulctum,* to milk. So *e-, im-mulgeo.*

*Indulgeo, indulsī, indultum,* to grant, to indulge.

*Urgeo, ursi,* — to press. So *ad-, ex-, in-, per-, sub-, super-urgeo.*

*Fulgeo, fulsi,* — to shine. So *af-, circum-, con-, ef-, inter-, præ-, re-, super-fulgeo.*

*Turgeo, tursi,* to swell. *Algeo, alsi,* to be cold.

Exc. 4. The following verbs in *IEO* and *LEO*:

*Vieo, viēvi, viētum,* to bind with twigs, to hoop a vessel.

*Cico, (cīvi) cītum,* to stir up, to rouse. So *ac-, con-, ex-, in-, per-cico.* *Civi* comes from *cio* of the fourth conjugation.

*Fleo, flēvi, flētum,* to weep. So *af-, de-fleo.*

*Compleo, complevi, complētum,* to fill. So the other compounds of *pleo*; *de-, ex-, in-, adim-, op-, re-, sup-pleo.*

*Dēleo, dēlēvi, dēlētum,* to destroy, to blot out.

*Ōleo, to smell,* has *ōlui, ōlītum.* So likewise its compounds, which have a similar signification; *ob-, per-, red-, sub-ōleo.* But such of the compounds as have a different signification make *ēvi* and *ētum*; thus *exōlēo, exōlēvi, exōlētum,* to fade. So *insōleo, -ēvi, -ētum,* or *-itum,* to grow into use; *obsōleo, -ēvi, -ētum,* to grow out of use. *Abōleo, to abolish,* has *abōlēvi, abōlītum*; and *adōleo, to grow up, to burn,* *adōlēvi, adultum.*

Exc. 5. Several verbs in *NEO, QUEO, REO,* and *SEO.*

*Maneo, mansi, mansum,* to stay. So *per-, re-māneo.*

*Nēo, nēvi, nētum,* to spin. So *per-neo.*

*Tēneo, tēnui, tentum,* to hold. So *con-, de-, dis-, ob-, re-, sus-tēneo.* But *attēneo, pertēneo,* are not used in the supine; and seldom *abstēneo.*

*Torqueo, torsi, tortum,* to throw, to whirl, to twist. Thus, *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, re-torqueo.*

*Hæreo, hæsi, hæsum,* to stick. Thus, *ad-, con-, in-, ob-, sub-hæreo.*

*Torreo, torruī, tostum,* to roast. So *extorreo.*

*Censeo, censui, censum,* to judge. So *ac-, per-, re-censeo,* to review; *succenseo,* to be angry.

Exc. 6. Verbs in *VEO* have *vi, tum*; as, *mōveo, mōvi, mōtum,* to move; *Fōveo, fōvi, fōtum,* to cherish. So *con-, re-foveo.* So *vōveo,* to vow or wish, and *dēvōveo.*

*Raveo*, to favour; has *fāvi*, *fautum*; and *cāveo*, to beware of; *cāvi*, *cautum*. So *frā-cāveo*.

Neuter verbs in *veo* want the supine; as *hāveo*, *hāvi*, to be afraid.

*Ferveo*, to boil, to be hot, makes *ferbut*. So *de-*, *es-*, *in-*, *per-*, *rē-ferveo*.

*Connīveo*, to wink, has *connīvi* and *connixi*.

Exc. 7. The following verbs want both preterite and supine: *Lacteo*, to suck milk; *lūeo*, to be black and blue; *acēteo*, to abound; *renīdeo* to shine; *māreo*, to be sorrowful, *āveo*, to desire; *hōleo*, to be able; *flāveo*, to be yellow; *denseo*, to grow thick; *glabreo*, to be smooth or bare. To these add *calveo* to be bald; *cēveo*, to wag the tail, as dogs do when they sawn on one; *hēbeo*, to be dull; *ūveo*, to be moist; and some others.

### Third Conjugation.

Verbs of the third conjugation form their preterite and supine variously, according to the termination of the present.

### IO.

1. *Fācio*, *fēci*, *factum*, to do, to make. So the compounds which retain *a*: *lucrī-*, *magnī-*, *ārē-*, *cālē-*, *mādē-*, *tēpē-*, *bēnē-*, *inālē-*, *sātis-fācio*, &c. But those which change *a* into *i* have *ectum*; as, *afficio*, *affēci*, *affectum*. So *con-*, *de-*, *es-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *of-*, *per-*, *frā-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sufficio*. Note; *FACIO*, compounded with a noun, verb, or adverb, retains *a*; but when compounded with a preposition, it changes *a* into *i*.

Some compounds of *facio* are of the first conjugation; as, *Amplifacio*, *sacrificio*, *terrificio*, *magnificio*; *gratificor*, to gratify, or do a good turn, to give up; *lūdificor*, to mock.

*Jācio*, *jēci*, *jactum*, to throw. So *ab-*, *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *e-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-*, *superin-*, *tra-*, *jecto*; in the supine *-ectum*.

The compounds of *spēcio* and *lūcio*, which themselves are not used, have *exi*, and *ectum*; as, *aspicio*, *aspiexi*, *aspectum*, to behold. So *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *in-*, *intro-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *retro-*, *su-*, *spicio*.

*Allicio*, *allexi*, *allectum*, to allure. So *h-*, *pel-*, *licio*; but *ēlicio*, to draw out, has *ēlicut*, *ēlicitum*.

2. *Fōdio, fōdi, fossum*, to dig, to delve. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *suf-*, *trans-fōdio*.

*Fūgio, fūgi, fūgitum*, to fly. So *au-*, (for *ab-*) *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ef-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *suf-*, *subter-*, *trans-fūgio*.

3. *Cāpio, cāpi, captum*, to take. So *ac-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *oc-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sus-cāpio*, (in the supine *-ceptum*;) and *ante-cāpio*.

*Rāpio, rāpi, raptum*, to pull, or snatch. So *ab-*, *ar-*, *cor-*, *de-*, *di-*, *e-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *sur-rāpio*, *-rāpi*, *-raptum*.

*Sāpio, sāpi, —*, to favour, to be wise. So *constāpio*, to be well in one's wits; *desāpio*, to be foolish; *restāpio*, to come to one's wits.

*Cūpio, cūpi, cupitum*, to desire. So *con-*, *dis-*, *per-cūpio*.

4. *Pārio, pāri, paritum*, or *partum*, to bring forth a child, to get. Its compounds are of the Fourth conjugation.

*Quātio, quāsi, quassum*, to shake; but *quāsi* is hardly used. Its compounds have *cūssi*, *cūssum*, as, *concūtio*, *concūssi*, *concūssum*. So *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-*, *reper-*, *sus-cūtio*.

UO has *ui*, *ūtum*; *āt*,

*Arguo, argui, argūtum*, to shew, to prove, or argue, to reprove. So *co-*, *red-arguo*, to confute. So,

*Acuo, Excucio, to sharpen.*

*Batuo, vel battuo, to beat, to fight, to fence with foils.*

*Induo, to put on clothes.*

*Exuo, to put off clothes.*

*Imbuo, to wet or imbue, to season or instruct.*

*Minuo, to lessen: Con-, de-, di-, im-minuo.*

*Spuo, to spit: Con-, de-, ex-, in-spuo.*

*Statuo, to set or place, to ordain.*

*Con-, de-, in-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-statuo.*

*Sternuo, to sneeze.*

*Suo, to sew or stitch, to tack together: An-,*

*circum-, con-, dis-, in-, præ-, re-, sus-*

*tribuo, to give, to divide: At-, con-, dis-, re-tribuo.*

Exc. 1. *Fluo, fluxi, fluxum*, to flow. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *subter-*, *super-*, *trans-fluo*.

*Struo, struxi, structum*, to put in order, to build. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *sub-*, *super-struo*.

Exc. 2. *Luo, lui, luttum*, to pay, to wash away, to suffer punishment. Its compounds have *ūtum*; as, *abluo*, *-ui*, *-ūtum*, to wash away, to purify. So *al-*, *circum-*, *col-*, *de-*, *di-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *sol-*, *pro-*, *sub-luo*.

*Ruo, rui, ruitum*, to rush, to fall. Its compounds have *ūtum*; as, *diruo*, *dirui*, *dirūtum*, to overthrow. So *e-*, *ob-*, *pro-*, *sub-ruo*. *Corruo*, and *irruo*, want the supine; as likewise do *mētuō*, to fear; *filuo*, to rain; *ingruo*, to assail;

*congruo*, to agree; *respuo*, to reject, to slight; *annuo*, to assent; and the other compounds of the obsolete verb *nuo*; *abnuo*, to refuse; *innuo*, to nod or beckon with the hand; *rēnuo*, to deny; all which have *ui* in the preterite.

BO has *bi, bītum*; as,

*Bībo, bībi, bībītum*, to drink. So *ad-, com-, e-, im-, fier-, fra-bībo*.

Exc. 1. *Scribo, scripsi, scriptum*, to write. So *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, post-, pra-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, supra-, trans-scribo*.

*Nūbo, nupsī, nuptum*, to veil, to be married. So *de-, e-, in-, ob-nūbo*. Instead of *nupsī*, we often find *nupta sum*.

Exc. 2. The compounds of *cūbo* in this conjugation insert an *m* before the last syllable; as, *accumbo, accūbui, accūbītum*, to recline at table. So *con-, de-, dis-, in-, oc-, pro-, re-, suc-, superin-cumbo, -cūbui, -cūbītum*.

These two verbs want the supine; *scābo, scābi*, to scratch; *lambo, lambi*, to lick. So *ad-, circum-, dē-, fra-lambo*.

*Glūbo and deglūbo*, to strip, to flay, want both pret. & sup.

## CO.

1. *Dīco, dixi, dictum*, to say. So *ab-, ad-, con-, contra-, e-, in-, inter-, fra-, pro-dīco*.

*Dūco, duxi, ductum*, to lead. So *ab-, ad-, circum-, \*con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, ob-, per-, pra-, pro-, re-, se-, sub-, tra-, or trans-dūco*.

2. *Vīco, vīci, victum*, to overcome. So *con-, de-, e-, per-, rē-vīco*.

*Parco, pēserci, parsūm*, seldom *parsi, parsitum* to spare. So *comparco*, or *comperco*, which is seldom used.

*Ico, īci, ictum*, to strike.

SCO has *vi, tum*; as,

*Nosco, nōvi, nōtum*, to know; fut. part. *nosciturus*. So,

*Dignosco*, to distinguish; *ignosco*, to pardon; also *inter-, per-, prae-nosco*.

*Cresco, -ēvi, -ētum*, to grow: *Con-, de-, ex-, re-*, and without the supine, *ac-, in-, per-, pro-, suo-, super-cresco*.

*Quiesco, -ēvi, -ētum*, to rest: *Ac-, con-, inter-, rē-quiesco*.

*Scisco, -ivi, -itum*, to ordain; *ad-, or ascisco*, to take, to associate; *concisco*, to vote, to commit; also *prae-, re-scisco*; *descisco*, to revolt.

*Suesco, to be accustomed*; *As-, con-, de-, in-suesco, -ēvi, -ētum*.

Exc. 1. *Agnosco, agnōvi, agnītum*, to own; *cognosco, cognōvi, cognītum*, to know. So *recognosco*, to review.

*Pasco, pāvi, pascum, to feed.* So *com-, dē-pasco.*

Exc. 2. The following verbs want the supine.

*Disco, didici, to learn.* So *ad-, com-, de-, e-, per-, præ-disco, didici.*

*Posco, pōposci, to demand.* So *ap-, dē-, ex-, rē-posco.*

*Comflesco, conflescui, to stop, to restrain.* So *disflesco, disflescui, to separate.*

Exc. 3. *Glisco, to grow; fassco, to be weary; and likewise inceptive verbs, want both preterite and supine: as, arasco, to become dry.* But these verbs borrow the preterite and supine from their primitives; as, *ardesco, to grow hot, arsi, arsum, from ardeo.*

DO has *di, sum; as,*

*Scando, scandi, scansum, to climb; edo, ēdi, ēsum, to eat.*  
So,

*Ascendo, to mount.*

*Descendo, to go down.*

*Con-, e-, ex-, in-, trans-*

*scendo.*

*Accendo, to kindle: In-, rascendo.*

*Cado, to forge, to stamp, or*

*cast: Ex-, in-, per-, pro-, re-*

*cadō.*

*Defendo, to defend.*

*Offendo, to strike against,*

*to offend, to find.*

*Mando, to cheer: Pre-, re-*

*mando.*

*Prehendo, to take hold of:*

*Ap-, com-, de-prehendo.*

Exc. 1. *Divido, divisi, divisum, to divide.*

*Rādo, rāsi, rāsum, to shave.* So *ab-, circum-, cor-, de-, e-, inter-, præ-, sub-rādo.*

*Clāudo, clausi, clausum, to close.* So *circum-, con-, di-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, re-, se-clāudo.*

*Plaudo, plausi, plausum, to clap hands for joy.* So *ap-, circum-plāudo: also com-, di-, ex-, sup-plāudo, -plausi, -plausum.*

*Lūdo, lūsi, lūsum, to play.* So *ab-, al-, col-, de-, e-, il-, inter-, ob-, præ-, pro-, re-lūdo.*

*Trūdo, trūsi, trūsum, to thrust.* So *abs-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, pro-, re-trūdo.*

*Lado, lesi, lesum, to hurt.* So *al-, col-, e-, il-lādo, -lesi, -lesum.*

*Rōdo, rōsi, rōsum, to gnaw.* So *ab-, ar-, circum-, cor-, de-, e-, ob-, per-, præ-rodo.*

*Vādo, to go, wants both preterite and supine; but its compounds have *si, sum; as, invādo, invāsi, invāsum, to invade, or fall upon.* So *circum-, ē-, super-vādo.**

*Cēdo, cessi, cessum, to yield.* So *abs-, ac-, antē-, con-, de-, di-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, pro-, rē-, retro-, se-, suc-cēdo.*

Exc. 2. *Pando, pandi, passum, and sometimes pansum, to open, to spread.* So *dis-, ex-, op-, præ-, rē-pando.*

*Cōmēdo, comēdi, comēsum, or comestum, to eat.* But *ēdo* itself, and the rest of its compounds, have always *ēsum*; as *ad-, amb-, ex-, per-, sub-, super-ēdo, -ēdi, -ēsum.*

*Fundo, fūdī, fūsum, to pour fourth.* So *af-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ef-, in-, inter-, of-, per-, pro-, re-, suf-, super-, superin-, trans fundo.*

*Scindo, acīdi, acisum, to cut.* So, *as-, circum-, con-, ex-, inter-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, transcindo.*

*Findo, fīdi, fīsum, to cleave.* So *con-, dis-, in-findo.*

Exc. 3. *Tundo, tūtūdi, tunsum, and sometimes tūsum, to beat.* The compounds have *tūdi, tūsum*; as, *contundo, contūdi, contūsum, to bruise.* So *ex-, ob-, per-, re-tundo.*

*Cādo, cēcīdi, cāsūm, to fall.* The compounds want the supine; as, *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, inter-, pro-, suc-cīdo, -cīdi, —*: except, *incīdo, incīdi, incāsūm, to fall in; recīdo, recīdi, recāsūm, to fall back; and occīdo, occīdi, occāsūm, to fall down.*

*Cado, cēcīdi, cāsūm, to cut, to kill.* The compounds change *a* into *i* long; as, *accīdo, accīdi, accisūm, to cut about.* So *abs-, con-, circum-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, præ-, rē-, suc-cīdo.*

*Tendo, tētēdi, tensūm, or tentum, to stretch out.* So *at-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, ob-, præ-, pro-tendo, -tēdi, -tensūm or tentum.* But the compounds have rather *tentum*, except *ostendo, to shew; which has commonly ostensūm.*

*Pēdo, pēpēdi, pēditūm, to break wind backward.* So *sp-pēdo.*

*Pendo, pēpēdi, pēnsūm, to weigh.* So *af-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-, sus-pēndo, -pēdi, -pēnsūm.*

Exc. 4. The compounds of *do* have *dīdi, and dītūm*; as, *abdo, abdīdi, abdītūm, to hide.* So *ad-, ton-, dē-, dī-, ē-, ob-, per-, pro-, red-, sub-, trado*: also *decon-, re-condo*: and *coad-, superad-do*; and *deper-, disper-do*. To these add *crēdo, crēdīdi, crēditūm, to believe; vendo, vendīdi, vendītūm, to sell.* *Abcondo, to hide, has abscondi, abscondītūm, rarely abscondīdi.*

Exc. 5. These three want the supine: *strido, strīdi, to creak; rūdo, rūdi, to bray like an ass; and sīdo, sīdi, to sink down.* The compounds of *sīdo* borrow the preterite and supine from *sēdeo*; as, *consīdo, consēdi, consēsūm, to sit down.* So *as-, circum-, de-, in-, ob-, per-, rē-, sub-sīdo.*

Note, Several compounds of verbs in *do* and *deo*, in some respects resemble one another, and therefore should be

carefully distinguished; as, *concido, concēdo, concido*; *con-  
sido* and *consideo*; *conscindo, conscendo, &c.*

GO, GUO, has *xi, ctum*; as,

*Rēgo, rexi, rectum*, to rule, to govern; *dirigo, -exi, -ectum*, to direct; *arigo, & ēriigo, -exi, -ectum*, to raise up; *corrigo*, to correct; *parriigo, -exi, -ectum*, to stretch out; *subriigo*, to raise up. So,

*Cingo, cinxi, cinctum*, to gird, to surround: *Ac-, dis-, circum-, in-, præ-, re-, sur-*cingo.

*Fligo, to dash or beat upon*: *Af-, con-, in-*fligo; also *profligo, to rout*, of the first conj.

*Jungo, to join*: *abjungo, to separate*: *Ad-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, inter-, se-, sub-*jungo.

*Lingo, to lick*: *de-, ē-*lingo; & *pollingo, to anoint a dead body*.

*Mungo, to wipe, or clean the nose*.

*Emungo, to wipe, to cheat*.

*Plango, to beat, to lament*.

*Stingo, or Stinguo, to dash out, to extinguish*: *Di-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, re-*stinguo.

*Tēgo, to cover*: *Circum-, con-, de-, in-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-*tēgo.

*Tingo, or Tinguo, to dip, or dye*: *Con-, in-*tingo.

*Ungo, or Unguo, to anoint*: *Ex-, in-, per-, in-, per-, super-*ungo.

Exc. 1. *Surgo, to rise*, has *surrexi, surrectum*. So *ac-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, re-*surgo.

*Pergo, porrexi, perrectum*, to go forward.

*Stringo, strinxī, strinctum*, to bind, to strain, to lop. So *ad-, con-, de-, dis-, ob-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-*stringo.

*Fingo, finxi, fictum*, to feign. So *af-, con-, ef-, re-*fingo.

*Pingo, pinxi, pictum*, to paint. So *ap-, de-*pingo.

Exc. 2. *Frango, frēgi, fractum*, to break. So *con-, de-, dis-, ef-, in-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-*frango, -frēgi, -fractum.

*Āgo, ēgi, actum*, to do, to drive. So *ab-, ad-, ex-, red-, sub-, trans-, transad-*igo and *circum-, per-*āgo: *cōgo, for cō-āgo, cōēgi, coactum*, to bring together, to force.

These three compounds of *āgo* want the supine: *sātāgo, satēgi*, to be busy about a thing; *prōdīgo, prodēgi*, to lavish, or spend riotously; *dēgo, for dāgo; dēgi*, to live or dwell. *Ambīgo, to doubt, to dispute*, also wants the preterite.

*Lēgo, lēgi, lectum*, to gather, to read. So *al-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-*lēgo: also *col-, de-, e-, recol-, se-*lēgo, which change *ī* into *ē*.

*Diligo, to love*, has *dilexi, dilectum*. So *neglīgo, to neglect*; and *intelligo, to understand*; but *neglīgo* has sometimes *neglēgi*, Sall. Jug. 40.

Exc. 3. *Tango, tētiigi, tactum*, to touch. So *at-, con-, ob-, per-*tingo; thus *attīngo, attīgi, attactum, &c.*

*Pungo, pūpūgi, punctum*, to prick or sting. The com-

pounds have *funxi*; as, *confungo, confunxi, confunctum*. So *dis-, ex-, inter-fungo*: but *refungo*, has *refunxi*; or *refūngi*.

*Pango, panxi, factum*, to fix, to drive in, to compose: or *pēngi*, which comes from the obsolete verb *pago*, to bargain, for which we use *paciscor*. The compounds of *pango*, have *pēgi*; as, *compango, compēgi, compactum*, to put together. So *im-, ob-, sup-pingo*.

Exc. 4. *Spargo, sparsi, sparsum*, to spread. So *ad-, circum-, con-, di-, in-, inter-, per-, pro-, re-spargo*.

*Mergo, mersi, mersum*, to dip, or plunge. So *de-, e-, im-, sub-mergo*.

*Tergo, tersi, tersum*, to wipe, or clean. So *abs-, de-, ex-, per-tergo*.

*Figo, fixi, fixum*, to fix, or fasten. So *af-, con-, de-, in-, ef-, per-, fra-, re-, suf-, trans-figo*.

*Frigo, frixi, frixum*, or *fritum*, to fry.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine: *clango, clanxi*, to sound a trumpet; *ningo, or ninguo, ninxi*, to snow; *ango, anxi*, to vex. *Vergo*, to incline, or lie outwards, wants both preterite and supine. So *e-, de-, in-vergo*.

## HO, JO.

1. *Trāho, traxi, tractum*, to draw. So *abs-, et-circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-trāho*.

*Veho, vexi, vectum*, to carry. So *a-, ad-, circum-, con-, di-, e-, in-, per-, fra-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, super trans-vēho*.

2. *Mejo, or mingo, minxi, micturi*, to make water. So *immejo*.

## LO.

1. *Cōlo, cōlui, cultum*, to adorn, to inhabit, to honour, to till. So *ac-, circum-, ex-, in-, per-, fra-, re-cōlo*: and likewise *occūlo, occului, occultum*, to hide.

*Consūlo, consului, consultum*, to advise or consult.

*Alō, ālui, alitum*, or contracted *altum*, to nourish.

*Mōlo, molui, molitum*, to grind. So *com-, e-, per-mōlo*. The compounds of *cello*, which itself is not in use, wants the supine; as, *ante-, ex-, fra-cello, -cellui*, to excel. *Percello*, to strike, to astonish, has *percūli, percultum*.



*Pello, pēpūli, pūlum, to thrust.* So *ap-, as-, com-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, per-, pro-, re-pello*; *apūli, apūlum, &c.*

*Fallo, fēfelli, faleum, to deceive.* But *rēfello, refelli, to confute, wants the supine.*

3. *Vello, vellī, or vūsi, vūsum, to pull, or pinch.* So, *a-, con-, e-, inter-, pra-, re-vello.* But *de-, di-, per-vello,* have rather *velli.*

*Sallo, salti, salsum, to salt.* *Psallo, psalti, —, to play on a musical instrument, wants the supine.*

*Tollo* to lift up, to take away, in a manner peculiar to himself, makes *sustuli, and sublatum*; *extollo, exūli, elatum*; but *attollo, to take up, has neither preterite nor supine.*

### MO has *ui, itum*; *as,*

*Gēmo, gēmui, gēmum, to groan.* So, *ad-, or ag-, circum-, con-, in-, re-gēmo.*

*Frēmo, frēmui, frēmum, to rage or roar, to make a great noise.* So *af-, circum-, con-, in-, per-frēmo.*

*Vōmo, vōmō, -ui, -itum, to vomit, or spew, to cast up.*

Exc. 1. *Dēmo, dempsi, demptum, to take away.*

*Promo, prompsi, promptum, to bring out.* So *de-, ex-promo.*

*Sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, to take.* So *ab-, as-, con-, de-, in-, pra-, re-, tran-sūmo.*

*Cōmō, compsi, comptum, to deck or dress.*

These verbs are also used without the *st*; *as, demsi, demtum*; *sumsi, sumtum, &c.*

Exc. 2. *Emo, ēmi, emptum or emtum, to buy.* So *ad-, dir-, ex-, inter-, per-, red-ēmo* and *co-ēmo, -emi, -emptum or emtum.*

*Prēmo, pressi, pressum, to press.* So *ap-, com-, de-, ex-, im-, op-, per-, re-, sup-prēmo.*

*Trēmo, trēmui, to tremble, to quake for fear, wants the supine.* So *at-, circum-, con-, in-trēmo.*

### NO.

1. *Pōno, pōsūi, pōsitum, to put, or place.* So *ap-, ante-, circum-, com-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, inter-, ob-, post-, pra-, pro-, re-, se-, sup-, super-, superim-, trans-pōno.*

*Gigno, gēnui, gēnitum, to beget.* So *con-, e-, in-, per-, pro-, re-gigno.*

*Cāno, cēcīni, cantum, to sing.* But the compounds have *cinui, and centum*; *as, accīno, accīnui, accentum, to sing in concert.* So *con-, in-, pra-, suc-cīno*; *oc-cīno, and oc-cāno*; *roc-cīno, and re-cāno.* But *occanui, recanui, are not in use.*

*Temno*, to despise, wants both preterite and supine; but its compound *contemno*, to despise, to scorn, has *contempsi*, *contemptum*; or without the *p*, *contemsi*, *contentum*.

2. *Sperno*, *sprēvi*, *sprētum*, to disdain or slight. So *desperno*.

*Sterno*, *strāvi*, *strātum*, to lay flat, to strow. So *ad-*, *con-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *sub-sterno*.

*Sino*, *sivi*, or *sii*, *situm*, to permitt. So *desino*, *desivi*, often *desii*, *desitum*, to leave off.

*Lino*, *livi*, or *lēvi*, *litum*, to anoint, or daub. So *ab-*, *cir-*, *cum-*, *col-*, *de-*, *il-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *subter-*, *super-*, *superil-lino*.

*Cerno*, *crēvi*, seldom *crētum*, to see, to decree, to enter upon an inheritance. So *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *se-cerno*.

### PO, QUO.

Verbs in *po* have *psi* and *ptum*; as, *Carpo*, *carpsi*, *carptum*, to pluck, or pull, to crop, to blame. So *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *præ-cerpo*, *-cerpai*, *cerptum*.

*Clepo*, *-psi*, *-ptum*, to steal.

*Rēpo*, to creep: *Ad-*, *v-*, *ar-*, *cor-*, *de-*, *dē-*, *e-*, *ir-*, *intro-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *sub-rēpo*, *-psi*, *-ptum*.

*Sculpo*, to scratch, or engrave. So *cir-*

*cum-*, *ex-sculpo*.

*Sculpo*, to grave or carve. So *ex-*, *in-*, *sculpo*.

*Serpo*, to creep as a serpent.

Exc. 1. *Strēpo*, *strēpai*, *strēptum*, to make a noise. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-strepo*.

Exc. 2. *Rumpo*, *rūpi*, *ruptum*, to break. So *ab-*, *cor-*, *dē-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *intro-*, *ir-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-rumpo*.

There are only two simple verbs ending in *QUO*, viz.

*Cōquo*, *coxi*, *coctum*, to boil. So *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-cōquo*.

*Linquo*, *liqui*, —, to leave. The compounds have *litum*; as, *rēlinquo*, *reliqui*, *relictum*, to forsake. So *de-*, and *dē-rē-linquo*.

### RO.

1. *Quæro*, makes *quæsi*, *quæsitum*, to seek. So *ac-*, *an-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-qui*, *-quisi*, *-quisitum*.

*Tëro*, *trivi*, *tritum*, to wear, to bruise. So *at-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *sub-tëro*.

*Verro*, *verri*, *versum*, to sweep, brush, or make clean. So *ã-*, *con-*, *dē-*, *ē-*, *præ-*, *rē-verro*.

*Ūro*, *ussi*, *ustum*, to burn. So *ad-*, *amb-*, *comb-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *për-*, *sub-ūro*.

*Gĕro, gessi, gestum, to carry.* So *ag-, con-, dĕ-, in-, prĕ-, rĕ-, sug-gĕro.*

2. *Curro, cŭcurri, cursum, to run.* So *ac-, con-, dĕ-, dis-, ex-, in-, oc-, per-, præ-, prĕ-curro,* which sometimes double the first syllable, and sometimes not; as, *accurri, or accŭcurri, &c.* *Circum-, rĕ-, suc-, trans-curro,* hardly ever double the first syllable.

3. *Sĕro, sĕvi, sĕtum, to sow.* The compounds which signify, *planting or sowing,* have *sĕvi, sĕtum;* as, *consĕro, consĕvi, constum,* to plant together. So *as-, circum-, dĕ-, dis-, in-, inter-, ob-, prĕ-, rĕ-, sub-, tran-sĕro.*

*Sĕro, —,* to knit, had anciently *sĕrui, sertum,* which its compounds still retain; as, *assĕro, asserui assertum,* to claim. So *con-, circum-, dĕ-, dis-, ĕdis-, ex-, in-, inter-sĕro.*

4. *Fŭro, to be mad,* wants both preterite and supine.

SO has *sivi, sĭtum;* as,

*Arcesso; arcessĭvi, arcessĭtum, to call, or send for.* So *cĕpesso, to take; fĕcesso, to do, to go away; lĕcesso, to provoke.*

Exc. 1. *Viso, visi, —,* to go to see, to visit. So *in-rĕ-viso.* *Incesso, incessi, —,* to attack, to seize.

Exc. 2. *Depso, depŕui, depŕtum, to knead.* So *con-, pet-depso.*

*Pinso, pinŕui, or pinŕi, pinŕum, piŕtum, or pinŕitum, to bake.*

## TO.

1. *Flecto, has flexi, flectum, to bow.* So *circum-, de-, in-, rĕ-, retro-flecto.*

*Plecto, plexi, and plexui, plexum, to plait.* So *implecto.*

*Necto, nexi, and nexui, nexum, to tie, or knit.* So *ad-, vel an-, con-, circum-, in-, sub-necto.*

*Pecto, pexi, and pexui, pexum, to dress, or comb.* So *de-, ex-, re-pecto.*

2. *Mĕto, messui, messum, to reap, mow, or cut down.* So *de-, e-, præ-mĕto.*

3. *Pĕto, pĕtĭvi, pĕtĭtum, to seek, to pursue.* So *ap-, com-, ex-, in-, op-, re-, sup-pĕto.*

*Mitto, misi, missum, to send.* So *a-, ad-, com-, circum-, dĕ-, dĭ-, ĕ-, in-, inter-, intro-, ō-, per-, præ-, præter-, prĕ-, rĕ-, sub-, super-, trans-mitto.*

*Verto, verti, versum*, to turn. So *a-, ad-, animad-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, en-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, præter-, re-, sub-, trans-vertō*.

*Sterto, stertui, —*, to snore. So *de-sterō*.

4. *Sisto*, an active verb, to stop, has *stīti, stātum*: but *sisto*, a neuter verb, to stand still, has *stēti, stātum*, like *sto*. The compounds have *stīti*, and *stītum*; as, *assistō, astīti, astītum*, to stand by. So *ab-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, re-, sub-sisto*. But the compounds are seldom used in the supine.

## VO, XO.

There are three verbs in *vo*, which are thus conjugated:

1. *Vivo, vixi, victum*, to live. So *ad-, con-, per-, pro-, re-, super-vivo*.

*Solvo, solvi, solūtum*, to loose. So *absolvo*, to acquit, *dis-, ex-, per-, re-solvo*.

*Volvo, volvi, volūtum*, to roll. So *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ē-, in-, ob-, per-, prō-, rē-, sub-volvo*.

2. *Texo*, to weave, (the only verb of this conjugation ending in *xo*) has *texui, textum*. So *at-, circum-, con-, de-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-texo*.

## Fourth Conjugation.

Verbs of the fourth conjugation make the preterite in *ivi*, and the supine in *itum*; as,

*Munio, muniui, munitum*, to fortify. So,

*Balbūcio*, to stammer, to  
lisp, to stutter.  
*Bullio*, to boil or bubble.  
*Condio*, to season.  
*Crūcio*, to creak.  
*Custōdio*, to keep.  
*Dormio*, to sleep.  
*Effūtio*, to babble or blab  
out.  
*Erūdio*, to instruct.  
*Expēdis*, to disentangle, to  
free.  
*Gannio*, to yell, or whine.  
*Garrio*, to prate.  
*Glūtio*, to swallow.  
*Grunnio*, to grunt.  
*Hinnio*, to neigh.  
*Impēdio*, to entangle, to hin-  
der.

*Insānio*, to be mad.  
*Irrētio*, to ensnare.  
*Lascivo*, to be wanton.  
*Lēnio*, to ease, or mitigate.  
*Lignio*, to eat deliciously, to  
glubber up.  
*Lippō*, to be dim-sighted.  
*Mollio*, to soften.  
*Mūgio*, to bellow.  
*Mūtio*, to mutter.  
*Nutrio*, to nourish.  
*Obēdio*, to obey.  
*Pāvio*, to bear.  
*Pīpio*, to peep like a chicken.  
*Pōllio*, to polish.  
*Prūtio*, to itch, to tickle.  
*Pūnio*, to punish.  
*Rēdimio*, to bind.  
*Rūgio*, to rear like a lion.

*Sarvio*, to rage.  
*Sāgio, p̄sāgio*, to guess, to  
foresee.  
*Sarrio*, to weed, to rake.  
*Scio*, to know.  
*Nescio*, not to know.  
*Scātūrio*, to gush out.  
*Servio*, to serve.  
*Sitio*, to thirst.  
*Sōpio*, to lull asleep.  
*Stāblio*, to establish.  
*Sūperbio*, to be proud.  
*Suffio*, to perfume.  
*Tinnio*, to tinkle.  
*Tussio*, to cough.  
*Vāgio*, to cry or squeal as a  
child.  
*Vestio*, to clothe.

Exc. 1. *Singultio, singultivi, singultum*, to sob.

*Sepelio, sepelivi, sepultum*, to bury.

*Vēnio, vēni, ventum*, to come. So *ad-, ante-, circum-, con-, contra-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, intro-, ob-, per-, post-, præ-, re-, sub-, super-vēnio*.

*Vēneo, vēni, —*, to be sold.

*Salio, sālui, and sālui, saltum*, to leap. The compounds have commonly *stlui*, sometimes *silui*, or *silivi* and *sultum*; as, *transilio, transilui, transilui*, and *transilivi, transultum*, to leap over. So *ab-, as-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, re-, sub-, super-stilio*.

Exc. 2. *Amīcio*, has *amīcui, amīctum*, seldom *amixi*, to cover or clothe.

*Vincio, vinxi, vinctum*, to tie. So *circum-, de-, e-, re-vincio*.

*Sancio, sanxi, sanctum*; and *sancivi, sancitum*, to establish or ratify.

Exc. 3. *Cambio, campsi, campsum*, to change money.

*Sēpio, sepsi, septum*, to hedge or inclose. So *circum-, dis-, inter-, ob-, præ-sēpio*.

*Haurio, hausi, haustum*, rarely *hausum*, to draw out, to empty, to drink. So *de-, ex-haurio*.

*Sentio, sensi, sensum*, to feel, to perceive, to think. So *as-, con-, dis-, per-, præ-, sub-sentio*.

*Raucio, rausi, rausum*, to be hoarse.

Exc. 4. *Sarcio, sarsi, sartum*, to mend or repair. So *ex-, re-sarcio*.

*Farcio, farsii, fartum*, to cram. So *con-fercio, ef-fercio*, or *ef-farcio*; *in-fercio*, or *in-farcio*; *re-fercio*.

*Fulcio, fulsi, fultum*, to prop or uphold. So *con-, ef-, in-, per-, suf-fulcio*.

Exc. 5. The compounds of *pārio*, have *pēruī, pertum*; as, *āpērio, apēruī, āpertum*, to open. So *ōpērio*, to shut, to cover. But *compērio*, has *compēri, compertum*, to know a thing for certain. *Rēpērio, repēri, repertum*, to find.

Exc. 6. The following verbs want the supine. *Cæcūtio, cæcūtivi*, to be dim-sighted. *Gestio, gestivi*, to shew one's joy by the gesture of his body. *Glōcio, glōcivi*, to cluck or keckle as a hen. *Dementio, dementivi*, to be mad. *Ineptio, ineptivi*, to play the fool. *Prōsilio, prosilui*, to leap forth. *Ferōcio, ferōcivi*, to be fierce.

*Ferio*, to strike, wants both preterite and supine. So *rē-ferio*, to strike again.

## DEPONENT AND COMMON VERBS.

A deponent verb is that which, under a passive form, has an active or neuter signification; as, *Lōquor*, I speak; *mōrior*, I die.

A common verb, under a passive form, has either an active or passive signification; as, *Crimīnor*, I accuse, or I am accused.

Most deponent verbs of old, were the same with common verbs. They are called *Deponent*, because they have laid aside the passive sense.

Deponent and common verbs form the participle perfect in the same manner as if they had the active voice; thus, *Lātor*, *lētātus*, *lētāri*, to rejoice; *vēreor*, *verītus*, *vērēri*, to fear; *fungor*, *functus*, *fungi*, to discharge an office; *pōtior*, *pōtītus*, *potiri*, to enjoy, to be master of.

The learner should be taught to go through all the parts of deponent and common verbs, by proper examples in the several conjugations; thus *lātor*, of the first conjugation, like *amōr*:

*Indicative Mode.*

Pres. *Lātor*, I rejoice; *lētāris*, vel *-āre*, thou rejoicest, &c.  
 Imp. *Lātabar*, I rejoiced, or did rejoice; *lētābartis*, &c.  
 Perf. *Lātātus sum* vel *fuī*.<sup>\*</sup> I have rejoiced, &c.  
 Plu-perf. *Lātātus eram* vel *fuēram*, I had rejoiced, &c.  
 Fut. *Lātabor*, I shall or will rejoice; *lētābēris*, or *-abēre*, &c.  
*Lātāturus sum*, I am about to rejoice, or I am to rejoice, &c.

*Subjunctive.*

Pres. *Lāter*, I may rejoice; *lētēris*, or *-ere*, &c.  
 Imp. *Lātarer*, I might rejoice; *lētārēris*, or *-rēre*, &c.  
 Perf. *Lātātus sim* vel *fuērim*, I may have rejoiced, &c.  
 Plu-perf. *Lātātus essem* vel *fuissem*, I might have rejoiced, &c.  
 Fut. *Lātātus fuero*, I shall have rejoiced, &c.

*Imperative.*

Pres. *Lātare* vel *-ātor*, rejoice thou; *lātātor*, let him rejoice, &c.

*Infinitive.*

Pres. *Lātari*, to rejoice.  
 Perf. *Lātāturus esse*, to be about to rejoice.  
*Lātāturus fuisse*, to have been about to rejoice.

*Participles.*

Pres. *Lātans*, rejoicing.  
 Perf. *Lātātus*, having rejoiced.  
 Fut. *Lātāturus*, about to rejoice.  
*Lātandus*, to be rejoiced at.

In like manner conjugate in the First Conjugation,

*Abōmīnor*, to *abhor*.  
*Adūlor*, to *flatter*.

*Emūlor*, to *vie with*, to *Altereor*, to *dispute*, to *make a repartee*.

\* *Fui*, *fuēram*, &c. are seldom joined to the participles of deponent verbs; and not so often to those of passive verbs, as *sum*, *eram*, &c.

Aprētor, to bask in the sun.	Grātūtor, to rejoice, to wish one joy.	Patrōnelor, to patronise.
Arbitror, to think.	Grāvtor, to grudge.	Percontor, to inquire.
Aspernor, to despise.	Hārīdōtor, to conjecture.	Pēregrītor, to go abroad.
Avertor, to dislike.	Hellūtor, to grieve or gormandise, to waste.	Pērielltor, to be in danger.
Auctōnor, to sell by auction.	Horītor, to encourage.	Pignōtor, to pledge.
Auchōpor, & -o, to hunt after.	Hallūcinor, to speak at random, to err.	Puscor, to fish.
Augūrōtor, & -o, to forebode, or presage by augury.	Imāginor, to conceive.	Pōpūlor, & -o, to lay waste.
Auspīcor, to take an omen, to begin.	Imītor, to imitate.	Prædor, to plunder.
Auxilior, to assist.	Indignor, to disdain.	Præhor, to fight.
Bacchor, to rage, to reel, to riot.	Inferior, to deny.	Præstōtor, to wait for.
Calumniōtor, to accuse falsely.	Insector, to pursue, to inveigh against.	Prævātor, to go crooked, to shuffle or prevaricate.
Chivīlor, to scold.	Invidior, to lie in wait.	Præcor, to pray.
Caupōnor, to huckster, to retail.	Interprētor, to explain.	Deprēcor, to entreat, to pray against.
Causor, to plead in excuse, to blame.	Jactōtor, to dart.	Præcor, to ask, to woo.
Circūlor, to meet in companies, to stroll, to talk.	Jocor, to jest.	Rēcordor, to remember.
Cōmmissor, to reveal.	Lāmentor, to bewail.	Refrāgor, to be against.
Cōmītor, to accompany.	Laucor, to gain.	Rīnor, to search.
Commentor, to meditate on, or write what one is to say.	Luctor, to wrestle.	Rixor, to scold, or brawl.
Concīdōtor, to harangue.	Māchinor, to contrive.	Rustōtor, to dwell in the country.
Confliktor, to struggle.	Mēdicōtor, to cure. [adv.]	Serūtōtor, to retire.
Cōnor, to endeavour.	Mēditōtor, to muse, or ponder.	Sōlor, to comfort.
Conspīcor, to spy, to see.	Mercor, to purchase.	Suktor, to walk abroad.
Contēplōtor, to view.	Mētor, to measure.	Spēcīlor, to view, to spy.
Curīvor, to strut.	Mīnor, to threaten.	Silpūlor, to stipulate or agree.
Garrūtor, to chatter like a crow.	Mīvor, to wonder.	Stōmāchor, to be angry.
Crimīnor, to blame.	Misēror, to pity.	Sullūtor, to kiss.
Cunctor, to delay.	Mōdōtor, to rule.	Sullūtor, to kiss.
Dēstor, to abhor.	Mōdōtor, to rule.	Sullūtor, to kiss.
Dēnūtor, to rule.	Mōdōtor, to rule.	Sullūtor, to kiss.
Epūlor, to fear.	Mōdōtor, to rule.	Sullūtor, to kiss.
Execrōtor, to curse.	Mōdōtor, to rule.	Sullūtor, to kiss.
Fāmūlor, to serve.	Mōdōtor, to rule.	Sullūtor, to kiss.
Fēlor, to keep holy-day.	Mōdōtor, to rule.	Sullūtor, to kiss.
Frustror, to disappoint.	Mōdōtor, to rule.	Sullūtor, to kiss.
Fūmor, to steal.	Mōdōtor, to rule.	Sullūtor, to kiss.
Gibror, to boast.	Mōdōtor, to rule.	Sullūtor, to kiss.

### In the Second Conjugation,

Idēreor, mēritus, to deserve.	Pōllītor, nollītor, to promise.
Tuor, tultus, or tutus, to defend.	Līcor, lictus, to bid at an auction.

### In the Third Conjugation,

Amplector, amplexus; and complector, complexus, to embrace.  
Revertor, reversus, to return.

### In the Fourth Conjugation,

Blandior, to soothe, to flatter.	Partior, to divide.
Mentior, to lie.	Sortior, to draw or cast lots.
Mōdōtor, to attempt something difficult.	Largior, to give liberally.

Part. perf. Blanditus, mentitus, molitus, partitus, sortitus, largitus.

There are no exceptions in the *First Conjugation*.

## EXCEPTIONS in the Second Conjugation.

*Reor, rātus*, to think.

*Misereor, miseratus*, or not contracted *miseritus*, to pity.

*Fateor, fassus*, to confess. The compounds of *fateor* have *fessus*; as, *profiteor, professus*, to profess. So *confiteor*, to confess, to own or acknowledge.

## EXCEPTIONS in the Third Conjugation.

*Labor, lapsus*, to slide. So *al-, col-, de-, di-, e-, il-, inter-, per-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, subter-, super-, trans-labor*.

*Ulciscor, ultus*, to revenge.

*Ūtor, ūsus*, to use. So *ab-, de-ūtor*.

*Lōquor, lōquūtus*, or *locūtus*, to speak. So *al-, col-, circum-, e-, inter-, ob-, præ-, pro-lōquor*.

*Sēquor, sēquūtus*, or *sēcutus*, to follow. So *as-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-sēquor*.

*Quēror, questus*, to complain. So *con-, inter-, præ-quēror*,

*Nitor, nītus* or *nītus*, to endeavour, to lean upon. So *ad-, vel an-, con-, e-, in-, ob-, re-, sub-nitor*: but the compounds have oftener *nītus*.

*Peciscor, pactus*, to bargain. So *de-peciscor*.

*Grādior, gressus*, to go. So *ag-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, retro-, sug-, super-, trans-grādior*.

*Prōficiscor, profectus*, to go a journey.

*Nanciscor, nactus*, to get.

*Patior, passus*, to suffer. So *per-pētior*.

*Āpiscor, aptus*, to get. So *ad-āpiscor, adeptus*, and *ind-āpiscor, indeptus*.

*Commāniscor, commentus*, to devise or invent.

*Fruor, frūtus*, or *fructus*, to enjoy. So *per-fruor*.

*Obliviscor, oblītus*, to forget.

*Expergiscor, experrectus*, to awake.

*Morior, mortuus*, to die. So *com-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, præ-mōrior*.

*Nascor, nātus*, to be born. So *ad-, circum-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, re-, sub-nascor*.

*Ōrior, ortus, ōriri*, to rise. So *ab-, ad-, co-, ex-, ob-, sub-ōrior*.

The three last form the future participle in *itūrus*; thus, *mōritūrus, nascitūrus, ōritūrus*.



## EXCEPTIONS in the Fourth Conjugation.

*Mētor, mensus, to measure.* So *ad-, com-, di-, e-, præ-, re-mētor.*

*Ordior, orsus, to begin.* So *ex-, red-ordior.*

*Expērior, expertus, to try.*

*Oppērior, oppertus, to wait or tarry for one.*

The following verbs want the participle perfect :

*Veseor, vesici, to feed.*

*Liquor, liqui, to melt or be dissolved.*

*Mēdeor, mederi, to heal.*

*Rēmīseor, reminisci, to remember.*

*Iraeor, irasci, to be angry.*

*Rīngor, ringi, to grin like a dog.*

*Prævertor, præverti, to get-before, to outrun.*

*Diffiteor, Diffiteri, to deny.*

*Dīvertor, dīverti, to turn aside, to take lodg-  
ing.*

*Dēfētīseor, defētīsci, to be weary, or faint.*

The verbs which do not fall under any of the foregoing rules are called *Irregular.*

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

The irregular verbs are commonly reckoned eight ; *sum, eo, queo, vōlo, nōlo, mālo, fēro, and fīo*, with their compounds.

But properly there are only six ; *nolo* and *mālo* being compounds of *volo*.

*SUM* has already been conjugated. After the same manner are formed its compounds, *ad-, ab-, de-, inter-, præ-, ob-, sub-, super-sum*, and *insum*, which wants the præterite ; thus, *adsum, adfui, adesse, &c.*

*PROSUM*, to do good, has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e* ; as,  
Ind. Pr. Prō-sum, prod-es, prod-est ; pro-sūmus, &c.

Im. Prōd-eram, prod-eras, prod-erat ; prod-erāmus, &c.

Sub. Im. Prod-essem, prod-esses, prod-esset ; prod-esse-<sup>imus,</sup>  
&c.

Imperat. Prod-esto, prod-este. Infinit. Pres. Prod-esse.

In the other parts it is like *sum* : *Pro-sim, -sis, &c. Pro-  
fui, -fueram, &c.*

*POSSUM* is compounded of *pōtis*, able, and *sum* ; and is thus conjugated :

Possum, pōtui, posse, To be able.

## Indicative Mode.

Pr. Possum, pōtes, pōtest ; possūmus, potestis, possunt.

Im. Pot-eram, -eras, -erat ; -eramus, -eratis, -erant.

Per. Pot-ui, -uisti, -uit ; -uimus, -uistis, uerunt.  
uere.

Plu. Pot-uēram, -ueras, -uerat ; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.

Fut. Pot-ēro, -eris, -erit ; -erimus, -eritis, -erunt.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Pr.</i>	Pos-sim,	-sis,	-sit ;	-sīmus,	-sītis,	-sint.
<i>Im.</i>	Pos-sem,	-ses,	-set ;	-sēmus,	-sētis,	-sent.
<i>Per.</i>	Pot-uērim,	-ueris,	-uerit ;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Pot-uīsem,	-uīses,	-uīset ;	-uīsemus,	-uīsetis,	-uīsent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Pot-uēro,	-ueris,	-uerit ;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

*Infinitive.*

*Pres.* Posse. *Per.* Potuisse. *The rest wanting.*

*EO, iui, itum, ire, To go.*

*Indicative Mode.*

<i>Pr.</i>	Eo,	is,	it ;	imus,	itis,	eunt.
<i>Imp.</i>	Ibam,	ibas,	ibat ;	ibamus,	ibatis,	ibant. [ere.
<i>Per.</i>	Ivi,	ivisti,	ivit ;	ivimus,	ivistis,	iverunt, iv-
<i>Plu.</i>	Iveram,	iveras,	iverat ;	iveramus,	iveratis,	iverant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Ibo,	ibis,	ibit ;	ibimus,	ibitis,	ibunt.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Pr.</i>	Eam,	eas,	eat ;	eamus,	eatis,	eant.
<i>Im.</i>	Irem,	ires,	iret ;	iremus,	iretis,	irent.
<i>Per.</i>	Iverim,	iveris,	iverit ;	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Ivissem,	ivisses,	ivisset ;	ivissemus,	ivissetis,	ivissent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Ivero,	iveris,	iverit ;	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.

*Imperative.**Infinitive.*

<i>Pres.</i>	{ I, Ito, ito ;	{ ite, itote, eunto.	<i>Pres.</i>	Ire,
			<i>Perf.</i>	Ivisse.
			<i>Fut.</i>	Esse iturus, -a, -um. Fuisse iturus.

*Participles.**Gerunds.**Supines.*

<i>Pr.</i>	Iens, <i>Gen.</i>	euntis.	<i>Eundum.</i>	1. Itum.
<i>Fut.</i>	Iturus, -a, -um,		<i>Eundi.</i>	2. Itu.
			<i>Eundo, &amp;c.</i>	

The compounds of *eo* are conjugated after the same manner ; *ad-, ab-, ex-, ob-, red-, sub-, per-, cō-, in-, præ-, ante-, prōd-eo* : only in the perfect, and the tenses formed from it, they are usually contracted ; thus, *Adeo, adii*, seldom *adivi, aditum, adire*, to go to ; perf. *Adii, adiisti*, or *adisti*, &c. *adiēram, adiērim*, &c. So likewise *VENEO, venii*, —, to be sold, (compounded of *venum* and *eo*.) But *AMBIO, ī-*

**illum, -tra, to surround, is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.**

*Es, like other neuter verbs, is often rendered in English under a passive form; thus, E, he is going; Irit, he is gone; Iuērat, he was gone; Iuērit, he may be gone, or shall be gone. So uēnit, he is coming; uēnit, he is come; uēnerat, he was come. &c. In the passive voice these verbs for the most part are only used impersonally; as, Iitit ab illa, he is going; uentum est ab illis, they are come. We find some of the compounds of eo, however, used personally; as, pericula aduentur, are undergone, Cæs. Libri sibyllini tacti sunt, were looked into, Liv. Flumen pedibus transiri potest, Cæs. Inimicitie suberuntur, Cic.*

*QUEO, I can, and NEQUEO, I cannot, are conjugated the same way as eo; only they want the imperative and the gerunds; and the participles are seldom used.*

**VOLO, vōlui, velle, To will, or to be willing.**

*Indicative Mode.*

*Pr.* Vōl-o, vis, vult; volūmus, vultis, volunt.  
*Im.* Vol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant,  
*Per.* Vol-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uere.  
*Pl.* Vol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.  
*Fut.* Vol-am, -es, -et; -emus, -etis, -ent.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Velim, velis, velit; velimus, velitis, velint.  
*Imp.* Vellem, velles, vellet; vellēmus, velletis, vellent.  
*Per.* Vol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.  
*Plu.* Vol-uissem, -uisses, -uisset; -uissemus, -uissetis, -uisissent.  
*Fut.* Vol-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

*Infinitive.*

*Pres.* Velle.

*Perf.* Voluisse.

*The rest not used.*

*Participles.*

*Pres.* Volens.

**NOLO, nolui, nolle, To be unwilling.**

*Indicative Mode.*

*Pr.* Nōlo, non-vis, non-vult; nolūmus, non-vultis, nolunt.  
*Im.* Nol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.  
*Per.* Nol-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uere.  
*Plu.* Nol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.  
*Fut.* Nōlam, noles, nolet; -nolemus, noletis, nolent.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Nōlim, nolis, nolit; nolimus, nolitis, nolint.  
*Im.* Nōllem, nolles, nollet; nollemus, nolletis, nolent.  
*Per.* Nol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.  
*Plu.* Nol-uissem, -uisses, -uisset; -uissemus, -uissetis, -uisissent.  
*Fut.* Nol-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participia.</i>
	2. Sing.	2. Plur.	
Pr.	{ Noli, vel Nolito;	{ nolite, vel nolitote.	Pr. Nolens. Per. Noluisse. <i>The rest wanting.</i>

**MALO**, malui, malle, *To be more willing.*

*Indicative Mode.*

Pr.	Māl-o,	mavis, mavult;	malūmus, mavultis, malunt.
Im.	Mal-ebam,	-ebas, -ebat;	-ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Per.	Mal-ui,	-uisti, -uit;	-uimus, -uistis, -uerunt.
Plu.	Mal-ueram,	-ueras, -uerat;	-ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
Fut.	Mal-am,	-es, -et;	&c. <i>this is scarcely in use.</i>

*Subjunctive Mode.*

Pr.	Malim,	malis, malit;	malimus, malitis, malint.
Im.	Malle-m,	malles, mallet;	malle-mus, malletis, mallent.
Per.	Mal-uerim,	-ueris, -uerit;	-uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Plu.	Mal-uissē-m,	-uisses, -uisset;	-uissē-mus, -uissetis, -uissent.
Fut.	Mal-uerō,	-ueris, -uerit;	-uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

*Infinitive Mode.*

Pres. Malle. Perf. Maluisse. *The rest not used.*

**FERO**, tuli, lātum, ferre, *To carry, to bring or suffer.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

*Indicative Mode.*

Pr.	Fēro,	fers, fert;	ferīmus, fertis, ferunt.
Im.	Fer-ebam,	-ebas, -ebat;	-ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Per.	Tuli,	tulisti, tulit;	tulimus, tulistis, tulerunt, -erunt.
Plu.	Fer-am,	-eris, -erit;	-erimus, feretis, ferent.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

Pr.	Feram,	feras, ferat;	feramus, feratis, ferant.
Im.	Ferrem,	ferres, ferret;	ferremus, ferretis, ferrent.
Per.	Tul-erim,	-erim, -erit;	-erimus, -eritis, -erint.
Plu.	Tulissē-m,	-isses, -isset;	-issē-mus, -issetis, -issent.
Fut.	Tul-erō,	-eris, -erit;	-erimus, -eritis, -erint.

	<i>Imperative.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>
Pr.	} Fer, ferto : } Ferto,	} ferte, } fertote, ferunto.	Pr. Ferre.
			Fut. Esse, laturus, a, um. Fuisse laturus, a, um.
	<i>Participles.</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
Pres.	Fērens,	Ferendum.	1. Lātum.
Fut.	Laturus, -a, -um.	Ferendi. Ferendo, &c.	2. Latr.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Fēror, lātus, ferri, *To be brought.**Indicative Mode.*

Pr. Fēror,	ferris, vel ferre,	fertur; ferimur, ferimini, ferantur.
Im. Fer-ebat,	-ebaris, vel ebare,	-ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
Perf. Latus sum, &c. latus fui, &c.		
Plu. Latus eram, &c. latus fueram, &c.		
Fut. Ferar,	ferēris, vel terere,	feretur; feremur, feremini, ferentur.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

Pr. Ferar,	feraris, vel ferare,	feratur; feramur, feramini, ferantur.
Im. Ferret,	ferreris, vel ferrere	ferretur; ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.
Per. Latus sim, &c. latus fuerim, &c.		
Plu. Latus essem, &c. latus fuissem, &c.		
Fut. Latus fuero, &c.		

*Imperative Mode.*

Pres. Ferre vel fertor, fertor; ferimini, feruntōr.

*Infinitive.*

Pres. Ferri.

Fut. Latum iri.

*Participles.*

Perf. Latus, -a, -um.

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fēro*; as, *affēro, adūli, allatum; aufēro, abtuli, oblatum; diffēro, distuli, dilatum; confēro, contuli, collatum; infēro, intuli, illatum; offēro, obtuli, oblatum; effēro, extuli, elatum*. So *circum-, per-, trans-, de-, pro-, ante-, præsēro*. In some writers we find, *adfero, adūli, adlatum; conlatum, inlatum; obfero, etc.* for *affero, etc.*

Obs. 1. Most part of the above verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *neſo* is contracted for *non volo*; *maſo* for *magis volo*; *fero, ſero, fert, etc.* for *feris, ferit, etc.* *Feror, ferris, v. ferre, fertur, for ferēris, etc.*

Obs. 2. The imperatives of *dīco, dūco, and ſūcio*, are contracted in the same manner with *fer*: thus we say, *dic, duc, fac*, instead of *dīce, dūce, ſūce*. But these often occur likewise in the regular form.

FIO, factus, fieri, To be made or done, to become.

*Indicative Mode.*

Pr. Fio, fis, fit; fimus, fitis, fiunt.  
 Im. Fiebam, fiebas, fiebat; fiebamus, fiebatis, fiebant.  
 Per. Factus sum, &c. factus fui, &c.  
 Plu. Factus eram, &c. factus fueram, &c.  
 Fut. Fiam, fies, fiet; fiemus, fietis, fient.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

Pr. Fiam, fias, fiat; fiamus, fiatis, fiant.  
 Im. Fiërem, fieres, fieret; fieremus, fieretis, fierent.  
 Per. Factus sim, &c. factus fuerim, &c.  
 Plu. Factus essem, &c. factus fuisset, &c.  
 Fut. Factus fuero, &c.

*Imperative.*

*Infinitive.*

Pr. { Fi, fito : { fite, fiunto. Pr. Fieri,  
 { Fito, fito : { fitote, fiunto. Per. Esse vel fuisse factus, a, uni.  
 Fut. Factum iri.

*Participles.*

*Supine.*

Per. Factus, -a, -um. Factu.  
 Fut. Faciendus, -a, -um.

The compounds of *facio* with retain *a*, have also *fi* in the passive, and *fac* in the imperative active; as *calefacto*, to warm, *calesto*, *califac*: but those which change *a* into *i*, form the passive regularly, and have *fice* in the imperative; as, *conficio*, *confice*; *conficior*, *confectus*, *confici*. We find, however, *confit*, it is done, and *confiteri*; *desit*, it is wanting; *infit*, he begins.

To irregular verbs may properly be subjoined what are commonly called *Neuter Passive Verbs*, which like *sto*, form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice, and the rest in the active. These are, *solco*, *soltus*, *soltare*, to use; *audeo*, *ausus*, *audere*, to dare; *gaudeo*, *gavicus*, *gaudere*, to rejoice; *fido*, *fusus*, *fidere*, to trust; *So confido*, to trust; and *diffido*, to distrust; which also have *confidi*, and *diffidi*. Some add *maereo*, *maestus*, *maerere*, to be sad; but *maestus* is generally reckoned an adjective. We likewise say *juratus sum* and *caenatus sum*, for *juravi* and *caenavi*, but these may also be taken in a passive sense.

To these may be referred verbs, wholly active in their termination, and passive in their signification; as, *vapulo*, -avi, -atum, to be beaten or whipped; *venco*, to be sold; *exilo*, to be banished, &c.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *Defective*, which are not used in certain tenses, and numbers and persons.

These three, *odi*, *cepi*, and *memini*, are only used in the preterite tenses; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs*; though they have sometimes likewise a present signification; thus,

*Odi*, I hate, or have hated, *oderam*, *oderim*, *odissem*, *odero*, *odisse*. Participles, *osus*, *osurus*; *exosus*, *perosus*.

**Cæpi**, I begin, or have begun, *cæperam, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse*. Supine, *cæptus*. Participles, *cæptus, cæpturus*.

**Mēmīni**, I remember, or have remembered, *memineram, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse*. Imperative, *memento, mementote*.

Instead of *odi*, we sometimes say, *ovus sum*; and always *exovus, perovus sum*, and not *exodi, perodi*. We say, *opus, cæpi, feri, or cæptum est*.

To these some add *nōvi*, because it frequently has the signification of the present. *I know*, as well as, *I have known*, though it comes from *nascō*, which is complete.

**Fūro**, to be mad, *dor*, to be given, and *for*, to speak, as also, *der* and *fer*, are not used in the first person singular; thus, we say, *daris, datur*; but never *dor*.

Of verbs which want many of their chief parts, the following most frequently occur: **Aio**, I say; *inquam*, I say; *forem*, I should be; *ausim*, contracted for *ausus sim*, I dare; *faxim*, I'll see to it, or I will do it; *ave*, and *salve*, save you, hail, good-morrow; *celo*, tell thou, or give me; *quæso*, I pray.

<i>Ind. Pr.</i>	<i>Aio</i> ,	<i>ais</i> ,	<i>ait</i> :	_____	_____	<i>aiunt</i> .
<i>Im.</i>	<i>Aiebam</i> ,	<i>-ebas</i> ,	<i>-ebat</i> :	<i>-ebamus</i> ,	<i>-ebatis</i> ,	<i>-ebant</i> .
<i>Per</i>	_____	<i>aisti</i> ,	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Sub Pr.</i>	_____	<i>aies</i> ,	<i>aiat</i> :	_____	<i>aiatis</i> ,	<i>aiant</i> .
<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Ai</i> ,				<i>Particip. Pres. Aiens.</i>	

<i>Ind. Pr.</i>	<i>Inquam</i> ,	<i>-quis</i> ,	<i>-quit</i> :	<i>-quimus</i> ,	<i>-quitis</i> ,	<i>-quiunt</i> .
<i>Im.</i>	_____	_____	<i>inquiebat</i> :	_____	_____	<i>inquiebant</i> .
<i>Per.</i>	_____	<i>inquisti</i> ,	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Fut.</i>	_____	<i>inquies</i> ,	<i>inquiet</i> :	_____	_____	_____
<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Inque, inquito</i> .				<i>Particip. Pr. Inquiens.</i>	

<i>Sub. Im.</i>	} <i>Fōrem, fores</i> ,	<i>foret</i> :	<i>foremus</i> ,	<i>foretis</i> ,	<i>forent</i> .
<i>Plu.</i>					

*Inf Fore, to be hereafter, or to be about to be, the same with esse futurus.*

<i>Sub. Pr.</i>	<i>Ausim</i> ,	<i>ausis</i> ,	<i>ausit</i> :	_____	_____	_____
<i>Per.</i>	<i>Faxim</i> ,	<i>faxis</i> ,	<i>faxit</i> :	_____	_____	<i>faxint</i> .
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Faxo</i> ,	<i>faxis</i> ,	<i>faxit</i> :	_____	<i>faxitis</i> ,	<i>faxint</i> .

Note. *Faxim* and *faxo* are used instead of *fecerim* and *fecero*.

*Imper. Ave vel avēto: plur avete et avetote.*

*Salve v salvēto; — salvēte v. salvetote.*

*Indic. Fut. — Salvēbis.*

*Imperat. second pers sing. Cedo, plur. edite.*

*Indic. pres. first pers. sing. Quæso, plur. quæsumus.*

Most of the other Defective verbs are but single words, and rarely to be found, but among the poets; as, *infir*, he begins; *desit*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a verb and the conjunction *si*; as, *sit*, for *si vis*, if thou wilt; *sultis*, for *si vultis*; *sodes* for *si audes*: equivalent to *quæso*, I pray; *cæpis*, for *cæpi si vis*.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A verb is called *Impersonal*, which has only the terminations of the third person singular, but does not admit any person or nominative before it.

Impersonal Verbs in English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it*, which is not considered as a person; thus,

*dēlectat*, it delights; *dācet*, it becomes; *contingit*, it happens; *venit*, it happens;

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
<b>Ind. Pr.</b>	Dēlectat.	Dēcet.	Contingit.	Venit.
<b>Im.</b>	Dēlectabatur.	Decēbatur.	Contingēbatur.	Eveniebatur.
<b>Per.</b>	Dēlectavit.	Decēvit.	Contingit.	Eveniit.
<b>Plu.</b>	Dēlectaverat.	Decēverat.	Contigerat.	Evenerat.
<b>Fut.</b>	Dēlectabit.	Decēbit.	Continget.	Eveniet.
<b>Sub. Pr.</b>	Dēlectet.	Decēt.	Contingat.	Eveniat.
<b>Im.</b>	Dēlectaret.	Decēret.	Contingēret.	Eveniret.
<b>Per.</b>	Dēlectaverit.	Decēverit.	Contigerit.	Evenerit.
<b>Plu.</b>	Dēlectavisset.	Decēvisset.	Contigisset.	Evenisset.
<b>Fut.</b>	Dēlectaverit.	Decēverit.	Contigerit.	Evenerit.
<b>Inf. Pr.</b>	Dēlectāre.	Decēre.	Contingēre.	Evenire.
<b>Per.</b>	Dēlectāvisse.	Decēvisse.	Contingisse.	Evenisse.

Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially Neuter and Intransitive verbs which otherwise have no passive; as, *pugnātur*, *fāvētur*, *curritur*, *venitur*; from *pugno*, to fight; *faveo*, to favour; *curro*, to run; *venio*, to come:

<b>Ind. Pr.</b>	Pugnātur.	Fāvētur.	Curritur.	Vēnītur.
<b>Im.</b>	Pugnābatur.	Fāvēbatur.	Currebatur.	Vēniebatur.
<b>Per.</b>	Pugnatum est.	Fautum est.	Cursum est.	Ventum est.
<b>Plu.</b>	Pugnatum erat.	Fautum erat.	Cursum erat.	Ventum erat.
<b>Fut.</b>	Pugnabitur.	Favebitur.	Curretur.	Veniatur.
<b>Sub. Pr.</b>	Pugnētur.	Faveatur.	Curatur.	Veniatur.
<b>Im.</b>	Pugnaretur.	Faveretur.	Curretur.	Veniretur.
<b>Per.</b>	Pugnatum sit.	Fautum sit.	Cursum sit.	Ventum sit.
<b>Plu.</b>	Pugnatum esset.	Fautum esset.	Cursum esset.	Ventum esset.
<b>Fut.</b>	Pugnatum fuerit.	Fautum fuerit.	Cursum fuerit.	Ventum fuerit.
<b>Inf. Pr.</b>	Pugnari.	Faveri.	Curri.	Veniri.
<b>Per.</b>	Pugnatum esse.	Fautum esse.	Cursum esse.	Ventum esse.
<b>Fut.</b>	Pugnatum iri.	Fautum iri.	Cursum iri.	Ventum iri.

Obs. 1. Impersonal verbs are scarcely used in the imperative, but instead of it we take the subjunctive; as, *dēlectet*, let it delight, &c.; nor in the supines, participles, or gerunds, except a few: as, *penitens*, *-dum*, *-dus*, &c. *Induci ad pudendum et pigendum*, &c. In the preterite tenses of the passive voice, the participle perfect is always put in the neuter gender.

Obs. 2. Grammarians reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation: *dēcet*, it becomes; *penitet*, it repents; *oportet*, it behoves; *miseret*, it pities; *piget*, it irketh; *piudet*, it shameth; *licet*, it is lawful; *libet* or *libet*, it pleaseth; *taedet*, it wearyth; *liquet*, it appears. Of which the following have a double preterite: *miseret*, *miseruit*, or *miserium est*; *piget*, *piguit*, or *pigutum est*; *puudet*, *puudit*, or *puuditum est*; *liquet*, *liquit* or *licitum est*; *libet*, *libuit*, or *libitum est*; *taedet*, *taedit*, *taeditum est*; *ostener pertusum est*. But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations.

In the first, *Juvat*, *spectat*, *vincit*, *stat*, *constat*, *praestat*, *venit*, &c.

In the second, *Apparet*, *autinet*, *pericinet*, *dēbet*, *dēlet*, *videt*, *lātet*, *liquet*, *pātet*, *piudet*, *displicet*, *videt*, *videt*, &c.

In the third, *Accidit*, *incipit*, *desinit*, *sufficit*, &c.

In the fourth, *Convenit*, *expedit*, &c.

Also irregular verbs, *Est*, *obest*, *prōdest*, *pātet*, *intēret*, *supēret*; *sit* *præterit*, *nequit* and *nequitur*, *subit*, *confert*, *refert*, &c.

Obs. 3. Under impersonal verbs may be comprehended those which express the operations or appearances of nature; as, *Fulgurat*, *fulminat*, *tonat*, *grandinat*, *glaci*, *gluit*, *ningit*, *lucet* *advesperascit*, &c.

Obs. 4. Impersonal verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before other verbs, after the impersonals, in the cases which they govern; as *placet*, *mihi*, *tibi*, *illi*, it pleases me thee him; or I please, thou pleasest, &c. *pugnatur a me*, a te, ab illo, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c. *Curritur*, *venitur*, a me, a te, &c. I run, thou runnest, &c. *Favetur tibi a me*, Thou art favoured by me, or I favour thee, &c.



Obs. 5. Verbs are used personally or impersonally, according to the particular meaning which they express, or the different import of the words with which they are joined: thus, we can say, *ego placeo tibi*, I please you; but we cannot say, *si places audire*, if you please to hear, but *si placet tibi audire*. So we can say, *multa homini contingunt*, many things happen to a man: but instead of *ego contigit esse domi*, we must either say, *me contigit esse domi*, or *mihî contigit esse domi*, I happened to be at home. The proper and elegant use of Impersonal verbs can only be acquired by practice.

#### Redundant Verbs.

These are called *Redundant Verbs*, which have different forms to express the same sense: thus, *assentio* and *assentior*, to agree; *fabrico* and *fabricor*, to frame; *mereo* and *mereor*, to deserve, &c. These verbs, however, under the passive form have likewise a passive signification.

Several verbs are used in different conjugations.

1. Some are usually of the first conjugation, and rarely of the third; as, *lavo, lavas, lavare*; and *lavo, lavas, lavare*, to wash.

2. Some are usually of the second, and rarely of the third; as,

*Ferveo, ferves, and fervo, fervis, to boil.*

*Fulgeo, fulges, and fulgo, fulgēs, to shine.*

*Strideo, strides, and strido, stridis, to make a hissing noise, to creak.*

*Tueor, tuēris, and tuor, tuēris, to defend.*

To these add *tergeo, terges*; and *tergo, tergis*, to wipe, which are equally common.

3. Some are commonly of the third conjugation and rarely of the fourth; as,

*Fodio, fodis, fodere, and fouio, fodis, fodire, to dig.*

*Sallo, salis, sallere, and salio, salis, sallire, to salt.*

*Arcesso, -is, arcessere, and arcessio, arcessire, to send for.*

*Morior, morēris, mori, and morior, moriris, moriri, to die.*

*So Orior, orēris, and orior, oriris, oriri, to rise.*

*Potior, potēris, and potior, potiris, potiri, to enjoy.*

There is likewise a verb, which is usually of the second conjugation, and more rarely of the fourth, namely, *cia, cies, ciēs*; and *cio, cis, cire, to rouse*; whence, *accire*, and *accitus*.

To these we may add the verb *EDO*, to eat, which though regularly formed, also agrees in several of its parts with *sum*; thus,

Ind. Pres. *Edo, edis* or *es, edit* or *est*; — *editis* or *estis* —

Sub. Imperf. *Ederem* or *essēm, ederes* or *esses, &c.*

Imp. *Ede* or *es, edito* or *esto*; *editis* or *estis*; *caute* or *estote*.

Inf. Pres. *Edere* or *esse*.

Passive Ind. Pres. *Editur* or *estur*.

It may not be improper here to subjoin a list of those verbs which resemble one another in some of their parts, though they differ in signification. Of these some agree in the present, some in the preterite, and the others in the supine.

1. The following agree in the present, but are differently conjugated:

*Aggēro, -as, to heap up.*

*Appello, -as, to call.*

*Compello, -as, to address.*

*Colligo, -as, to bind.*

*Consterno, -as, to astonish.*

*Efferō, -as, to enrage.*

*Fundo, -as, to found.*

*Mando, -as, to command.*

*Obsēro, -as, to lock.*

*Volo, -as, to fly.*

*Aggēro, -is, to bring together.*

*Appello, -is, to drive to, to arrive.*

*Compello, -is, to drive together.*

*Colligo, -is, to gather together.*

*Consterno, -is, to stretch.*

*Efferō, -fers, to bring out.*

*Fundo, -is, to pour out.*

*Mando, -is, to chew.*

*Obsēro, -is, to beset.*

*Volo, -is, to will.*

Of this class some have a different quantity; as,

*Cōlo, -as, to strain.*

*Dico, -as, to dedicate.*

*Edūco, -as, to train up:*

*Cōlo, -is, to till.*

*Dico, -is, to say.*

*Edūco, -is, to lead forth.*

*Lēgo*, -as, to send on an embassy.  
*Vādo*, -as, to wade.

*Lēgo*, -is, to read.  
*Vādo*, -is, to go.

## 2. The following Verbs agree in the Preterite ;

*Acuo*, acui, to be sour.  
*Cresco*, exēvi, to grow.  
*Frigeo*, frixi, to be cold.  
*Fulgeo*, fulsi, to shine.  
*Lūceo*, luxi, to shine.  
*Pāveo*, pāvī, to be afraid.  
*Pendo*, pēpendi, to hang.

*Acuo*, acui, to sharpen.  
*Cerno*, exēvi, to see.  
*Frigeo*, frixi, to fry.  
*Fulgeo*, fulsi, to prep.  
*Lūgeo*, luxi, to mourn.  
*Pāveo*, pāvī, to feed.  
*Pendo*, pēpendi, to weigh.

## 3. The following agree in the Supine :

*Cresco*, crētum, to grow.  
*Māneo*, mansum, to stay.  
*Sto*, statum, to stand.  
*Succenseo*, -censum, to be angry.  
*Tēneo*, tentum, to hold.  
*Verro*, verum, to sweep.  
*Vireo*, victum, to overcome.

*Cerno*, crētum, to behold.  
*Mando*, mansum, to chew.  
*Sisto*, statum, to stop.  
*Succendo*, -censum, to kindle.  
*Tendo*, tentum, to stretch out.  
*Verro*, verum, to turn.  
*Vivo*, victum, to live.

### The Obsolete Conjugation.

This chiefly occurs in old writers, and only in particular conjugations and tenses.

1. The ancient Latins made the imperfect of the indicative active of the fourth conjugation in *IBAM*, without the *s*; as, *audibam*, *scribam*, for *audēbam*, *scriēbam*.
2. In the future of the indicative of the fourth conjugation, they used *IBO* in the active, and *ibor* in the passive voice; as, *dormibo*, *dormibor*, for *dormiam*, *dormiar*.
3. The present of the subjunctive anciently ended in *IM*; as, *edim*, for *edam*, *audim* for *edim*.
4. The perfect of the subjunctive active sometimes occurs in *SSIM*, and the future in *SSO*; as, *levasim*, *levasso*, for *levaverim*, *levavero*; *capasim*, *capas*, for *caperim*, *capero*. Hence the future of the infinitive was formed in *ASSERE*; as, *levassere*, for *levaturus esse*.
5. In the second person of the present of the imperative passive, we find *MINDO* in the singular, and *minor* in the plural; as, *famino*, for *fare*; and *progrēdiminor* for *progrēdimini*.
6. The syllable *ER* was frequently added to the present of the infinitive passive; as *fari* for *fari*; *dicier*, for *dicere*.
7. The participles of the future time active, and perfect passive, when joined with the verb *esse*, were sometimes used as indeclinable; thus, *credo inimicos diciturus esse*, for *diciturus*, Cic. *Cohortes ad me missum facias*, for *missas*, Cic. ad Atrac. viii. 12.

### Derivation and Composition of Verbs.

1. Verbs are derived either from nouns or from other verbs.

Verbs derived from nouns are called *Denominative*; as, *Corno*, to sup; *laudo*, to praise; *fraudo*, to defraud; *lapido*, to throw stones; *opero*, to work; *frumentor*, to forage; *ligno*, to gather fuel, &c. from *corna*, *laus*, *fraus*, &c. But when they express imitation or resemblance, they are called *Imitative*; as, *patrio*. Græcor, *bibū* to *cornitor*, &c. I imitate or resemble my father, a Græcian, a crow, &c. from *pater*, Græc, *cornix*.

Of these derived from other verbs, the following chiefly deserve attention; namely, *Frequentatives*, *Incoptives*, and *Detideratives*.

1. *FREQUENTATIVES* express frequency of action, and are all of the first conjugation. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *ū* into *u* in verbs of the first conjugation; and by changing *u* into *s*, in verbs of the other three conjugations; as, *clamo*, to cry; *clansito*, to cry frequently; *terreo*, *terrū*; *verto*, *versū*, *dormio*, *dormiū*. In like manner, Deponent verbs form Frequentatives in *or*; as, *minor*, to threaten; *minūtor*, to threaten frequently.

Some are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nato*, from *no*; *nascto* from *nasco*; *sector*, or rather, *sectator* from *orio*; *pavito*, from *pavoo*; *sector*, from *sequor*; *loquitor* from *loquor*. *Saquerūto*, *fundūto*, *agūto*, *flūto*, &c.

From Frequentative verbs are also formed other Frequentatives; as, *curro*, *curō* *curō* *curō*; *pecco*, *pulso*, *pulsūto*, or by contraction, *pulto*; *capio*, *capto*, *capūto*; *canto*, *cantūto*; *defendo*, *defensūto*, *defensūto*; *dico*, *dicto*, *dictūto*; *gero*, *gesto*, *gestūto*; *jacio*, *jacūto*; *venio*, *ventūto*; *mutio*, *musso*, (for *mutūto*) *musūto*, &c.

Verbs of this kind do not always express frequency of action. Many of them have much the same sense with their primitives, or express the meaning more strongly.

2 **INCEPTIVE Verbs** mark the beginning or continued increase of any thing. They are formed from the second person sing. of the present of the indicative, by adding *co*; as, *cales*, to be hot, *calesco*, to grow hot. So in the other conjugations, *labascō*, from *labo*; *tremisco*, from *tremo*; *obdormisco*, from *obdormio*. *Hisco* from *hio* is contracted for *hisco*. Inceptive are likewise formed from substantives and adjectives; as, *puerascō*, from *puer*; *dulcescō*, from *dulcis*; *juvenescō*, from *juvenis*.

All Inceptive are Neuter verbs, and of the third conjugation. They want both the preterite and supine; unless very rarely, when they borrow them from their primitives.

3. **DESIDERATIVE Verbs** signify a desire or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter supine, by adding *rio*, and shortening the *u*; as, *caenātūria*, I desire to sup, from *caenatu*. They are all of the fourth conjugation; and want both preterite and supine, except these three, *esurio*, -*ivi*, -*itum*, to desire to eat; *parturio*, -*ivi*, —, to be in travail; *nuptūria*, -*ivi*, —, to desire to be married.

There are a few verbs in LLO, which are called *Diminutive*; as, *cantilla*, *serbilla*, &c. I sing. I sup a little. To these some add *abico*, and *andico*, -*are*, to be or to grow whitish; also, *nigricō*, *fulcō*, and *vellicō*. Some verbs in SSO are called *Intensive*; as, *Copescō*, *facescō*, *petescō*, or *petiscō*, I take, I do, I seek earnestly.

Verbs are compounded with nouns, with other verbs, with adverbs, and chiefly with prepositions. Many of these simple verbs are not in use; as, *Fūto*, *senūto*, *specio*, *gruo*, &c. The component parts usually remain entire. Sometimes a letter is added; as, *prodeō*, for *pro-co*; or taken away; as, *aspōto*, *omitto*, *trado*, *perjūro*, *pergo*, *debeo*, *præsto*, &c. for *absporto*, *comitto*, *trando*, *perjuro*, *perrego*, *debeo*, *præsto*, &c. So *deuo*, *promō*, *sumo*, of *de*, *pro*, *sub*, and *emo*, which anciently signified to take, or to take away. Often the vowel or diphthong of the simple verb, and the last consonant of the preposition, is changed; as, *damno*, *condemno*; *calco*, *concalco* *hædo*, *collido*; *audis*, *obdis*, &c. *Aggēro*, *suppōro*, *solludo*, *implūto*, &c. for *aggēro*, *suppōro*, *solludo*, *implūto*, &c.

## PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a kind of adjective formed from a verb, which in its signification implies time.

It is so called, because it partakes both of an adjective and of a verb, having in Latin gender and declension from the one, time and signification from the other, and number from both. Participles in English, like adjectives, admit of no variation.

Participles in Latin are declined like adjectives; and their signification is various according to the nature of the verbs from which they come; only participles in *du*, are always passive, and impart not so much future time, as obligation or necessity.

Latin verbs have four Participles, the present and future active; as, *Amans*, loving: *amātūrus*, about to love; and the perfect and futur-passive; as, *amātus*, loved, *amandus*, to be loved.

The Latins have not a participle perfect in the active, nor a participle present in the passive voice; which defect must be supplied by a circumlocution. Thus, to express the perfect participle active in English, we use a conjunction, and the plu-perfect of the subjunctive in Latin, or some other tense, according to its connexion with the other words of a sentence; as, he having loved, *quum amavisset*, &c.

Neuter verbs have commonly but two Participles; as, *Sedens*, *sessurus*; *stans*, *stātūrus*.

From some Neuter verbs, are formed Participles of the perfect tense; as, *Erratus*, *fortinatus*, *juratus*, *laboratus*, *vigilatus*, *cessatus*, *audatus*, *triumphatus*, *regnatus*, *decurus*, *destitus*, *emeritus*, *emeritus*, *obitus*, *placitus*, *accessus*, *occusus*, &c. and also of the future in *du*; as, *Jurandus*, *vigilandus*, *regnandus*, *carendus*, *dormiendus*, *crubescendus*, &c. Neuter passive verbs are equally various. *Veneo* has no participle: *Fido*, only *fidens* and *fidus*; *soleo*, *solens*, and *soltus*; *vapulo*, *vapulans*, and *vapularurus*; *Gaudes*, *gaulens*, *gavius* and *gavivurus*; *Audeo*, *audens*, *ausus*, *ausurus*, *audendus*. *Ausus* is used both in an active and passive sense; as, *Ausi omnes immane nefas, atque possit*. Virg. Æn. vi. 621.

Deponent and Common verbs have commonly four Participles; as,

*Loquens*, speaking; *locuturus*, about to speak; *locutus*, having spoken; *loquendus*, to be spoken. *Dignans*, vouchsafing; *dignaturus*, about to vouchsafe; *dignatus*, having vouchsafed, being vouchsafed, or having been vouchsafed; *dignandus*, to be vouchsafed. Many participles of the perfect tense from Deponent verbs have both an active and passive sense; as, *Abominatus, conatus, confessus, adortus, amplexus, blanditus, largitus, mentitus, oblitus, testatus, veneratus*, &c.

There are several Participles, compounded with *in* signifying not, the verbs of which do not admit of such composition: as, *Insciens, insperans, indicens* for *non dicens, inspinans*, and *necopinans, immereus*; *Illeceus, impransus, inconvulsus, incustoditus, immetatus, inpunitus, imparatus, incomitatus, incomptus, indemnatus, indotatus, incorruptus, interitus, and imperterritus, intestatus, inausus, inopinatus, inultus, incensus*, for *non census*, not registered: *insectus* for *non factus*, *inivius* for *non vius*, *indictus* for *non dictus*, &c. There is a different *incensus* from *incendo*; *insectus* from *infectio*; *inivius* from *invidio*; *indictus* from *indico*, &c.

If from the signification of a Participle we take away *time*, it becomes an adjective, and admits the degrees of comparison; as,

*Amans*, loving; *amantior, amantissimus*; *doctus*, learned, *doctior, doctissimus*; or a substantive; as, *Profectus*, a commander or governor; *consonans*, f. sc. *ltera*, a consonant; *continens*, f. sc. *terra*, a continent; *confuens*, m. a place where two rivers run together; *oriens*, m. sc. *sol*, the east; *occidens*, m. the west; *dictum*, a saying; *scriptum*, &c.

There are many words in *ATUS, ITUS* and *UTUS*, which, although resembling participles, are reckoned adjectives, because they come from nouns, and not from verbs: as, *alatus, barbatus, coriarius, caudatus, cristatus, acutus, pellitus, turritus; astutus, cornutus, navutus*, &c. winged, bearded, discreet, &c. But *auratus, aratus, argentatus, ferratus, plumbeus, gypratus, calceatus, chryseus, galeatus, tunicatus, leovatus, palliatus, lymphatus, purpuratus, prætextatus*, &c. covered with gold, brass, silver, &c. are accounted participles, because they are supposed to come from obsolete verbs. So perhaps *calamistratus*, frizzled, crisped or oarled, *crinitus*, having long hair, *peritus* skilled, &c.

There are a kind of Verbal adjectives in *BUNDUS*, formed from the imperfect of the indicative, which very much resemble Participles, in their signification, but generally express the meaning of the verb more fully, or denote an abundance or great deal of the action: as, *vitabundus*, the same with *valde vitans*, avoiding much: *Sat. Jug. 60.* and *Idi: Liv. xxy. 13.* So *errabundus, ludibundus, populabundus, moribundus*, &c.

#### GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

GERUNDS are participial words, which bear the signification of the verb from which they are formed: and are declined like a neuter noun of the second declension, through all the cases of the singular number except the vocative.

There are both in Latin and English, substantives derived from the verb, which so much resemble the Gerund in their signification, that frequently they may be substituted in its place. They are generally used, however, in a more undetermined sense than the Gerund, and in English have the article always prefixed to them. Thus, with the gerund *Delector legendo Ciceronem*, I am delighted with reading Cicero. But with the substantive, *Delector lectione Ciceronis*, I am delighted with the reading of Cicero.

The Gerund and Future Participle of verbs in *io* and some others often take *u* instead of *us*: as, *faciendum, di, de, dus*: *experiamdum, potendum, gerundum, putandum, durandum*, &c. for *faciendum*, &c.

SUPINES have much the same signification with Gerunds; and may be indifferently applied to any person or number. They agree in termination with nouns of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and ablative cases.

The former Supine is commonly used in an active and the latter in a passive sense but sometimes the contrary; as, *coctum non vapulatum, dudum conductus sui*, i. e. *us vapulare*, v. *verberaver*, to be beaten, Plaut.

#### ADVERB.

An adverb is an indeclinable part of speech, added to a verb, adjective, or other adverb, to express some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification.



Vicissim, Alternatim, Rurus, Iterum, Sæpius, Idemdem	By turns.  Again.  Ever and anon, now and then.	Sæmel, Bis, Ter, Quater,	Once. Twice. Thrice. Four-times, &c.
---	--	-----------------------------------	---

## 3. Adverbs of Order.

Inde, Deinde, Dehinc, Porro, Deinceps, Denuo,	Then. After that. Henceforth. Moreover. So forth. Of new.	Dentique, Postremo. Primo, -um, Secundo, -um, Tertio, -um, Quarto, -um,	Finally. Lastly. First. Secondly. Thirdly. Fourthly, &c.
--	--	--	---

II. Adverbs denoting QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are either *Absolute* or *Comparative*.

Those called *Absolute* denote,

1. QUALITY, simply; as *bene*, well; *male*, ill; *fortiter*, bravely; and innumerable others that come from adjective nouns or participles.
2. CERTAINTY; as, *profecto*, *certe*, *sane*, *plene*, *nam*, *utique*, *ita*, *etiam*, truly, verily, yes; *quidni*, why not? *omnino*, certainly.
3. CONTINGENCE; as, *forte*, *forsan*, *fortassis*, *forte*, haply, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.
4. NEGATION; as, *non*, *haud*, not; *nequãquam*, not at all; *neutiquam*, by no means; *minime*, nothing less.
5. PROHIBITION; as, *ne*, not.
6. SWEARING; as, *hercle*, *pol*, *edepol*, *mæcator*, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.
7. EXPLAINING; as, *utpote*, *videlicet*, *scilicet*, *nimirum*, *nempe*, to wit, namely.
8. SEPARATION; as, *seorsum*, apart; *separatim*, separately; *sigillatim*, one by one; *virilim*, man by man; *oppidatim*, town by town, &c.
9. JOINING TOGETHER; as, *simul*, *una*, *pariter*, together; *generatim*, generally; *universaliter*, universally; *plerumque*, for the most part.
10. INDICATION or POINTING out; as, *en*, *ecce*, *lo*, behold.
11. INTERROGATION; as, *cur*, *quãre*, *quãsbrem*, why, wherefore? *num*, *an*, whether? *quomodo*, *quò*, how? To which add, *Ubi*, *quò*, *quorsum*, *unde*, *quò*, *quando*, *quandò*, *quòtic*.

Those Adverbs which are called *Comparative*, denote,

1. EXCESS; as, *valde*, *maximè*, *magnopere*, *maximopere*, *summo pere*, *admòdum*, *opèdò*, *perquam*, *longè*, greatly, very much, exceedingly; *nimis*, *nimum*, too much; *prorsus*, *penitus*, *omnino*, altogether, wholly; *magis*, more; *melius*; better; *pejus*, worse; *fortius*, more bravely; and *optimè*, best; *pesimè*, worst; *fortissimè*, most bravely; and innumerable others of the comparative and superlative degrees.
2. DEFECT; as, *Ferme*, *serè*, *propemòdum*, *pènè*, almost; *pàrum*, little; *paulo*, *paululum*, very little.
3. PREFERENCE; as, *pòtius*, *sàtius*, rather; *pòtissimùm*, *præcipuè*, *præsertim*, chiefly, especially; *imo*, yes nay, nay rather.
4. LIKENESS or EQUALITY; as, *ita*, *sic*, *adèd*, so; *ut*, *utè*, *sicut*, *skùti*, *vèluti*, *vèluti* *ceu*, *tanquam*, *quasi*, as, as if; *quemadmodum*, even as; *satis*, enough; *idèd*, in like manner; *juxta*, alike, equally.
5. UNLIKENESS or UNEQUALITY; as, *aliter*, *secus*, otherwise, *aliqui* or *alioquin*, else; *nèdum*, much more or much less.
6. ABATEMENT; as, *sensim*, *paulatim*, *pèdàtentim*, by degrees, piece-meal; *vix*, scarcely; *aggre*, hardly, with difficulty.
7. EXCLUSION; as, *tantùm*, *solum*, *modò*, *tantummodò*, *duntaxat*, *enim*, only.

## Derivation, Comparison, and Composition of ADVERBS.

Adverbs are derived, 1. from Substantives, and end commonly in TIM or TUS; as, *Partim*, partly, by parts; *nominatim*, by name; *generatim*, by kinds generally; *speciatim*, *vicatim*, *gregatim*; *radicitus*, from the root, &c. 2 From adjectives: and these are by far the most numerous. Such as come from Adjectives of the first and second declension usually end in E. as, *liberè*, freely; *plene*, fully; some in O, UM, and TER; as, *fulsò*, *tautum*, *graviorè*; a few in A, ITUS, and IM; as, *rectò*, *antiquus*, *privatim*. Some are used two or three ways, as, *primum*, v. -ò; *purè*, -iter; *certe*, -ò; *caudè* -tim; *humanè*, -iter, -itus; *publicè*, *publicitus*, &c. Adverbs from Adjectives of the third declension commonly end in TER, seldom in E; as, *turpiter*, *felicitèr* *acriter*, *partiter*; *facilè*, *repente*: one in O, *omnino*. The neuter of Adjectives, is some times taken adverbially; as, *recentèr* *negus*, for *recenter*; *perfidum* *ridens*, for *perfi*



There are twenty-eight prepositions in Latin, which govern the accusative: that is, have an accusative after them.

Ad.	To.	Infra,	Beneath.
Apud,	At.	Juxta,	Nk. h. to.
Ante,	Before,	Ob,	For
Adversus,	Against, towards.	Propter,	For. heard by.
Adversum,		Per.	By, through.
Contra,	Against.	Præter,	Besides, except.
Cis,	On this side.	Pænes,	In the power of.
Citra,		Post.	After.
Ciça,	About.	Pone,	Behind.
Circum,		Secus,	By, along.
Erga,	Towards.	Secundum,	According to.
Extra,	Without.	Supra,	Above.
Inter,	Between, among.	Trans,	On the farther side.
Intra,	Within,	Ultra,	Beyond.

The Prepositions which govern the ablative are fifteen namely,

A,	From or by.	De,	Of, concerning.
Ab,		E,	Of, out of.
Abs,	Without.	Ex,	For.
Absque,		Pro,	Before
Cum,	With.	Præ,	With the knowledge of.
Clam,	Without the knowledge of.	Palam,	Without
Contra,	Defore, in the presence of.	Sine,	Up to, as far as.
Ob,	Of.	Tenus,	

These four govern sometimes the accusative, and sometimes the ablative.

In, In, into. Sub. Under. Super, Above. Subter, Beneath.

Obs. 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally placed before the word with which they are joined. Some however, are put after; as cum, when joined with me, te, &c. and sometimes with quo, quæ, and quibus: thus mecum, tecum, &c. Tenuis is always placed after; as, mento tenuis, up to the chin. So likewise are versus and usque; and ward, in English; as, toward, eastward, &c.

Obs. 2. Prepositions, both in English and Latin, are often compounded with other parts of speech, particularly with verbs: as, subire, to undergo. In English they are frequently put after verbs; as, to go in, to go out, to look to, &c.

Prepositions are also sometimes compounded together; as, Ex adversus eum locum, Cic. Ex adversum Athenas, C. Nep. In ante diem quartum Calendarum Decembriæ distulit, l. o. usque in eum diem, Cic. Supplicatio innotata est ex ante diem quintum idus, Octob. l. e. ab eo die. Liv. Ex ante pridie Idus Septembris, Plin. But prepositions compounded together commonly become adverbs or conjunctions; as, præpalam, præterius, insuper, &c.

Obs. 3. Prepositions in composition usually retain their primitive signification; as adeo, to go to; præpono, to place before. But from this there are several exceptions, 1. IN joined with adjectives generally denotes privation; as, infidus, unfaithful: but when joined with verbs, increases their signification; as, induro, to harden greatly. In some words in has two contrary senses; as, invocatus, called upon, or not called upon. So infrænatus, unbridled, insuetus, unpensured, inhumatus, unenriched, &c. 2. PER commonly increases the signification; as, Percurus, perceller, percussit, percussus, perdifficilis, perelegans, pergratus, pergravis, perhospitatus, perillustris, perlectus, &c. very dear, very swift, &c. 3. PRÆ sometimes increases; as, Præclarus, prædives, prædilectus, prædurus, præpinguis, prævalidus; prævalico, præpoller; and also EX; as, Excelsus, exaggero, exauges, excolesacio, extenuo, exhilaro; but EX sometimes denotes privation; as, Exanguis, bloodless, pale: excors, exanimis, -mo &c. 4. SUB often diminishes; as, Subalbidus, subabsurdus, subamarus, subducis, subgrandis, subgravis, subniger; &c. a little white or whitish, &c. DE often signifies downward; as, Declivo, decurro, degravo, despicio, declinor; sometimes increases; as, demeror; denotior; and sometimes expresses privation; as, Demens, declor, deformis, &c.



Obs. 4. There are five or six syllables, namely, *am*, *di* or *dis*, *re*, *se*, *con*, which are commonly called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in compound words: however they generally add something to the signification of the words with which they are compounded: thus,

<i>Am</i> ,	}	<i>round about.</i>	}	[ <i>as</i> ,	}	<i>Ambio,</i>	<i>to surround.</i>
<i>Di,</i>		<i>asunder.</i>				<i>Divello,</i>	<i>to pull asunder.</i>
<i>Dis,</i>		<i>again.</i>				<i>Distráho,</i>	<i>to draw asunder.</i>
<i>Re,</i>		<i>aside, or apart.</i>				<i>Rêlêgo,</i>	<i>to read again.</i>
<i>Se,</i>		<i>together.</i>				<i>Sêpôno,</i>	<i>to lay aside.</i>
<i>Con,</i>						<i>Conerresco,</i>	<i>to grow together.</i>

## INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is an indeclinable word *thrown in between* the parts of a sentence, to express some passion or emotion of the mind.

Some Interjections are natural sounds, and common to all languages; as, *Oh! Ah!* Interjections express in one word a whole sentence, and thus fitly represent the quickness of the passions.

The different passions have commonly different words to express them; thus,

1. JOY: as *evax!* hey, brave, lo!
2. GRIEF; as, *ah, he, heu, ehu!* ah, alas, woe is me!
3. WONDER; as, *paper!* O strange! *vah!* hah!
4. PRAISE: as, *suge!* well done!
5. AVERSION; as, *apôge!* away, begone, avant, off, fy, tush!
6. EXCLAIMING; as, *Oh proh!* O!
7. SURPRISE or FEAR; as *ata!* ha ha!
8. IMPRECATION; as, *voe!* wo, pox on't!
9. LAUGHTER; as, *ha, ha, he!*
10. SILENCING; as, *au, 'st, pa:*! silence hush, 'st!
11. CALLING; as, *cho, chûdum, io, ho!* soho, ho, O!
12. DERISION; as, *hû!* away with!
13. ATTENTION; as, *hom!* ha!

Some interjections denote several different passions; thus, *Vah* is used to express joy, and sorrow, and wonder, &c.

Adjectives of the neuter gender are sometimes used for interjections; as, *Malum!* with a mischief! *Infandum!* O shame! *fy, fy!* *Miserum!* O wretched! *Nefas!* O the villany!

## CONJUNCTION.

A conjunction is an indeclinable word, which serves to join sentences together.

Thus *You and I, and the boy, read Virgil*, is one sentence made up of these three, by the conjunction *and* twice employed; *I read Virgil; You read Virgil; The boy reads Virgil!* In like manner, "*You and I read Virgil, but the boy reads Ovid!*" is one sentence made up of three, by the conjunctions *and* and *but*.

Conjunctions, according to their different meaning, are divided into the following classes:

1. COPULATIVE; as, *et, ac, atque, que,* and; *Etiam, quodque, item,* also; *cum, tum,* both, and. Also their contraries, *neq, neque, neu, neve,* neither, nor.
2. DISJUNCTIVE; as, *aut, ve, vel, seu, sive,* either or.
3. CONCESSIVE; as, *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quamvis,* though, although, albeit.
4. ADVERSATIVE; as, *sed, verum, autem, at, ast, atqui,* but; *tamen, atâmen, verumtamen, verumtamen, yet,* notwithstanding, nevertheless.

5. CAUSAL ; as, *nam, namque, enim*, for ; *quia, quippe, quoniam*, because ; *quod*, that because.

6. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL ; as, *ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque*, therefore ; *quapropter, quocirca, wherefore* ; *proinde*, therefore ; *cum, quum*, seeing since ; *quoadmodum*, forasmuch as.

7. FINAL or PERFECTIVE ; as, *ut uti*, that, to the end that.

8. CONDITIONAL ; as, *si, sin, if* ; *dum, modo, dummodo*, provided, upon condition that ; *siquidem*, if indeed.

9. EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE ; as, *ni, nisi*, unless, except.

10. DIMINUTIVE ; as, *ratum, certe*, at least.

11. SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE ; as, *an, anne, num*, whether : *ne annon*, whether not ; *neque*, or not.

12. EXPLETIVE ; as, *autem, vera*, now truly ; *quidem, equidem*, indeed.

13. ORDINATIVE ; as, *deinde*, thereafter ; *denique*, finally ; *insuper*, moreover ; *ceterum*, moreover, but, however.

14. DECLARATIVE ; as, *videlicet, scilicet, nempe, nimirum*, &c. to wit, namely.

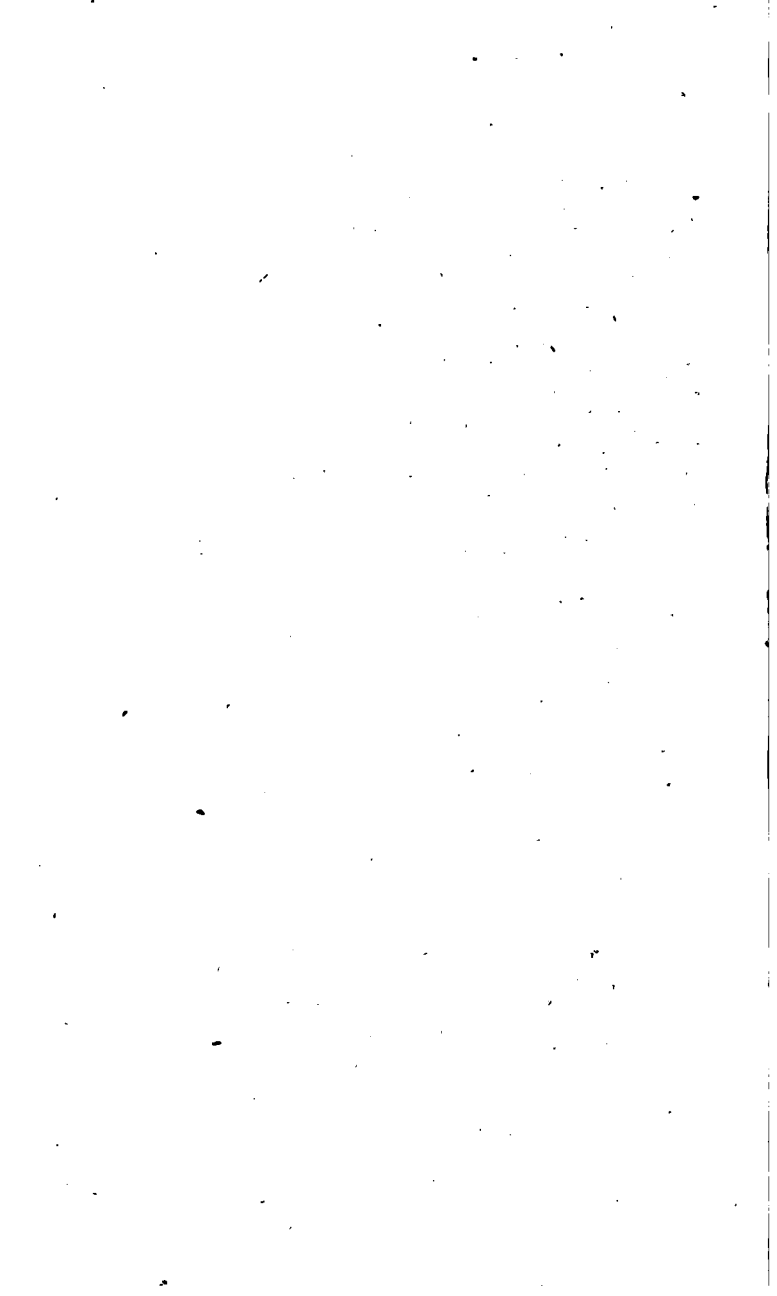
Obs. 1. The same words, as they are taken in different views, are both *adverbs* and *conjunctions*. Thus, *an, anne*, &c. are either *interrogative adverbs* ; as, *An scribit ?* Does he write ? or, *suspensive conjunctions* ; as *Nescio an scribat*, I know not if he writes.

Obs. 2. Some conjunctions, according to their natural order, stand first in a sentence ; as, *Ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, sive, at, sed, verum, nam, quandoquidem, quocirca, quare, sin, siquidem, præterquam*, &c. : some stand in the second place ; as, *Autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim* : and some may indifferently be put either first or second ; as, *Etiam, equidem, licet, quamvis, quanquam, tamen, atamen, namque, quod, quia, quoniam, quippe, utpote, ut, uti, ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, proinde, propterea, si, ni nisi*, &c. Hence arose the division of them into *Prepositive, Subjunctive, and Common*. To the subjunctive may be added these three, *que, ve, ne*, which are always joined to some other word, and are called *Enclitics*, because when put after long syllables, they make the accent incline to the foregoing syllable ; as in the following verses,

*Inductusque p̄t̄z, dicit̄ve, trechive, quic̄or̄it.* Horat.

But when these enclitic conjunctions come after a short vowel, they do not affect the pronunciation ; thus,

*Arbutos factus mentan̄que fraga legent̄.* Ovid.



## SENTENCES.

**A SENTENCE** is any thought of the mind expressed by two or more words put together; as, *I read. The boy reads Virgil.*

That part of grammar which teaches to put words rightly together in sentences, is called *Syntax* or *Construction*.

Words in sentences have a twofold relation to one another: namely, that of *Concord* or Agreement; and that of *Government* or influence.

*Concord*, is when one word agrees with another in some accidents; as, in gender, number, person, or case.

*Government*, is when one word requires another to be put in a certain case, or mode.

## GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

1. In every sentence there must be a verb and a nominative expressed or understood.

2. Every adjective must have a substantive expressed or understood.

3. All the cases of Latin nouns, except the nominative and vocative, must be governed by some other word.

4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood.

5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.

6. The accusative is governed by an active verb; or by a preposition: or is placed before the infinitive.

7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.

8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.

9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.

10. The genitive or possessive case in English always depends on some noun; and the objective or accusative case is put after a verb active or a preposition.

All sentences are either **SIMPLE** or **COMPOUND**.

*Syntax* therefore may be divided into two parts, according to the general division of sentences.

## SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A simple sentence is that which has but one nominative ; and one finite verb, *that is*, a verb in the indicative ; subjunctive, or imperative mood.

In a simple sentence, there is only one *Subject* and one *Attribute*.

The **SUBJECT** is the word which marks the person or thing spoken of.

The **ATTRIBUTE** expresses what we affirm concerning the subject, as,

*The boy reads his lesson :* Here "the boy," is the *Subject* of discourse, or the person spoken of: "reads his lesson," is the *Attribute*, or what we affirm concerning the subject. *The diligent boy reads his lesson carefully at home.* Here we have still the same subject, "the boy," marked by the character of "diligent," added to it; and the same attribute, "reads his lesson," with the circumstances of manner and place subjoined, "carefully," "at home."

## CONCORD.

The following words agree together in sentences, 1. A substantive with a substantive. 2. An adjective with a substantive. 3. A verb with a nominative.

## 1. Agreement of one Substantive with another.

**RULE I.** Substantives signifying the same thing agree in case ; as,

*Cicero, orator,* Cicero the orator ;  
*Urbs Athēnæ,* the city of Athens ;

*Cicerōnis oratoris,* of Cicero the orator.  
*Urbis Athēnārum,* of the city Athens.

## 2. Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive.

**II.** An Adjective agrees with a Substantive, in gender, number, and case ; as,

*Bonus vir,* a good man ;  
*Femina casta,* a chaste woman ;  
*Dulce pomum,* a sweet apple ;

*Boni viri,* good men ;  
*Feminae castæ,* chaste women.  
*Dulcia Pomæ,* sweet apples.

And so through all the cases and degrees of comparison.

This rule applies also to adjectives, pronouns and participles ; as, *Meus liber,* my book ; *ager colendus,* a field to be tilled ; Plur. *Mei Libri, agri colendi,* &c.

Obs. 1. The substantive is frequently understood, or its place supplied by an infinitive ; and then the adjective is put in the neuter gender ; as, *triste,* sc. *negotium,* a sad thing, Virg. ; *Tuum scire,* the same with *tua scientia,* thy knowledge, Pers. We sometimes, however, find the substantive understood in the feminine ; as, *Non posteriores feram,* sup. *partes,* Ter.

Obs. 2. An adjective often supplies the place of a substantive; as *Certus amicus*, a sure friend; *Bona ferina*, good venison; *Summum Bonum*, the chief good: *Homo* being understood to *amicus*, *caro* to *ferina*, and *negotium* to *bonum*. A substantive is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *incola turba vocant*, the inhabitants, *Ovid Fast.* 3. 582.

Obs. 3. These adjectives, *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *supremus*, *reliquus*, *cætera*, usually signify *the first part, the middle part, &c.* of any thing; as, *Media Nox*, the middle part of the night; *Summa arbor*, the highest part of a tree.

Obs. 4. In English the adjective generally goes before the noun; as, *a wise man, a good horse*; unless something depend upon the adjective; as, *food convenient for me*; or the adjective be emphatical; as, *Alexander the Great*. And the article goes before the adjective: except the adjectives *all*, *such*, and *many*, and others subjoined to the adverbs, *so*, *as*, and *how*; as, *all the men; many a man; so good a man; as good a man; how beautiful a prospect!* or when there are two or more adjectives joined to the noun; as, *a man learned and religious*.

Obs. 5. Whether the adjective or substantive ought to be placed first in Latin, no certain rule can be given. Only if the substantive be a monosyllable and the adjective a polysyllable, the substantive is elegantly put first; as, *vir clarissimus, res præstantissima, &c.*

Obs. 6. A substantive in English sometimes supplies the place of an adjective; as, *sea-water, land-fowl, forest-trees, a stone-arch, &c.* and even when no hyphen is marked; as, *the London Chronicle, the Edinburgh Magazine*.

Obs. 7. Nouns of measure, number, and weight, are sometimes joined in the singular with Numeral Adjectives plural; as, *fifty-foot; six-score; ten thousand fathom; a hundred head; an hundred weight*. We say *by this means; by that means; or, by these means; by those means;* or, *by this mean, by that mean*, as it was used anciently: So, *This forty years, for these; these and those kind of things, for this and that*. *Each, every, either*, are always joined with the singular number, unless the plural noun convey a collective idea; as, *every twelve years*.

### 3. Agreement of a verb with a nominative.

III. A verb agrees with its Nominative in number and person; as,

*Ego lego*, I read;  
*Tu scribis*, Thou writest or you write;  
*Præceptor docet*, the master teaches;

*Nos legimus*, We read.  
*Vos scribitis*, Ye or you write.  
*Præceptores docent*, Masters teach.

And so through all the modes, tenses, and numbers.

Obs. 1. *Ego* and *nos* are of the first person; *tu* and *vos* of the second person; *ille*, and all other words, of the third. The nominative of the first and second person in Latin is seldom expressed, unless for the sake of emphasis or distinction; as, *tu es patronus, tu pater*. Ter. *Tu legis, ego scribo*.

Obs. 2. An infinitive, or some part of a sentence, often supplies the place of a nominative; as, *Mentiri est turpe*, to lie is base; *Diu non perlitatum tenuit dictatorem*; the sacrifice not being attended with favourable omens, detained the dictator for a long time, Liv. 7. 8. Sometimes the neuter

pronoun *id* or *illud* is added, to express the meaning more strongly; as, *Facere quæ libet, id est esse regem*, Sallust.

Obs. 3. The infinitive mode often supplies the place of the third person of the imperfect of the indicative; as, *Milites fugere*, the soldiers fled, for *fugiebant* or *fugere cœperunt*. *Invidere omnes mihi*, for *invidebant*.

Obs. 4. A collective noun may be joined with a verb either of the singular or of the Plural number; as, *Multitudo stat*, or *stant*; the multitude stands, or stand.

A collective noun when joined with a verb singular, expresses many considered as one whole; but when joined with a verb plural, signifies many separately or as individuals. Hence, if an adjective or participle be subjoined to the verb when of the singular number, they will agree both in gender and number with the collective noun; but if the verb be plural the adjective or participle will be plural also and of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Paræ erant cœsi: Pars obnixæ tridunt, se feruntæ*, Virg. Æn. iv. 406. *Magna pars rapta, se. virginæ*, Liv. i. 9. Sometimes, however, although more rarely, the adjective is thus used in the singular; as *Paræ arduus*, Virg. Æn. vii. 624.

Obs. 5. The neuter pronoun *id* in English, is often the nominative to the verb when we speak either of persons or things; as, *It is I*; *it is he*; *it was they*; *it appears*; in Latin *Ego sum ille est*, &c. It is sometimes understood; as, *may be*, for *it may be*; *as follows* for *as it follows*; *as is thought*, for *as it is thought*.

Obs. 6. We often say in English, *You was*, instead of *You were*; which is a great inaccuracy in grammar; but so frequently used, particularly in common conversation, that it seems to be in a manner established by custom. So *there's two or three of us*, for *there are*; *There was more soldiers*, for *were*; *great pains has been taken*, for *have*, &c.

### Accusative before the Infinitive.

¶ IV. The Infinitive mode has an accusative before it; as,

*Caudeo te valere,*

I am glad that you are well.

Obs. 1. The particle *that* in English, is the sign of the accusative before the infinitive in Latin, when it comes between two verbs without expressing intention or design. Sometimes the particle is omitted; as, *Aiunt regem adventare*, They say the king is coming, *that* being understood.

Obs. 2. The accusative before the infinitive always depends upon some other verb, commonly on a neuter or substantive verb; but seldom on a verb taken in an active sense.

Obs. 3. The infinitive, with the accusative before it, seems sometimes to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Turpe est militem fugere*, That a soldier should fly is a shameful thing.

Obs. 4. The infinitive *esse* or *fuisse*, must frequently be supplied; especially after participles, as *Hostium exercitum c. sum fuisseque cognovi*, Cic. Sometimes both the accusative and infinitive are understood; as, *Pollicitus susceptorum*, scilicet *me esse*. Ter.

Obs. 5. The infinitive may frequently be otherwise rendered by the conjunctions, *quod. ut. ne. or. quin*; as, *Caudeo te valere, i. e. quod valeas, or propter tuam bonam valetudinem: Jubeo vos bene sperare, or ut bene speretis; Prohibeo eum exire, or ne exeat: non dubito eum fecisse or much better, quin fecerit. Scio quod filius amet, Plaut. for filium amare. M. r. s. potuit, for eum potuisse. Cic. Nemo dubitat, ut populum Romanus omnes virtute superari, for populum Romanum superasse. Nep. Ex animi sententiâ juro, ut ego se publicam non deseram, for me non deserturum esse, Liv. xxii. 53.*

The same Case after a Verb as before it.

¶ V. Any Verb may have the same Case after it as before it; when both words refer to the same thing; as,

*Ego sum discipulus,  
Tu vocaris Joannes,  
Illa incedit regina,  
Scio illum haberi sapientem,  
Scite vos esse discipulos,*

I am a scholar.  
You are named John.  
She walks as a queen.  
I know that he is esteemed wise.  
I know that you are scholars.

So *Redeo iratus, jaces supplicis*; Evident digni, they will become worthy; *Rempublicam defendit adolescens*; *nolo esse longus*, I am unwilling to be tedious; *Malum videri timidus, quam parum prudens*, Cic. *Non licet mihi esse negligentem*, Cic. *Natura dedit omnibus esse beatis*, Claud. *Cupio me esse clementem*; *cupio non patri mendacem*; *Vult esse medium*, sc. se, He wishes to be neuter, Cic. *Disce esse pater*; *Hoc est esse patrem*! sc. cum, Ter. *Id est, dominum, non imperatorem esse*; Sallust.

Obs. 1. This rule implies nothing else but the agreement of an adjective with a substantive, or of one substantive with another; for those words in a sentence which refer to the same object, must always agree together, how much soever disjoined.

Obs. 2. The verbs which most frequently have the same case after them as before them, are,

1. Substantive and neuter verbs; as, *Sum, fio, forem,* and *existo*; *eo, venio, sto, sedeo, evado, jaceo, fugio, &c.*

2. The passive of verbs of naming, judging, &c. as, *Diceor, appellor, vocor, nominor, nuncupor,* to which add, *videor, existimor, creor, constituor, salutor, designor, &c.*

These and other like verbs, admit after them only the nominative, accusative, or dative. When they have before them the genitive, they have after them an accusative; as, *Interest omnium esse bonos* scil. se; it is the interest of all to be good. In some cases we can use either the nom. or accus. promiscuously; as, *Cupio, dici, doctus or doctum*, sc. me dici; *Cupio esse clemens, non putari mendax*; *vult esse medius*.

Obs. 3. When any of the above verbs are placed between two nominatives of different numbers, they commonly agree in number with the former; as, *Dos est decem talenta*, Her dowry is ten talents, Ter. *Omnia pontus erunt*, Ovid. But sometimes with the latter; as, *Amantium ira amoris integratio est*. The quarrels of lovers is a renewal of love, Ter. So when an adjective is applied to two substantives of different genders, it commonly agrees in gender with that substantive which is most the subject of discourse; as, *Optatum est appellatum Possidonia*, Pfin. Sometimes however the adjective agrees with the nearer substantive; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, Cic.

Obs. 4. When the infinitive of any verb particularly the substantive verb *esse*, has the dative before it, governed by an Impersonal verb or any other word, it may have after it either the dative or the accusative; as, *Licet mihi esse beato*, I may be happy; or *licet mihi esse beatum*, me being understood; thus, *licet mihi (me) esse beatum*. The dative before *esse* is often to be supplied; as, *Licet esse beatum*, One may be happy, scil. alicui, or homini.

Obs. 5. The poets use certain forms of expression, which are not to be imitated in prose; as, *Retulit Ajax Jovis esse pronepos*, for *Se esse pronepotem*, Ovid. Met. xii. 141. *Cum pateris sapiens emendatusque vocari*, for *sapientem*, Sc. Horat. Ep. 1. 16. 30. *Acceptum refero veribus esse nocens*, Ovid. *Tutumque putavit jam bonus esse recer*, Lucan.

Obs. 6. The verb to be in English, has always a nominative case after it; as, *It was I*; unless it be of the infinitive mode; as, *I took it to be him*. We often use, however, this impropriety in common conversation, *It is me, It can't be me, It was him*; for *It is I, it cannot be I, it was he*.



## GOVERNMENT.

## I. THE GOVERNMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES.

VI. One Substantive governs another in the genitive (*when the latter Substantive signifies a different thing from the former*;) as,

*Amor Dei*, the love of God.

*Lex naturæ*, The law of nature.

*Domus Cæsaris*, The house of Cæsar, or Cæsar's house.

Obs. 1. When one substantive is governed by another in the genitive, it expresses in general the relation of property or possession, and therefore is often elegantly turned into a possessive adjective; as, *Domus patris*, or *paterna*, a father's house; *Filius heri* or *herilis*, a master's son; and among the poets, *Labor Hercules* for *Herculis*; *Ensis Evandrius*, for *Evandri*.

Obs. 2. When the substantive noun in the genitive signifies a person, it may be taken either in an active or passive sense; thus, *Amor Dei*. The love of God, either means the love of God towards us, or our love towards him; So *caritas patris*, signifies either, the affection of a father to his children or theirs to him. But often the substantive can only be taken either in an active or in a passive sense; thus, *Tymer Dei*, always implies *Deus timetur*; and *Providentia Dei*, *Deus providet*. So *caritas sœpius soli*, affection to the very soil, *Liv. ii. 1.*

Obs. 3. Both the former and latter substantive are sometimes to be understood; as, *Hectôris Andromæche*, scil. *uxor*; *Ventum est ad Vestæ*, scil. *adem* or *templum*; *Ventum est tria millia*, scil. *passuum*, three miles.

Obs. 4. We find the dative often used after a verb for the genitive particularly among the poets; as, *Et corpus porrigitur*, His body is extended; *Virg. Æn. vi. 596.*

Obs. 5. Some substantives are joined with certain prepositions; as, *Anxietas*, *inimicitia*, *pax*, *cum*, *aliquo*; *Amor* in *vel erga*, *aliquem*; *Gaudium de re*; *Cura de aliquo*; *Mentio illius*, *vel de illo*; *Quies ab armis*; *Fumus ex incendiis*; *Prædator ex sociis*, for *sociorum*. *Sallust. &c.*

Obs. 6. The genitive in Latin is often rendered in English by several other particles besides of; as, *Descensus Averni*, the descent to *Avernus*; *Prudentia juris*, skill in the law.

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS are governed in the genitive like substantive nouns; as, *pars mei*, a part of me.

So also adjective pronouns, when used as substantives, or having a noun understood, as *Liber ejuslibet, hujus*, &c. The book of him, or his book, sc. *hominis*: The book of her, or her book, sc. *feminæ*. *Libri eorum*, v. *earum*, their books; *Cujus liber*, the book of whom, or whose book; *Quorum libri*, whose books, &c. But we always say, *meus liber*, not *mei*; *pater noster* not *nostræ*; *suum jus*, not *sui*.

When a passive sense is expressed, we use *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, nostrum, vetrum*; but we use their possessives when an active sense is expressed; as, *Amor mei*, The love of me, that is, The love wherewith I am loved; *Amor meus*, My love that is, the love wherewith I love. We find, however, the possessives sometimes used passively and their primitives taken actively; as, *Odium tuum*, Hatred of thee, *Ter. Phorm. v. 8. 27.* *Labor mei*, My labour, *Plaut.*

The possessives *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, have sometimes nouns, pronouns, and participles after them in the genitive; as, *Pectus, tuum hominis simplicis*. *Cic. Phil. 5. 43.* *Noster duorum eventus*, *Liv. Tuum ipsius studium*, *Cic. Mea scripta, timentis*, &c. *Hor. Solutum meum peccatum corrigi non potest*, *Cic. Id maxime quemque decet, quod est cuiusque suum maxime*. *Id.*

The reciprocals *SUI* and *SUUS* are used when the action of the verb is reflected as it were, upon its nominative; as, *Cato interfecit se*. *Miles defendit suam vitam: Dicit se scripturum esse*. We find, however, *is* or *ille* sometimes used in examples of this kind: as, *Deum agnosimus ex operibus ejus*, *Cic. Pervadent Rauracts, ut una cum his proficiantur, for una secum*, *Cæc.*

VII. If the latter Substantive have an Ad-

jective of praise or dispraise joined with it they may be put in the genitive or ablative ; as,

*Vir summa prudentiæ, or summa prudentiâ,*  
*Puer probæ indolis, or probâ indole,*

A man of great wisdom.  
A boy of a good disposition.

Obs. 1. The ablative here is not properly governed by the foregoing substantive but by some preposition understood ; as *cum, de, ex, in, &c.* Thus, *Vir summa prudentiâ*, is in the same with *vir cum summa prudentiâ*.

Obs. 2. In some phrases the genitive is only used ; as, *Magni formica laboris*, the laborious ant ; *Vir imi subsellii, homo minimi pretii*, a person of the lowest rank. *Homo nullius inpendii*, a man of no experience in war ; Sallust. *Non multi cibi hospitem accipies, sed multi joci*, Cic. *Ager trium jugerum*. In others only the ablative ; as, *Es bono animo*, Be of good courage. *Mira sum alacritate ad litigandum*, Cic. *Capite aperto est*, His head is bare ; *obvoluta*, covered. *Capite et supercilio semper est raris*, Id. *Mulier magna nato*, Liv. Sometimes both are used in the same sentence ; as, *Adolescens eximâ spe, summæ virtutis*, Cic. The ablative more frequently occurs in prose than the genitive.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the adjective agrees in case with the former substantive, and then the latter substantive is put in the ablative : thus, we say, either, *Vir præstantis ingenii*, or *præstanti ingenio* ; or *Vir præstans ingenio*, and sometimes *præstans ingenii*. Among the poets the latter substantive is frequently put in the accusative by a Greek construction, *secundum*, or *quod ad* being understood by the figure commonly called *Synecdoche* ; as *Miles fractus membra*, i. e. *fractus secundum* or *quod ad membra*, or *habens membra fracta*, Horat. *Os humerosque des similis*, Virg.

*Adjectives taken as substantives.*

VIII. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive governs the genitive ; as,

*Multum pecuniæ*, Much money.

*Quid rei est ?* What is the matter ?

Obs. 1. This manner of expression is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*, and therefore is much used by the best writers ; as, *Plus eloquentiæ, minus sapientiæ, tantum, fidei, ut negotiis ; quicquid erat patrum, reus, diceres*, Liv. *Id loci ; Ad hoc ætatis*, Sallust.

Obs. 2. The adjectives which thus govern the genitive like substantives, generally signify quantity ; as, *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum, &c.* To which add, *hoc, illud, istud, id, quid, aliquid, quidvis, quiddam, &c.* *Plus* and *quid* almost always govern the genitive and therefore by some are thought to be substantives.

Obs. 3. *Nihil*, and these neuter pronouns *quid, aliquid, &c.* elegantly govern neuter adjectives of the first and second declension in the genitive : as, *nihil incerti*, no sincerity ; but seldom govern in this manner adjectives of the third declension, particularly those which end in *is* and *e* ; as, *Nequid hostile timerent, not hostilis* : we find however *quicquid civilis*, Liv. v. 3.

Obs. 4. Plural adjectives of the neuter gender also govern the genitive, commonly the genitive plural ; as, *Angusta viarum, Spaca lacorum, Telluris aperta, loca* being understood. So *Amara curarum, acuta belli, sc. negotia*, Horat. An adjective, indeed, of any gender may have a genitive after it, with a substantive understood ; as, *Amicus Cæsaris, Patria Ulyssis, &c.*

*Opus and Usus.*

IX. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying need, require the ablative ; as,

*Est opus pecuniâ*, There is need of money ;

*Usus viribus*, Need of strength.

Obs. 1. *Opus* and *usus* are substantive nouns, and do not govern the ablative of themselves, but by some preposition as *pro* or the like understood. They sometimes also, although more rarely, govern the genitive ; as, *Lectionis, opus est, Quinct. Opera usus est*, Liv.

Obs. 2. *Opus* is often construed like an indeclinable adjective; as, *Dux nobis opus est*. We need a general, Cic. *Dices nummos mihi opus esse*, Id. *Nobis exempla opus sunt*, Id.

Obs. 3. *Opus* is elegantly joined with the perfect participle; as, *opus maturato*, Need of haste: *Opus consulto*, Need of deliberation; *Quid facta usus est?* Ter. The participle has sometimes a substantive joined with it; as, *Mihi opus fuit Hirtia convensa*, It behoved me to meet with Hirtius, Cic.

Obs. 4. *Opus* is sometimes joined with the infinitive, or the subjunctive with *ut*; as *Siquid forte sit, quod opus sit sciri*, Cic. *Nunc tibi opus est, egrum ut te admirules*, Plant. *Sive opus est imperitare equis*, Horat. It is often placed absolutely i. e. without depending on any other word; as, *sic opus est*; *si opus sit*, &c.

## II. GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

### 1. Adjectives governing the genitive.

X. Verbal adjectives, or such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive; as,

*Avidus gloriæ*, Desirous of glory.

*Ignarus fraudis*, Ignorant of fraud.

*Memor beneficiorum*, Mindful of favours.

To this rule belong, I. Verbal adjectives in AX; as, *capax, edax, ferax, tenax, pertinax*, &c. and certain participial adjectives in NS and TUS; as, *amans appetens, cupiens, insolens, sciens; consultus, doctus, expertus, insuetus, insolitus*, &c. II. Adjectives expressing various affections of the mind: 1. Desire; as, *avarus, cupidus, studiosus*, &c. 2. Knowledge, ignorance and doubting; as, *callidus, certus, certior, conscius, gnarus, peritus, prudens*, &c. *Ignarus, incertus, inscius, imprudens, imperitus, immemor, rudis; ambiguus, dubius, suspensus*, &c. 3. Care and diligence, and the contrary; as, *anxius, curiosus, sollicitus, providus, diligens; incuriosus securus, negligens*, &c. 4. Fear and confidence; as, *formidolosus, pavidus, timidus, trepidus; impavidus, interritus, intrepidus*. 5. Guilt and innocence; as, *noxius, reus, suspectus, compertus; innoxius, innocens, insons*.

To these add many adjectives of various significations; as, *æger animi; ardens, audax, aversus, diversus, egregius erectus, falsus, felix, ferus, furens, ingens, integer, lætus, præstans animi; medicus voti; integer vitæ; seri studiorum*, Hor. But we say *æger pedibus, ardens in cupiditatibus, præstans doctrinæ, medicus cultu; lætus negotio, de re, or propter rem*, &c. and never *æger pedum*, &c.

Obs. 1. Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles; thus, *patiens algoris*, able to bear cold; and *patiens algorem*, actually bearing cold. So *amans virtutis*, and *amans virtutem*: *doctus grammaticæ*, skilled in grammar; *doctus grammaticam*, one who has learned it.

Obs. 2. Many of these adjectives vary their construction; as, *avidus in pecuniis*, Cic. *Avidior ad rem*, Ter. *Jure contritus & peritus or juris*, Cic. *Rudis literarum injure civili*, Cic. *Rudis arte, ad mala*, Ovid. *Doctus Latinæ, Latinæ literis*, Cic. *Arrectus labore, in omnia*, Liv. *Mense herili*, Virg. *Insuper meribus Romanis*, in the dat. Liv. *Laboris, ad onera portanda*, Cæs. *Desuetus bello, & triumphis*, in the dat. or abl. rather the dat. Virg. *Anxius, sollicitus, securus, de re aliqua; diligens, in ad;*

de. Cic. *Negligens in aliquem, in or de re*; *Reus de vi, criminibus*, Cic. *Certior factus de re*, rather than *rei*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The genitive after these adjectives is thought to be governed by *causa*, *in re*, or *in negatio* or some such word understood; as, *Capitulus laudis*, i. e. *causa* or *in re laudis*, desirous of praise, that is, on account of, or in the matter of praise. But many of the adjectives themselves may be supposed to contain in their own signification the force of a substantive; thus, *studiosus pecuniæ* fond of money, is the same with *habens studium pecuniæ*, having a fondness for money.

XI. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural; as,

*Aliquis philosophorum,*  
*Senior fratrum,*  
*Doctissimus Romanorum,*  
*Quis nostrum?*  
*Una musarum,*  
*Octavus sapientum,*

Some one of the philosophers.  
The elder of the brothers.  
The most learned of the Romans.  
Which of us?  
One of the muses.  
The eighth of the wise men.

Adjectives are called *Partitives*, or are said to be placed *partitively*, when they signify a part of any number of persons or things, having after them, in English, *of* or *among*; as, *alius, nullus, solus, &c. quis* and *qui*, with their compounds: also Comparatives, Superlatives, and some Numerals; as, *unus, duo, tres; primus, secundus, &c.* To these add *multi, pauci, plerique, medius*.

Obs. 1. Partitives, &c. agree in gender with the substantive which they have after them in the genitive; but when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agrees with the former: as, *Indus fluminum maximus*, Cic. Rarely with the latter; as, *Delphinus animalium velocissimus*, Plin. The genitive here is governed by *ex numero*, or by the same substantive understood in the singular number; as, *Nulla sororum*, scil. *soror*, or *ex numero sororum*.

Obs. 2. Partitives, &c. are often otherwise construed with the prepositions *d, e, ex, or in*; as, *Unus de fratribus*; or by the poets, with *ante* or *inter*; as, *Pulcherrimus ante omnes*, for *annium*, Virg. *Primus inter omnes*, Id.

Obs. 3. Partitives, &c. govern collective nouns in the genitive singular, and are of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Vir fortissimus nostræ civitatis*, Cic. *Maximus stirpis*, Liv. *Ultimos orbis* Britannos, Horat. od. 1. 35. 29.

Obs. 4. Comparatives are used, when we speak of two; Superlatives when we speak of more than two; as, *Major fratrum*, the elder of the brothers, meaning *two*; *Maximus fratrum*, The eldest of the brothers, meaning *more than two*. In like manner, *uter, alter, neuter*, are applied with regard to two: *quis unus, alius nullus*, with regard to three or more; as, *Uter vestrum*, Whether or which of you two; *Quis vestrum*, Which of you three: but these are sometimes taken promiscuously the one for the other.

## 2. Adjectives governing the Dative.

XII. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c. govern the dative; as,

*Utilis bello,*  
*Perniciosus republicæ,*  
*Similis patri,*

Profitable for war,  
Hurtful to the commonwealth.  
Like to his father.

Or thus, *Any adjective may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English.*

To this rule belong;

1. Adjectives of profit or disprofit; as, *Benignus, bonus, commodus, felix, fructuosus, prosper, saluber*.—*Calamitosus, damnosus, dirus, exiliosus, funestus, incommodus, malus, noxius, perniciosus, pestifer*.

2. Of pleasure or pain; as, *Acceptus, dulcis, gratus, gratusus, jucundus, lætus, suavis*.—*Acerbus, amarus, insuavis, injucundus, ingratus, molestus, tristis*.

3. Of friendship or hatred; as, *Adiutus, æquus, amicus, benevolus, blandus, carus, dedivus, fidus, fidelis, lentis, mitis, propitiu*.—*Adversus, æmulus, asper, crudelis, contrarius, infensus, infestus, infidas, immitis, inimicus, iniquus, invidus, iratus, odiosus, suspectus, trux*.

4. Of clearness or obscurity; as, *Apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, manifestus, notus, perspicuus*.—*Ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, obscurus*.

5. Of nearness; as, *Finitimus, proprius, proximus, propinquus, rarius, vicinus*.

6. Of fitness or unfitness; as, *Aptus, appositus, accommodatus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus*.—*Ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, inconveniens*.

7. Of ease or difficulty; as, *Facilis; levis, obivus, perivus*.—*Difficilis, arduus, gravis, laboriosus, periculosus, inivus*. To these add such as signify propensity or readiness; as, *Pronus, precipit, propensus, promptus, paratus*.

8. Of equality or inequality; as, *Equalis, æquatus, par, compar, suppar*.—*Inequalis, impar, dispar, discors*. Also of likeness or unlikeness; as, *Similis, æmulus, geminus*.—*Dissimilis, absonus, alienus, diversus, discolor*.

9. Several adjectives compounded with CON; as, *Cognatus, concolor, concors, confinis, congruus, consanguineus, consentaneus, consonus, conventicus, contiguus, continuus, continens, contiguous*; as, *Mari, ac, continens, est, Cic*.

To these add many other adjectives of various significations; as, *Obnoxius, subjectus, supplex, credulus, absurdus, decorus, deformis, preceus, indecl. at hand, secundus, &c.*—particularly.

Verbals in *BILIS* and *DUS* govern the dative; as,

*Amandus vel amabilis omnibus,*

To be loved by all men.

So *Mors est terribilis malis; Optabilis omnibus pax; Adhibenda est nobis diligentia, Cic. Semel omnibus calcanda est via lethi, Hor.* Also some participles of the perfect tense; as, *Bella matribus detestata, hated by, Hor.*

Verbals in *DUS* are often construed with the prep. *a*; as, *Dens est venerandus, & volentia a nobis, Cic.* Perfect participles are usually so; as, *Mors Crassi est a multis, defleta, rather than, multis defleta, Cic. A te invitatus, rogatus, proditus, &c. hardly ever tild.*

Obs. 1. The dative is properly not governed by adjectives, nor by any other part of speech; but put after them, to express the object to which their signification refers.

The particle *to* in English is often to be supplied; as, *Similis patri*, Like his father, *to* being understood.

Obs. 2. Substantives have likewise sometimes a dative after them; as, *Ille est pater, dux, vel filius mihi*, He is father, leader, or son to me: so, *Præsidium reis, decus amicis, &c. Hor. Exitium pecori, Virg. Virtutibus hostis, Cic.*

Obs. 3. The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive; *Affinis, similis, communis, par, proprius, finitimus, fidus, conterminus, superstes, conscius, æqualis, contrarius* and *adversus*; as, *Similis tibi, or tui; Superstes patri, or patris; Consciis facinoræ or facinoris*. *Consciis* and some others frequently govern both the genitive and dative; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti*. We say, *Similes, dissimiles, pares, dispares, æquales, communes, inter se: Par & communis cum aliquo. Civitas secum ipsa discors; discordes ad alia. Liv.*

Obs. 4. Adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness, and the contrary, have after them the dative or the accusative with a preposition; as,

*Utiles, inutilis, aptus, ineptus, accommodatus, idoneus, habilis, inhabilis, opportunus, conveniens, &c. alicui rei, or ad aliquid* Many other adjectives governing the dative are likewise construed with prepositions: as, *Attentus quaeritis, Hor. Attentus ad rem,* Ter.

Obs. 5. Of adjectives which denote friendship or hatred, or any other affection of the mind towards any one. I. Some are usually construed with the dative only: as, *Affabilis, arrogans, asper, carus, difficilis, fidelis, invisus, oratus, offensus, suspectus, ALICUI* II. Some with the preposition *IN* and the accusative; as, *Acerbus, animatus, beneficus, gratosus, injuriosus, liberalis, mendax, misericors officiosus, plus, implus, prolixus, severus, viridulus, torvus, vehemens, IN ALIQUEM* III. Some either with the dative, or with the accus and the prepositio. *IN ERGA* or *ADVERSUS* going before: as, *Contumax, criminosus, durus, exstirpabilis gravis, hospitalis, implacabilis,* (and perhaps also *incorabilis & intolerabilis*) *iniquus, s. &c.* *ALICUI* or *IN ALIQUEM*. *Benevolus benignus, molestus, ALICUI* or *ERGA ALIQUEM* *Mis caridus;* *IN*, or *ERGA ALIQUEM* and *ALICUI*. *Pervicax ADVERSUS ALIQUEM*. *Cruelis, IN ALIQUEM, seldom, ALICUI*. *Amicus, amicus, infensus, infestus ALICUI* seldom *IN ALIQUEM*. *Gratus ALICUI* or *IN, ERGA, ADVERSUS ALIQUEM*. We say *gratus alicui* or *alicuius*; but oftener *ad aliquem* and sometimes *aliquo* without the preposition.

*AUDIENS* is construed with two datives; as, *Regi dicto audiens erat,* he was obedient to the king; not *regis*; *Diato audiens fuit justis magistratum,* Nep. *Nobis dicto audientes sunt, not dictis,* Cæ.

Obs. 6. Adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing, have usually after them the accusative with the preposition *ad* or *in*, seldom the dative; as,

*Pronus, propensus, proclivis, celer, tardus, piger, &c. ad iram, or in iram.*

Obs. 7. *Propior* and *Proximus*, in imitation of their primitive *prope*, often govern the accusative; as, *Propior montem,* scil. *ad,* Sall. *Proximus finem,* Liv.

Obs. 8. *IDEM* sometimes has the dative, chiefly in the poets: as, *Invitum qui servat, idem facti occidenti,* Hor. *Jupiter omnibus idem,* Virg. *Eadem illis censemus,* Cic. But in prose we commonly find *idem qui, et, ac, atque,* and also *ut, cum;* as, *Peripatetici quondam idem erant qui Academici,* Cic. *Est animus erga te idem ac fuit,* Ter. *Dianam & Lunam eadem esse putari,* Cic. *Idem faciunt, ut, &c. In eodem loco mecum,* Cic. But it would be improper to say of the same person or thing under different names, *idem cum;* as, *Luna eadem est cum Diana.*

We likewise say, *alius ac, atque* or *et;* and so sometimes *similis & par.*

### 3. Adjectives governing the Ablative.

XIII. These Adjectives, *dignus, indignus, contentus, præditus, captus,* and *frætus;* also, *natus, satius, ortus, editus,* and the like, govern the ablative; as,

<i>Dignus honore,</i>	Worthy of honor.	<i>Captus oculis,</i>	Blind.
<i>Contentus parvo,</i>	Content with little.	<i>Frætus viribus,</i>	Trusting to his strength.
<i>Præditus virtute,</i>	Endued with virtue.	<i>Ortus regibus,</i>	Descended of kings.

So *generatus, creatus, cretus, prognatus, oriundus, procreatus regibus.*

Obs. 1. The ablative after these adjectives is governed by some preposition understood; as, *Contentus parvo,* scil. *cum;* *Frætus viribus,* scil. *in, &c.* Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, *Ortus ex concubina, Ballust. Editus de nympa,* Ovid.

Obs. 2. *Dignus, indignus,* and *contentus,* have sometimes the genitive after them; as, *dignus avorum,* Virg. So *Macte esto,* or *macte estote virtutis* or *virtute.* Increase in virtue, or Go on and prosper; *Juberem macte virtute esse,* ac. *te,* Liv. ii. 12. In the last example *macte* seems to be used adverbially.

## 4. Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.

## XIV. Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative ; as,

*Plenus ira* or *ira*, Full of anger. *Inops rationis* or *ratione*, Void of reason.

So *Non inops temporis, sed prodigi sumus*, Sen. *Lentulus non verbis inops*, Cic. *Dei plena sunt omnia*, Cic. *Maxima quae domus serotis est plena superbis*, Juv. *Res est solliciti plena timoris amor*, Ovid. *Amor est melle et felle est frigidissimus*, Plaut. *Formida virorum paupertas fugitur*, Lucan. *Omnium consiliorum ejus participes*, Curt. *Homo ratione participes*, Cic. *Nihil insidiis vacuum*, Id. *Vacuas caedis habete manus*, Ovid.

Some of these adjectives are construed, 1. with the genitive only ; as, *Benignus, exsors, inops, impotens, irritus, liberalis, munificus, prolargus*.

2. With the ablative only : *Beatus, differtus, frugifer, mutus, tentus, ditentus, tumidus, urgidus*.

3. With the genitive more frequently : *Compos, consors, egenus, exhaeres, expertus, fertilis, indigus, parvus, pauper, prodigus, sterilis*.

4. With the ablative more frequently : *Abundans, celsus, extorris, factus, frequens, gravidus, juvenis, liber, locuples, natus, onustus, orbis, pollens, solutus, truncus, viduus, and captus*.

5. With both promiscuously : *Copiosus, dives, fecundus, frax, immunis, inanis, inops, largus, modicus, immodicus, nimius, opulentus, plenus, potens, refertus, satur, vacuus, uber*.

6. With a preposition ; as, *Copiosus, firmus, paratus, imparatus, inops, instructus, et reliqua* ; for *quod ad rem aliquam attinet*, in or with respect to any thing. *Extorris ab solo patrio*, banished ; *Ordo ab optimatibus conclo*, Liv. So *pauper, tenuis, fecundus, modicus, parvus*, in *re aliqua*, *Immunis, inanis, liber, nundus solutus, vacuus a re aliqua*. *Potens ad rem, et in re*.

## GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

## § 1. VERBS governing only one Case.

## 1. Verbs which govern the Genitive.

XV. *Sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive ; as,

*Est regis*, It belongs to the king ; It is the part or property of a king.

So *Inspicientis est dicere, non putaram*, It is the part or property of a fool, &c. *Militum est suo duci parere*, It is the part or duty of soldiers, &c. *Laudare se vani ; vituperare stulti est*, Sen. *Homini est errare ; Arroganti est negligere quid de se quisque sentiat*, Cic. *Pecus est Mellibaei*, Virg. *Hec sunt hominis*, Ter. *Pauperis est numerare pecus*, Ovid. *Temeritas est florentis cetatis, prudentia senectutis*, Cic.

¶ *Meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*, are excepted ; as,

*Tuum est*, It is your duty. *Scio tuum esse*, I know that it is your duty.

Obs. 1. These possessive pronouns are used in the neuter gender instead of their substantives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*. Other possessives are also construed in this manner ; as, *Est regium, est humanum*, the same with *est regis, est hominis*. *Et facere et pati fortia, Romanum est*. Liv. ii. 12.

Obs. 2. Here some substantive must be understood : as, *officium, munus, res, negotium, opus*, &c. which are sometimes expressed as *Munus est principum ; Tuum est hoc munus*, Cic. *Neutiquam officium liberi esse hominis proo*, Ter. In some cases, the preceding substantive may be repeated : as, *Hic liber est (liber) fratris*. In like manner, some substantive must be supplied in such expressions as these *Est sum modo gloriosa, neque patrandi belli, scilicet causae* or *facta*, Sall. *Nihil tam æquandæ libertatis est*, for *ad æquandam libertatem pertinet*, Liv.

Obs. 3. We say, *Hoc est tuum munus, or tui maneris*: *Somos est vel fuit, or moris, or in more, Cic.*

## XVI. *Misereor, miseresco, and satago, govern the genitive; as,*

*Miserece civium tuorum,*

Pity your countrymen.

*Satagit rerum suarum,*

{ He has his hands full at home, or has enough to do about his own affairs.

Obs. 1. Several other verbs among the poets govern the genitive by a Greek construction, particularly such as signify some affection of the mind; as, *Ango decipior, desipio, discrucior, excrucio, fallo & fallor, fastidio, invidio, lætor, miror, pendeo, studeo, vereor; as, Ne angas te animi, Plaut. Laborum decipitur, Hor. Discrucior animi, Ter. Pendet mihi animus, pendeo animi vel animo; but we always say, Pendemus animis, not animum, are in suspense, Cic. Justitiam prius miror, Virg. In like manner, Abstineo, desino, desisto, quiesco, regno: likewise, adipiscor, condico, credo, frustror, suno, laudo, libero, levo, participo, prohibeo: as, Abstincto irarum; Desine, quærensarum; Regnavit popularum, Hor. Desistere dignæ, Virg. Quarum rerum condidit, Liv.*

But all these verbs are for the most part differently construed: thus, *Angor, desipio, discrucior, fallor, animo. Hoc animum meum excruciat. Fastidio, miror, vereor, aliquid, vel aliquid. Lætor aliquid re.* Some of them are joined with the infinitive; or with *quod, ut, ne,* and the subjunctive.

In like manner we usually say, *Desino aliquid, & ab aliquo, to give over; Desino incepto, de negotio, ab illa mente; Quiesco a labore; Regnare in equitibus, oppidis, &c. in Cic. Per verbes, Virg. Adipisci id; Frustrari in re; Furere de aliquo, Cic.*

Obs. 2. The genitive after verbs, in the same manner as after adjectives, is governed by some substantive understood. This substantive is different according to the different meaning of the verbs; thus, *Misereor fratris, scil. causæ, Angor animi, scil. dolore or anxietate.*

### 2. Verbs governing the Dative.

## XVII. Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English; as,

*Finis venit imperio,  
Animus redit hostibus,  
Tibi certis, tibi metus,*

An end is come to the empire, Liv.

Courage returns to the enemy, Id.

You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself, Plaut.

So, *Non nobis solum nati sumus, Cic. Multa malè eveniunt bonis, Id. Sol lucet etiam secleratis, Sen. Hæret lateri lethali arundo, Virg.*

But as the dative after verbs in Latin is not always rendered in English by *to* or *for*; nor are these particles always the sign of the dative in Latin, it will be necessary to be more particular.

### I. *Sum, and its compounds govern the dative; (except possum) as,*

*Præfuit exercitui,  
Assuit precibus,*

He commanded the army.

He was present at prayers.

¶ *EST* taken for *Habeo, to have, governs the dative of a person; as,*

*Est mihi liber,  
Sunt mihi libri,  
Dico libros esse mihi,*

A book is to me, that is, I have a book.

Books are to me, i. e. I have books.

I say that I have books.

This is more frequently used than *habeo librum; habeo libros.* In like manner *DEEST* instead of *careo*; as, *Libra*



*deest mihi*, I want a book ; *Libri desunt mihi* ; *Scio libros deesse mihi*, &c.

II. Verbs compounded with **SATIS**, **BENE**, and **MALE**, govern the dative ; as,

*Satisfacio, satiado, benefacio, benedico, benevole, malefacio, maledico, tibi*, &c.

III. Many verbs compounded with these nine prepositions, **AD**, **ANTE**, **CON**, **IN**, **INTER**, **OB**, **PRÆ**, **SUB**, and **SUPER** govern the dative ; as,

1. *Accedo, accresco, accumbō, acquiesco, adha, admuto, adequito, adhaereō, adsto, adstipulo, adventor, affulgeo, alabor, allabor, annuo, apparo, applaudo, apprehendo, ardeo, aspiro, assentior, asideo, asisto, assuesco, assurgo.*

2. *Antecello, anteco, antesto, anteverto.*

3. *Colludo, concina, consono, convivo.*

4. *Incumbo, indormio, indubito, inho, ingemisco, inhaereō, insido, insidior, insto, instruo, insudo, insulto, invigilo, illacrymo, illudo, imminco, immorior, imitor, impendo.*

5. *Intervenio, intermisco, intercedo, intercido, interjaceo.*

6. *Obreps, obductor, obreco, obtreps, obmurmura, occumbō, occurro, occuro, odsto, odisto, obvenio.*

7. *Præcedo, præcurro, præco, prædes, præluco, præmitto, præsto, prævaleo, prævertio.*

8. *Succedo, succumbō, sufficio, suffragor, subcreco, subleco, subjacio, subreps.*

9. *Supervenio, supercurro, supersto.* But most verbs compounded with **SUPER** govern the accusative.

IV. Verbs govern the dative, which signify,

1. To profit or hurt ; as,

*Proficis, prosum, places, commodo, prospicio, caveo, metus, times, consulo*, for *prospicio*. Likewise, *Necco, officio, incommodo, displicio, insidior*.

2. To favour or assist, and the contrary ; as,

*Faveo, gratulor, gratificor, gratior, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adulo, plaudo, blandior, læcincor, palpor, assentior, subparior*. Likewise, *Auxillor, admitticulator, subvenio, succurro, patrocinor, moleor, modicor, opitulor*. Likewise, *Derogo, detraho, invidio, armulor*.

3. To command and obey, to serve and resist ; as,

*Impero, præcipio, mando, morder, for modum adhaeo*. Likewise, *Parco, ausculto, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, inveniengo, mortuor, obscundo*. Likewise, *Famulor, servio, inservio, mitro, ancillo*. Likewise, *Repugno, obsto, retractor, retular, resisto, refragor, adversor*.

4. To threaten and to be angry ; as,

*Minor, comminor, interminor, trasco, succentor.*

5. To trust ; as, *Fido, confido, credo, diffido*.

To these add *Nudo, excello, hæreo, supplico, cedo, despere, operor, præstator, prævaricor, recipio*, to promise ; *renuncio* ; *respondet*, to answer or satisfy ; *incipero, studeo, ago*, to apply ; *convictor*.

Exc. *Jubeo, juvo, lædo*, and *offendo*, govern the accusative.

Obs. 1. Verbs governing the dative only are either neuter verbs, or of a neuter signification. Active verbs governing the dative have also an accusative expressed or understood.

Obs. 2. Most verbs governing the dative only have been enumerated, because there are a great many verbs compounded with prepositions, which do not govern the dative, but are otherwise construed; and still more signifying advantage or disadvantage, &c. which govern the accusative; as, *Levo, erigo, a'o, nutrio, amo, diligo, voveo, crucio, averta, &c. aliquem, not alicui.*

Obs. 3. Many of these verbs are variously construed; particularly such as are compounded with a preposition; as, *Anteire, antecedere, antecellere, præcedere, præcurrere, præire, &c. alicui, or aliquem to go before, to excel.*

*Acquiescere, rei, re, v. in re. Adequitate portæ Syracusas.*

*Adjacere mari, v. mare, to lie near.*

*Adnare navibus, naves, ad naves, to swim to.*

*Adversari ei, rarely eum, to oppose.*

*Advolvi genibus, genua, ad genua, to fall at one's knees.*

*Advolare ei, ad eum, rostra, to fly up to.*

*Adflare rei v. homini; rem v. hominem; aliquid alicui, to breathe upon.*

*Adulari ei, v. eum, to flatter. Allabi oris; aures ejus, Virg. ad exta, Li.*

*Apparere consuli, to attend; ad solium Jovis; Res apparet mihi, appareo,*

*Appropinquare Britannie, portam, ad portam, to approach.*

*Congruere alicui, eum re aliqua, inter se, to agree.*

*Domnari cunctis oris, Virg. in cætera animata, to rule over. Ovid.*

*Fidere, confidere alicui rei, aliqua re, in re, to trust to, or in.*

*Ignoscere mihi, culpæ meæ, mihi culpam, to pardon me or my fault.*

*Inpendere alicui, alicquem, in alicquem, to hang over.*

*Incessit cura, cupido, timor ei, eum v. in eum, seized.*

*Incumbere toro; gladium, in gladium, to fall upon; labori, ad laudem, ad studia, in studium, eorum, cogitationem, &c. to apply to.*

*Indulgere alicui, id ei; nimio vestitu, to indulge in. Ter.*

*Inhiare auro, bona ejus, to gape after. Inasci agris, in agris, to grow in.*

*Inn' ti rei, re, in re; in alicquem, to depend on.*

*Insultare rei & homini, v. hominem; furis; patientiam ejus, in miseriam ejus; bono, to insult over.*

*Latet res mihi, v. me, is unknown to me. Mederi ei; epidictas, to cure.*

*Ministrare, ei, to serve; arma ei, to furnish.*

*Moderari, animo, genibus; navim, omnia, to rule.*

*Noocere ei, v. ei, eum, to hurt. Plaut.*

*Nubere alicui; in familiam; Nuptia ei & cum ea, to marry. Cic.*

*Obrepere re ei & eum, to creep upon; in animos; ad honores.*

*Obstruere auribus & aures. Obrectare ei laudibus, ejus, to detract from,*

*Obumbrat sibi vinea; solem nubes, shades. Palpari alicui & alicquem.*

*Pascisci alicui, cum aliquo; vitam ab eo, Sall. vitam pro laude, Virg.*

*Præstolari alicui & alicquem, to wait upon.*

*Procurrere terræ; genibus ejus, Ovid. ad pedes, Liv. ad pedes, to fall.*

To these may be added verbs, which, chiefly among the poets, govern the dative, but in prose are usually construed with a preposition; as, 1. *Contendo, certo, bello, pugna, concurre, coeo, alicui, for cum aliquo; 2. Distare, dissentire, discrepare, dissidere, disferre rei alicui, for a re aliqua.* We also say, *Contendunt, pugnant, distant, &c. inter se; and contendere, pugnare contra & adversus alicquem.*

Obs. 4. Many verbs vary both their signification and construction; as, *Timeo meo, formido, horreo tibi, de te, & pro te, I am afraid for you, or for your safety; but timeo, horreo, te v. a te, I fear or dread you as an enemy; So Consulo, prospicio caveo hoc, I foresee this: Studere alicui, to desire; alicui, to favour; alicui rei, rem, & in re, to apply to a thing. So Æmulor tibi, I envy; te, I imitate; Ausculto tibi, I obey or listen to; te, I hear; Cupio tibi, I favour, rem, I desire; Fuero & -or tibi, I lend you on interest; ads te, I borrow; Metulsi, ne non tibi istuc scerneret should not return with interest, or bring usury, Ter. And thus many other verbs, which will be afterwards explained.*

Obs. 5. Verbs signifying *Motion* or *Tendency* to a thing are construed with the preposition *ad*; as,

*Ex, vado, curro, propero, festina, pergo, fugio, tendo, vergo, inclina, &c. ad locum rem, v. hominem.* Sometimes, however, in the poets they are construed with the dative; as, *Il clamor caelo, for ad caelum, Virg.*

### 3. Verbs governing the Accusative.

XVIII. A Verb signifying actively governs the accusative; as,

*Amare Deum,* Love God. *Reverere parentes,* Reverence your parents.

Obs. 1. Neuter verbs also govern the accusative, when the noun after them has a signification similar to their own ; as,

*Ire iter or viam ; Pugnare pugnam* or *prælium ; Currere cursum ; Canere cantilenam ; Vivere vitam ; Ludere ludum ; Sequi sectam ; Somnare somnum,* &c. or when they are taken in a metaphorical sense ; as, *Corydon ardebat Alexin,* scil. *propter,* i. e. *vehementer amabat,* Virg. *Currimus æquor,* scil. *per Id.* So *comptos arsit adulteri crines.* Hor. *Saltare Cyclopa ; olet hircum ; Sulcos et vincta crepat mæra.* Hor. *Vox Hominem sonat ; Sudare mella,* Virg. *Si Xerxes Hellesponto juncto, et Athone perorso, maria, ambulavisset, terramque navigasset,* sc. *per Cic.* Or when they have a kind of active sense ; as, *Clamare aliquem nomine,* Virg. *Callere jura ; Mætere mortem ; Murrere iratum mare,* Hor.

Sometimes instead of the accusative, neuter verbs have an ablative ; as, *Ire itinere ; dolere dolore, vicem ejus ; gaudere gaudio ; mori v. obire morte ; vivere v. id ; ardet virgine,* Horat. *Ludere aleam v. d ; manare, pluere, vorare, stillare, sudare, aliquid ; Eligi, Erubescere jura,* Virg. *origine, Tacit, equo v. h. Curt.*

Obs. 2. Several verbs are used both in an active and neuter sense ; as,

*Abhorrer famam,* to dread infamy, Liv. a libus ; ab uxore ducenda, to be averse from ; Id. a meis moribus abhorret, is inconsistent with, Cic.

*Abolere monumenta viri,* to abolish. Virg. *illa Cladis Caudinæ nondum memoria aboleverat,* was not effaced from, they had not forgotten, Liv.

*Adolere penates,* to burn, to sacrifice to, Virg.

*Ætas adolevit ; adolevit ad ætatem,* Plaut. *Declinare ietum,* to avoid ; loco ; agmen aliquo, to remove.

*Degenerare animos,* to weaken ; patri, to degenerate from ; a virtute majorum.

*Durare adolescentis labore,* to harden ; Res durat ad breve tempus, endures ; In ædibus durare nequaq, stay or remain, Plaut.

*Inclinare culpam in aliquem,* to lay ; Hos ut sequar inclinatur animus, inclines ; acies inclinatur, vel inclinatur, gives away. *Laborare arma,* to forge ; morbo, a dolore, e renibus, to be ill ; de re aliqua, to be concerned

*Morari iter,* to stop ; in urbe, to stay ; Hoc nihil moror, I do not mind.

*Properare pecuniam hæredi,* Hor. in orbent ; ad unam sedem, Op.

*Quadrare acervum,* to square, Hor. *aliquid ad normam ; alicui, in aliquem, ad multa, to fit.*

*Suppeditare copiam dicendi,* to furnish ; *Sumptus illi, vel in sumptibus,* Ter. *suppeditat eratio, is afforded ; Manubie in fundamenta vix suppeditarunt, were sufficient,* Liv.

Obs. 3. These accusatives, *hoc, id, quid, aliquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, multa, pauca,* &c. are often joined with neuter verbs, having the prepositions *proca* or *propter* understood ; as, *Id lacernat, Id succenset,* Ter.

Obs. 4. The accusative is often understood. *Tum prorsum avertit,* sc. *se.* Virg. *Flumina præcipitant,* sc. *se.* Kl. *Quicumque intenderat, se. se* turned or directed himself. *Sallust. Oblit se. mortem,* Ter. *Cum faciam vitula, se. sacra,* Virg. Or its place supplied by an infinitive or part of a sentence ; as, *Reddes dulce loqui, reddes redere decorum ;* for *dulcem sermonem, decorum ritum,* Hor.

XIX. *Recordor, meminî, reminiscor,* and *obliviscor* govern the accusative or genitive ; as,

*Recordor lectionis* or *lectionem,*  
*Obliviscor injuriæ* or *injuriam,*

I remember the lesson.  
I forget an injury.

Obs. 1. These verbs are often construed with the infinitive or some part of a sentence ; as, *Memini videre virginem,* Ter. *Oblivus est, quid paulo ante posuisset,* Cic.

Obs. 2. *Memini,* when it signifies to make mention, is joined with the genitive, or the ablative with the preposition *de* ; as, *Memini alicujus, vel de aliquo.* So *recordor,* when it signifies, to recollect ; as, *Vetiti scire equid de te recordere,* Cic.

#### 4. Verbs governing the Ablative.

XX. Verbs of plenty and scarceness for the most part govern the ablative ; as,

*Abundat divitiis,*  
*Caret omni culpa,*

He abounds in riches.  
He has no fault.

Verbs of plenty are, *Abundo, affluo, exubero, redundo, suppedito, scateo, &c.*; of want, *Careo, egeo, indigeo, vaco, deficio, destituor, &c.*

Obs. 1. *Egeo* and *indigeo* frequently govern the genitive; as, *Eget ariis*, He needs money, Hor. *Non tam artis indigent, quam laboris*, Cic.

Obs. 2. The ablative after these verbs is governed by some preposition understood; and sometimes we find it expressed; as, *Vacat a culpa*, he is free from fault, Liv.

**XXI. Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,** govern the ablative; as,

*Utitur fraude*, He uses deceit.

*Abutitur libris*, He abuses books.

To these add, *gaudeo, creor, nascor, fido, vivo, victito, consto, laboro*, for *male me habeo*, to be ill; *pascor, epulor, nitor, &c.*

Obs. 1. *Potior* often governs the genitive; as, *Potiri urbis*, Sall. And we always say *Potiri rerum*, to possess the chief command, never *rebus*; *imperio* being understood.

Obs. 2. *Potior, fungor, vescor, epulor*, and *pascor*, sometimes have an accusative; as *Potiri urbem*, Cic. *Officia fungi*, Ter. *Munera fungi*, Tacit. *Pascuntur sivas*, Virg. And in ancient writers *utor, abutor*, and *fruor*; as, *Uti constitum*, Plaut. *Operam abutitur*, Ter. *Depasco* and *depascor* always take an accusative; as, *Depascitur arxus*, Virg.

## § 2. VERBS governing two Cases.

### 1. Verbs governing two Datives.

**XXII. Sum** taken for *affero* (to bring) governs two datives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

*Est mihi voluptati.*

It is, or brings a pleasure to me.

Two datives are also put after *habeo, do, verto, relinquo, tribuo, fore, duco*, and some others; as,

*Ducitur honori tibi*, It is reckoned an honour to you. *Id vertitur mihi vitio*, I am blamed for that. *So Misit mihi muneri; Dedit mihi dono; Habet sibi laudi; Venire occurrere auxilio alicui*, Liv.

Obs. 1. Instead of the dative, we often use the nominative, or the accusative; as, *Est exitum pecori*, for *exitio*; *Dare aliquid alicui donum, or dono*; *Dare siltam ei, nuptam, or nuptui*. When *dare* and other active verbs have two datives after them, they likewise govern an accusative either expressed or understood; as, *Dare crimini ei, se, id.*

Obs. 2. The dative of the person is often to be supplied; as, *Est exemplo, indicio, praesidio, unit, &c. scil. mihi, alicui, hominibus*, or some such word. So, *ponere, opponere, pignori, se, alicui*, to pledge. *Canere receptui, se, suis militibus*, to sound a retreat; *Habere curas, quæstui, odio, voluptati, religioni, studio, ludibrio, despiciatui, &c. se, sibi.*

Obs. 3. To this rule belong forms of naming: as, *Est mihi nomen Alexandro*, my name is Alexander; or with the nominative, *Est mihi nomen Alexander*; or more rarely with the genitive, *Est mihi nomen Alexandri.*

### 2. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Genitive.

**XXIII. Verbs of accusing, condemning, ac-**

quitting and admonishing, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing; as,

*Arguit me furti,  
Meipsum inertiam condemna,  
Illum homicidii absolvunt,  
Monet me officii,*

He accuses me of theft.  
I condemn myself of laziness.  
They acquit him of manslaughter.  
He admonishes me of my duty.

Verbs of accusing are *Accuso, ago, appello, arcesso, inquit-ro, arguo, defero, insimulo, postulo, alligo, astringo*; of condemning, *Damno, condemna, infamo, noto*; of acquitting, *Absolvo, libero, purgo*; of admonishing, *Moneo, admoneo, commonefacio*.

Obs. 1. Verbs of accusing and admonishing instead of the genitive frequently have after them an ablative with the preposition *de*; as, *Monere aliquem officii, or de officio; Accusare aliquem furti, or de furto. De vi condemnati sunt, Cic.*

Obs. 2. *Crimen* and *caput* are put either in the genitive or ablative; but in the ablative usually without a preposition; as, *Damnare, postulare, absolvere eum criminis, v. capitis*; and *crimine, v. capite*; also *Absolvo me peccato, Liv.* And we always say, *Plectere, punire aliquem capite*, and not *capitis*, to punish one capitally, or with death.

Obs. 3. Many verbs of accusing, &c. are not construed with the acc. of a person, and the gen. of a thing, but the contrary; thus we say, *Culpa, reprehende, taxo, traduco, vitupero, columbo, criminor, excuso, &c. avaritiam alicujus*, and not *aliquem avaritiam*. We sometimes also find *accuso incho*, &c. construed in this manner; as, *Accusare, inertiam adolescentium, for adolescentem inertia, Cic. Culpam arguo, Liv.* We say, *Argue sum aliquis furti*, rather than *aliquem*, to accuse one of theft, Cic.

Obs. 4. Verbs of accusing and admonishing sometimes govern two accusatives, when joined with *hoc, illud, istud, id, unum, multa, &c.* as *Moneo, accuso, te illud*. We seldom find, however, *Errorrem te moneo*, but *erroris* or *de errore*; except in old writers, as *Plautus*.

**XXIV. Verbs of valuing, with the accusative, govern such genitives as these, *magni, parvi, nihili*; as,**

*Estimo te magni,*

I value you much.

Verbs of valuing are, *Estimo, existimo, duco, facio, habeo, pendo, puto, taxo*. They govern several other genitives; as, *tanti, quanti, pluris, majoris, minoris, minimi, plurimi, maximi, nauci, pili, assis, nihili, teruncii, kujus*.

Obs. 1. *Estimo* sometimes governs the ablative; as, *Estimo te magno, permagno parvo, scil. pretio*; and also *nihilo*. We likewise say, *Pro nihilo habeo, puto, duco*.

Obs. 2. *Equi* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *consulo*; as, *Hoc consulo boni, equi bonique facio*, I take this in good part.

Obs. 3. The genitive after all these verbs is governed by some substantive understood; as, *Arguere aliquem furti, scil. de crimine furti; Estimo rem magni, scil. pretii, or pro re magni pretii; Consulo bono, i. e. statuo or consueo esse factum, or manus boni viri, or animi; Monere aliquem officii, i. e. officii causâ, or de re or negotio officii*.

**3. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Dative.**

**XXV. Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative and dative; as,**

*Comparo Virgilium Homero,  
Sum cuiusq; tribuito,  
Narras fabulam surdo;  
Eripuit me morti;*

I compare Virgil to Homer.  
Give every one his own.  
You tell a story to a deaf man.  
He rescued me from death.

Or rather,—ANY ACTIVE VERB MAY GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE DATIVE, (*when together with the object of the action, we express the person or thing with relation to which it is exerted*) as,

*Legam lectionem tibi*, I will read the lesson to you. *Emit librum mihi*, He bought a book for me: *Sic vos non vobis fertis aratra boves*, Virg. *Paupertus scepe suadet mala hominibus*, advises men to do bad things. Plaut. *Imperare pecuniam, frumentum naves, arma aliquibus*, to order them to furnish, Cæs.

Obs. 1. Verbs of comparing and taking away, together with some others, are often construed with a preposition; as, *Comparare unam rem cum alia, & ad aliam*, or *comparare res inter se*: *Eripuit me morti, morte a* or *ex morte*: *Mittere epistolam alicui, or ad aliquem*; *Intendere telum alicui, or in aliquem*: *Incidere æri, in æs, or in ære*; and so in many others.

Obs. 2. Several verbs governing the dative and accusative, are construed differently; as,

*Circumdare mania oppido*, or *oppidum manibus*, to surround a city with walls.

*Intercludere commercium alicui, or aliquem commercium*, to intercept one's provision.

*Denare, prohibere rem alicui, or aliquem re*, to give one a present, to hinder one from a thing.

*Mactare hastiam Deo, or Deum hostid*, to sacrifice.

*Impertire salutem alicui, or aliquem salute*, to salute one.

*Interdixit Galliam Romanis, or Romanos Gallid*, he debarred the Romans from Gaul.

*Induere, exuere vestem sibi, or se veste*, to put on, to put off one's clothes.

*Levare dolorem alicui; dolorem alicujus; aliquem dolore*, to ease one's distress.

*Minari aliquid alicui, or sometimes alicui alicuique*, Cic. to threaten one with any thing; *Cæsari gladio, call.*

*Gratulor tibi hanc rem, hac re, in, pro, & de, hac re*, I congratulate you on this, *Mettus Tullo devictos hostes gratulatur*, Liv.

*Restituere alicui sanitatem, or aliquem sanitati* to restore to health.

*Aspergere labem alicui, or aliquem labe*, to put an affront on one; *aram sanguine*,

*Litare Deum sacris, & sacra Deo*, to sacrifice.

*Excusare se alicui & apud aliquem, de re; valetudinem ei.*

*Exprobare vitium ei v. in eo*, to upbraid.

*Occupare pecuniam alicui & apud aliquem, i. e. pecuniam favori locare*, to place at interest, Cic.

*Opponere se morti, & ad mortem, Renunciare id ei, & ad eum*, to tell.

Obs. 3. Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them, with the preposition *ad*; as,

*Porto, fero, lego, -as, præcipito, tollo, traho, duco, verto incito, suscito*; also *hortor*, and *invito, voco, provooco, animo, stimula, conforme, iacesso*; thus, *Ad laudem militis hortatur*; *Ad præterem hominem traxit*, Cic. But after several of these verbs, we also find the dative; as, *Inferre Deos Latio*, for *in Latiam*, Virg. *Invitare aliquem hospitio, or in hospitium*, Cic.

Obs. 4. The accusative is sometimes understood; as, *Nubere alicui*, scil. *se*; *Cedere alicui*, scil. *locum*; *Detrahere alicui*, scil. *laudem*; *Ignoscere alicui*, scil. *culpam*. And in English the particle *to* is often omitted; as, *Dedit mihi librum*, He gave me a book, for *to me*.

#### 4. Verbs governing two accusatives.

XXVI. Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

*Pescimus te pacem,*  
*Docuit me grammaticam,*

We beg peace of thee.  
He taught me grammar.

1. Verbs of asking which govern two accusatives are, *Rogo, oro, exoro, obsecro, precor, pascor, reposco, flagito, &c.* Of teaching, *Docceo, edocceo, dedocceo, erudio.*

Obs. 1. *Celo* likewise governs two accusatives; as, *Celavit me hanc rem*, He concealed this matter from me; or otherwise, *celavit hanc rem mihi*, or *celavit me de hac re*.

Obs. 2. Verbs of asking and teaching are often construed with a preposition; as, *Regare rem ab aliquo*; *Docere aliquem de re*. to inform; but we do not say, *docere aliquem de grammatica*, but *grammaticam*, to teach. And we always say, with a preposition, *Peto, exigo a v. abs te*; *Percontor, actor, sciscitor, ex* or *a te* or *te* without the preposition; *Interrogo consulto te de re*; *Ut facias te obsecro*; *Exorat pacem divum, lux divos*. Virg. *Instruo, instituo, formo, informo aliquem artibus*, in the ablative without a prep. *Inibus eum artibus*, in *v. ab artibus*. Also *instruo ad rem, v. in re, ignorantiam alicujus*. *Erudire aliquem artes, te v. in re, ad rem*. *Formare ad studium mentem studis, studia, ejus*.

Obs. 3. The accusative of the thing is not properly governed by the verb, but by *quod ad* or *secundum* understood.

5. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Ablative.

XXVII. Verbs of loading, binding, clothing, depriving, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative; as,

*Onerat naves auro,*

He loads the ships with gold.

Verbs of loading are, *onera cumulo, premo, opprimo, obrus*. Of unloading, *levo, exonero, &c.* Of binding, *astringo, ligo, alligo, devincio, impedio, irretio, illaqueo, &c.* Of loosing, *solvo, exsolvo, libero, laxo, expedito, &c.* Of depriving, *privo, nudo, orbo, spolio, fraudo, emungo*. Of clothing, *vestio, amacio, induo, cingo, tego, velo, cordo, & calceo*. Of unclothing, *exuo, discingo, &c.*

Obs. 1. The preposition, by which the ablative is governed after these verbs, is sometimes expressed; as, *Solvere aliquem ex catenis*. Cic. Sometimes the ablative is to be supplied; as, *Complet naves, sc. viris*, mans the ships, Virg.

Obs. 2. Several of these verbs likewise govern the genitive; as, *Adolecentem sum temeritatis implet*, Liv. And also vary their construction; as, *Induit, exuit se vestibus, or vestes sibi*.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

XXVIII. When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case; as,

*Accusor furti,*  
*Virgilius comparatur Homero,*  
*Doceor grammaticam,*  
*Navis oneratur auro.*

I am accused of theft,  
Virgil is compared to Homer.  
I am taught grammar.  
The ship is loaded with gold.

*So Scio homines accusatum iri furti;—Eos creptum iri morti, morte, a vel ex morte;—pueros doctum iri grammaticam;—rem celatum iri mihi vel me; me celatum de iri re, &c.*

Sometimes the active has three cases, and then the passive has the two last cases; as, *Habetur ludibrio suo*.

Obs. 1. Passive verbs are commonly construed with the ablative and the preposition *a*; as,

*Tu lauderis a me*, which is equivalent to *Ego laudo te*. *Virtus diigitur a nobis; Nos diligimus virtutem*. *Gaudeo meum factum probari a te*, or *te probare meum factum*; And so almost all active verbs. Neuter and deponent verbs also admit this preposition; as, *Mare a sole collucet*, Cic. *Phalaris non a paucis interit*, Id. *So cadere ab hoste: Cesare a preliis; Mori ab ense; Pesti furari, aliquid ab aliquo, &c.* Also *Venire ab homibus*, to be sold; *Vapulare ab aliquo, Exulare ab urbe*. Thus likewise many active verbs; as, *Sumere, petere, tollere, pellere, expectare, emere, &c. ab aliquo*.

The prep. is sometimes understood after passive verbs; as, *Desceror conjuge*, Ovid. *Deerius euit, sc. a, Tacit. Tabula distinguitur unda, qui navigat, sc. ab unda*, is kept from the water by a plank, Juvenal.

The preposition **PER** is also used in the same sense with **A**; as, *Per me defensa est republica, or a me; Per me restitutus; Per me v. a me factum est, Cic.* But **PER** commonly marks the instrument, and **A** the principal efficient cause; as, *Res agitur per creditores, a rege, sc. a rege vel. a legato ejus, Cic. Fam. l. 1.*

**Obs. 2.** Passive verbs sometimes govern the dative, especially among the poets; as,

*Neque cernitur ulli for ab ullo, Virg. Vix audior ulli, Ovid. Scriberis Vario, for a Vario, Hor. Honesta bonis v. ris queruntur, for a v. ris, Cic. VIDEOR, to seem, always governs the dative; as, Videris mihi, You seem to me: but we commonly say, Videris a me, You are seen by me; although not always; as, Nulla tuarum audia mihi, neque vicia sororum, for a me, Virg.*

**Obs. 3.** *Induor, amictor, cingor, accingor, also exuor, and discingor, are often construed with the accusative, particularly among the poets, though we do not find them governing two accusatives in the active voice; as, Induitur vestem or veste.*

**Obs. 4.** Neuter verbs are for the most part only used impersonally in the passive voice; unless when they are joined with a noun of a similar signification to their own; as, *Pugna pugnata est, Cic. Bellum militabitur, Horat.* Passive impersonal verbs are most commonly applied either to a multitude, or to an individual taken indefinitely; as, *Statur, fletur, curritur, vivitur, ventur, &c. a nobis, ab illis &c.* We are standing, weeping, &c. *Bene potest vivi a me, vel ab aliquo: I or any person may live well. Provisum est nobis optimè a Deo; Reclamatum est ab omnibus, all cried out against it, Cic.*

They also govern the same cases, as when used personally; as, *Ut majoribus natu assurgatur, ut supplicium misceretur, Cic.* Except the accusative: for in these phrases, *Itur Athenas, pugnatum est biduum, dormitur totam noctem,* the accusative is not governed by the verb, but by the prepositions *ad* and *per* understood. We find however, *Tota mihi dormitur hyems; Noctes vigilantur amaræ; Oceanus raris ab orbe nostro navibus auditur, Tacit.*

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

### XXIX. An Impersonal Verb governs the dative; as,

*Expedit reipublicæ,*

It is profitable for the state.

Verbs which in the active voice govern only the dative, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative; as,

*Favetur mihi, I am favoured, and not Ego favor.* So *nocetur mihi, imperatur mihi &c.* We find, however, *Hæc ego procurare imperor: Ego cur invidetur, lox imperatur invidetur mihi, Hor.*

**Obs. 1.** These verbs *Potest, cepit, incipit, desinit, debet, and solet,* are used impersonally, when joined with impersonal verbs; as,

*Non potest credi tibi, You cannot be believed; Mihi non potest noceri, I cannot be hurt; Negat jucundè posse vivi sine virtute, Cic. Per virtutem potest iri ad astra. Altorum laudi & gloriæ invideri solet, The praise and glory of others use to be envied, Id. Neque a fortissimis infirmissimo generi visisti posse, Sallust.*

**Obs. 2.** Various verbs are used both personally and impersonally: as, *Venit in mentem mihi hæc res vel de hac re, vel hujus rei, acil. memoria; This thing came into my mind. Est cura mihi hæc res vel de hac re. Doles vel dolet mihi id factum esse.*

**Obs. 3.** The neuter pronoun *it* is always joined with impersonal verbs in English; as, *It rains, it shines, &c.* And in the Latin an infinitive is commonly subjoined to impersonal verbs, or the subjunctive with *ut,* forming a part of a sentence which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative; as, *nobis non licet peccare, the same with peccatum; Omnibus bonis expedit reipublicam esse salvam, l. e. Salus reipublicæ expedit omnibus bonis, Cic. Accidit, evēnit, contigit, ut ibi essemus.* These nominatives, *hæc, illud, id. idem, quod, &c.* are sometimes joined to impersonal verbs; as, *idem mihi licet, Cic., Eadem licent, (atull).*

**Obs. 4.** The dative is often understood; as, *Faciat quod libet, sc. sibi, Ter. Stat cordis renovare, omnes, sc. mihi, I am resolved, Virg.*



**EXC. I. REFERT** and **INTEREST** require the genitive; as,

*Refert patris*, It concerns my father. *Interest omnium*, It is the interest of all

¶ But *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, are put in the accusative plural neuter; as,

*Non mea refert*, It does not concern me.

Obs. 1. Some think *mea, tua, sua, &c.* to be in the ablat. sing. fem. We say either *cujus interest*, and *quorum interest*; or *cuja interest*, from *cujus, -a, -um*.

Obs. 2. *Refert* and *interest* are often joined with these nominatives, *Id, hoc, illud, quid, quod, nihil, &c.* also with common nouns; and with these genitives, *Tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, parvi, pluris*; as, *Hoc parvi refert*; *Illud mea magni interest*. Cic. *Uque adeo magni refert studium*, Lucret. *Incessus in grvida refert, Pili*.

They are frequently construed with these adverbs, *Tantum, quantum, multum, plus, plurimum, infinitum, parum, maxime, vehementer, minime, &c.* as, *Faciam, quod maxime respicere, interesse judicabo*, Cic. Sometimes instead of the genit. they take the accusative with the prep. *ad*: as, *Quid id ad me, aut ad meam rem refert*, *Perseæ quid rerum geram?* Of what importance is it? &c. *Plaut. Magni ad honorem nostrum interest*, Cic. rarely the dative; as, *Dic quid refert intra natura fines viventium, &c.* Hor. Sometimes they are placed absolutely; as, *Magnopere interest opprimi Dolobellam*, it is of great importance. Cic. *Permultum interest, qualis primus auditus sit, Id. Adeone est fundæa leviter fides, ut ubi sim, quam qui sim, magis refert*, Liv. *Plurimum enim interit, quibus artibus, aut quibus hunc tu moribus instituas*, Juv.

Obs. 3. The genitive after *refert* and *interest* is governed by some substantive understood, with which the possessives *mea, tua, sua, &c.* likewise agree; as, *Interest Ciceronis, i. e. est inter negotia Ciceronis: Refert patris, i. e. refert se hæc res ad negotia patris: Bo Interest nua, est inter negotia mea*.

**EXC. II. MISERET, PŒNITET, PUDET, TÆDET, and PIGET**, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing; as,

*Miseret me tui*, I pity you. *Tædet me vitæ*, I am weary of life.  
*Pœnitet me peccati*, I repent of my sin. *Pudet me culpa*, I am ashamed of my fault.

Obs. 1. The genitive here is properly governed either by *negotium* understood or by some other substantive of a signification similar to that of the verb with which it is joined; as, *Miseret me tui*, that is, *negotium* or *miseratio tui miseret me*.

Obs. 2. An infinitive or some part of a sentence may supply the place of the genitive; as, *Pœnitet me peccasse, or quod peccaverim*. The accusative is frequently understood; as *Scelerum si bene pœnitet, scil. nos*, Horat.

Obs. 3. *Miseret, pœnitet, &c.* are sometimes used personally, especially when joined with these nominatives, *hoc, id, quod, &c.* as *Ipse tui miseret*. Lucret. *Nonne hæc te pudet*, Ter. *Nihil, quod pœnitere possit, facias, for cujus te pœnitere possit*, Cic.

We sometimes find *miseret* joined with two accusatives; as, *Mendemi vicem miseret me, scil. secundum or quod ad, Ter*.

Obs. 4. The preterites of *miseret, pudet, tædet, and piget*, when used in the passive form, govern the same cases with the active; as, *Miseritum est me tuorum fortunarum*, Ter. We likewise find, *miserescit* and *miseretur* used impersonally; as, *Miserescit me tui*. Ter.: *Miseretur te fratrum: Neque me tui, neque tuorum liberorum misereri potest*, Cic.

**EXC. III. DECET, DELECTAT, JUVAT, and OPOR-  
TET**, govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive; as,

*Delectat me studere*, It delights me to study.  
*Non decet te rixari*, It does not become you to scold.

Obs. 1. These words are sometimes used personally; as, *Purpura parva decet*, Hor. *Est aliquid, quod non oporteat, etiam si liceat*, Cic. *Hæc facta ab illo oportebant*, Ter.

Obs. 2. *Decet* is sometimes construed with the dative; as, *Ita nobis decet*, Ter.

Obs. 3. *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mode, *ut* being understood; as,

*Sibi quisque consulat oportet*, Cic. Or with the perfect participle, *esse* or *uisse* being understood; as, *Communicatum oportuit*; *mansum oportuit*; *Adolescenti morem gestum oportuit*, The young man should have been humoured, Ter.

Obs. 4. *Facit*, *fugit*, *praeterit*, *latet*, when used impersonally, also govern the accusative with the infinitive; as, *In lege nulla esse ejusmodi caput, non te facit*; *De Dionysio fugit me ad te intente scribere*, Cic.

NOTE, *Attinet*, *destinet*, & *spectat*, are construed with *ad*; *Ad rempublicam pertinet, me conservari*, Cic. And so personally, *Ille ad me attinet*, belongs, Ter. *Res ad terram spectat*, looks, points, Cic.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

XXX. One verb governs another in the infinitive; as,

*Cupio discere*,

I desire to learn.

Obs. 1. The infinitive is often governed by adjectives; as, *Horatius est dignus legi*, Quinctil. And sometimes depends on a substantive; as, *Tempus, equum funantia solvens colla*, Virg.

Obs. 2. The word governing the infinitive is sometimes understood; as, *Mene incepta destatere victam*, scil. *deceat*, or *par est*, Virg. *Videre est*, one may see. *Dicere non est*, scil. *copia*, or *facultas*, Horat. And sometimes the infinitive itself is to be supplied; as, *Saceratem fidiibus decuit*, scil. *cahere*, Cic. So *Discere*, scil. *scribere*, *fidiibus*.

Obs. 3. The infinitive was not improperly called by the ancients *Nomen verbi*, the name or noun of the verb; because it is both joined with an adjective like a substantive; as, *Velle eum cuique est*, Every one has a will of his own; and likewise supplies the place of a noun, not only in the nominative, but also in all the oblique cases; as, 1. In the nominative, *Latrocinari, fraudare, turpe est*, Cic. *Didicisse fideliter artes emoluit mores*, Ovid. 2. In the genitive, *Peritus cantare for cantandi, or cantus*, Virg. In the dative, *Paratus servire, for servituti*, Sall. 4. In the accusative, *Da mihi fallere, for artem fallendi*, Horat. *Quod faciam superest, praeter amare, nihil*, Ovid. 5. In the vocative, *O vivere nostrum, ut non sentientibus effluat*: for *vita nostra*. 6. In the ablative, *Dignus amari, for amore, or qui ametur*, Virg.

Obs. 4. Instead of the infinitive, a different construction is often used after verbs of doubting, willing, ordering, fearing, hoping; in short, after any verb which has a relation to futurity; as, *Dubitavit ita facere*, or more frequently, *an num or utrum ita facturus sit*; *Dubitavit an faceret necne*; *Non dubitavit quin fecerit*. *Vis me facere, or ut faciam*. *Metuit tangi, or ne tangatur*. *Spero te venturum esse, or fore ut vendas*. *Nunquam putavi fore ut ad te supplex venirem*, Cic. *Existimabant futurum fuisse ut oppidum amitteretur*, Cæs.

Obs. 5. *To*, which in English is the sign of the infinitive, is omitted after *bid*, *care*, *need*, *make*, *see*, *hear*, *feel*, and some others; as, *I bid him do it*; and in Latin may often be rendered otherwise than by the infinitive; as, *I am sent to complain*, *Mittere queratum, or ut querar*, &c. Ready to hear, *Promptus ad audiendum*; Time to read, *Tempus legendi*; Fit to swim, *Aptus natando*; Easy to say, *Facile dictu*; I am to write, *Scripturus sum*; A house to let, or more properly, to be let, *Domus locanda*; He was left to guard the city, *Relictus est ut tueretur urbem*.

*To* in English is often taken absolutely; as, *To confess the truth*; *To proceed*; *To conclude*; that is, *That I may confess the truth, &c.*

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

XXXI. Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, govern the case of their own words; as,

*Amans virtutem*,

Loving virtue.

*Carens fraude*,

Wanting guile.

Obs. 1. Passive Participles often govern the dative; particularly when they are used as adjectives; as,

*Suspectus mihi*, Suspected by me; *Suspectiores regibus*, Sall. *Invidius mihi*; hated by me, or hateful to me; *Indies invidior*, Suet. *Occulta, et moribus non invidis solum, sed etiam inaudita sacra*, unscen, Cic.

*EXOSUS, PEROSUS*, and often also *PERTÆSUS*, govern the accusative; as, *Tedas exosa jugales*, Ovid. *Plebs consulum nomen haud secus quam regum perosa erat*, Liv. *Pertæsus ignaviam suam; semet ipse*, displeased with, Suet. *vltam*, weary of; *Justin levitatis*, Cic.

Verbals in *BUNDUS* govern the case of their own verbs; as, *Gratulabundus patriæ*, Junt. *Vitabundus castra hostium*, Liv. So sometimes also nouns; as, *Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus*, Cic. *Invidios consuli*, Sall. *Demum reditioms spe sublatâ*, Cæs. *Spectatio ludas*, Plaut.

Obs. 2. These verbs *do, reddo, volo, curo, factis, habes, comperio*, with the perfect participle, form a periphrasis similar to what we use in English; as, *Comptertum habeo*, for *comperi*, I have found, Sall. *Effectum dabo*, for *efficiam*; *Invenum tibi curabo*, et *adductum tuum Pamphilum*, i. e. *inveniam et adducam*, Ter. Sometimes the gerund is used with *ad*; as, *Trade ei pentes diripiendas*, or *ad diripiendum*, Cic. *Rogo, accipio, do aliquid utendum*; or *ad utendum*; *Mitti mihi librum legendum*, or *ad legendum*, &c.

Obs. 3. These verbs, *curo, habeo, mando, loco, conduco, do, tribus, mitto*, &c. are elegantly construed with the participle in *tus* instead of the infinitive; as, *Fumus facieudum curavi*, for *feri*, or *ut fieret*; *Columnas edificandas locavi*, Cic.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF GERUNDS.

XXXII. Gerunds are construed like substantive nouns; as,

*Studendum est mihi*, I must study. *Aptus studendo*, Fit for studying.  
*Tempus studendi*, Time of study. *Scio studendum esse mihi*, I know that I must study.

But more particularly :

I. The Gerund in *DUM* with the verb *est* governs the dative; as,

*Legendum est mihi*, I must read. *Moriendum est omnibus*, All must die.

So *Scio legendum est mihi*; *moriendum esse omnibus*, &c.

Obs. 1. This gerund always imports obligation or necessity; and may be resolved into *oportet, necesse est*, or the like, and the infinitive or the subjunctive, with the conjunction *ut*; as, *Omnibus est moriendum*, or *Omnibus necesse est mori*, or *ut moriantur*; or, *Necesse est ut omnes moriantur*. *Consulendum est tibi a me*, I must consult for your good; for *Oportet: ut consulam tibi*, Cic.

Obs. 2. The dative is often understood: as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano*, sc. *tibi*, Juv. *Hic vincendum, aut moriendum, nulites, est, sc. vobis*, Liv. *Deliberandum est diu, quod statuendum est semel*, sc. *tibi vel alicui*, P. Syr.

II. The gerund in *DI* is governed by substantives or adjectives; as,

*Tempus legendi*, Time of reading. *Cupidus discendi*, Desirous of learning.

Obs. This gerund is sometimes construed with the genitive plural; as, *Facultas agrorum condonandi, for agros*, Cic. *Copia spectandi comædiarum, for comædiis*; Ter. But chiefly with pronouns; as, *In castra venerunt sui purgandi causa*, Cæs. *Vestri adhortandi causa*, Liv. *Ejus videndi cupidus, sc. ferminæ*, Ter. The gerund here is supposed to govern the genitive like a substantive noun.

III. The gerund in *DO* of the dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness; as,

*Charta utilis scribendo*, Paper useful for writing.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the adjective is understood; as, *Non est solvendo, scil. par*, or *habilis*, He is not able to pay. *Is finis censendo factus est*, Liv.

Obs. 2. This gerund is sometimes governed also by verbs; as, *Adesse scribendo*, Cic. *Aptat habendu ensem*, for wearing, Virg.

IV. The gerund in *DUM* of the accusative case is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter*; as,

*Promptus ad audiendum,*  
*Attentus inter docendum,*

Ready to hear.  
Attentive in time of teaching.

Obs. This gerund is also governed by some other prepositions; as, *Ante domandum*, Virg. *Ob absolvendum*, Cic. *Circa impendendum*, Quintil. Or it depends on some verb going before, and then with the verb *esse* governs the dative case; as, *Solo moriendum esse omnibus*, I know that all must die. *Esse* is often understood.

V. The gerund in *DO* of the ablative case is governed by the prepositions, *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; as,

*Pœna a peccando absterret,*

Punishment frightens from sinning.

\* Or without a preposition, as the ablative of manner or cause; as,

*Memoria excolendo augetur,*  
*Dæfessus sum ambulando,*

The memory is improved by exercising it.  
I am wearied with walking.

Obs. The gerund in its nature very much resembles the infinitive. Hence the one is frequently put for the other; as, *Est tempus legendi*, or *legere*: only the gerund is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense; as, *Cum Titulum vocaretur ad imperandum*, i. e. *ut ipse imperatur*, to receive orders, Sall. *Nunc aules ad imperandum*, vel *ad parendum potius*. Sic enim antiqui loquebantur, Cic. i. e. *ut tibi imperetur*. *Urit videndo*. I. e. *dum videtur*, Virg.

The gerund in English becomes a substantive, by prefixing the article to it, and then it is always to be construed with the preposition *of*; as, *He is employed in writing letters*: or *in the writing of letters*; But it is improper to say, *in the writing letters*, or *in writing of letters*.

*Gerunds turned into participles in dus.*

XXXVI. Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case; as,

By the Gerund,  
*Petendum est mihi pacem,*  
*Tempus petendi pacem,*  
*Ad petendum pacem,*  
*A petendo pacem,*

By the Participle or Geruntive,  
*Pax est petenda mihi,*  
*Tempus petendæ pacis,*  
*Ad petendam pacem,*  
*A petenda pace.*

}  
or more  
frequently

Obs. 1. In changing gerunds into participles in *dus*, the participle and the substantive are always to be put in the same case in which the gerund was; as,

Gentive; *Iusta sunt consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandæ, nominis Romani, extinguendi*, Cic.

Dat. *Perpetiundo labori idoneus*, Colum. *Capessendæ reipublicæ habilis*, Tass. *Area firma templis ac porticipus sustinendis*, Liv. *Oneri ferendo est*, sc. *aptus* v. *habilis*, Ovid. *Nutus miseris ferendis*, Ter. *Litteris dandis vigetare*, Cic. *Locum opido condendo capere*, Liv.

Acc. and Abl. *Ad defendendam Romam ab oppugnanda Capua duces Romanos adstruere*, Liv. *Oratorem Latinam legendis nostris efflores plerumque*, Cic.

Obs. 2. The gerunds of verbs which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into the participle, except those of *moderor*, *utor*, *abutor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, and *potior*; as, *Spes potiundi urbe*, or *potiundæ urbis*; but we always say, *Cupidus subveniendi tibi*, and never *tui*.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

### 1. The Supine in *um*.

XXXVII. The supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion; as,

*Abiit ambulatum,*

He hath gone to walk,

So *Ducere cohortes prædatum*, Liv. *Nunc venit irrisum dominum? Quæst in rem tuam optimum facta arbitror, te id admentum venio*, Plaut.

Obs. 1. The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo*, to express the signification of any verb more strongly; as, *Il se perditum*, the same with *id agit*, or *operam dat*, *ut se perdat*, He is bent on his own destruction, Ter. This supine with *iri* taken impersonally, supplies the place of the infinitive passive; as, *An credebis illam sine tuâ operâ iri deducum domum?* Which may be thus resolved, *An credebas iri* (a te vel ab aliquo) *deducum* (i. e. ad deducendum) *illam domum*, Ter.

Obs. 2. The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides verbs of motion; as, *Dedit filiam nuptum*; *Canitum provocemus*, Ter. *Revocatus defensum patriam*; *Divisit captus hiematum*, Nep.

Obs. 3. The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb; as, *Venit oratum opem*: or 1. *Venit opem orandi causâ*, or *opis orandæ*. 2. *Venit ad orandum opem*, or *ad orandum opem*. 3. *Venit opi orandæ*. 4. *Venit opem oraturus*. 5. *Venit qui*, or *ut opem orat*. 6. *Venit opem orare*. But the third and the last of these are seldom used.

## 2. The Supine in u.

XXXVIII. The supine in *u* is put after an adjective noun; as,

*Facile dictu*,

Easy to tell, or to be told.

So *Nihil dictu factum*, *visaque hæc limina tangat; intra quæ puer est*, Juv. *Difficile res est inventu verus amicus*; *Fas v. nefas est dictu*; *Opis est scitu*, Cic.

Obs. 1. The supine in *u*, being used in a passive sense, hardly ever governs any case. It is sometimes, especially in old writers, put after verbs of motion; as, *Nunc ab onatu redco*, from getting provisions, Plaut. *Primus cubitu surgat* (villæus) from bed, *patremus cubitum eat*, Cato.

Obs. 2. This supine may be rendered by the infinitive or gerund with the preposition *ad*; as, *Difficile cognitu*, *cognosci*, or *ad cognescendum*; *Res facillè ad credendum*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The supines being nothing else but verbal nouns of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular, are governed in these cases by prepositions understood; the supine in *um* by the preposition *ad*, and the supine in *u* by the preposition *in*.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

### I. THE CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

XXXIX. Adverbs are joined to verbs and participles, to adjectives, and to other adverbs; as,

*Bene scribit*, He writes well.

*Fortiter pugnat*, Fighting bravely.

*Servus egregiè fidelis*, A slave remarkably faithful.

*Satis bene*, Well enough.

Obs. 2. Adverbs are sometimes likewise joined to substantives; as,

*Homerus planè orator*; *planè noster*, *verè Metellus*, Cic. So *Hodie mane*; *erat mane*, *heri mane*; *hodie vesperi*, &c. *tam mane*, *tam vespere*.

Obs. 3. The adverb for the most part in Latin, and always in English, is placed near to the word which it modifies or affects.

Obs. 3. Two negatives, both in Latin and English, are equivalent to an affirmative; as,

*Nec non senserunt*, Nor did they not perceive, i. e. *Et senserunt*, And they did perceive: *Non poteram non exanimari metu*, Cic. Examples however of the contrary of this sometimes occur in good authors, both English and Latin. Thus two or three negative participles are placed before the subjunctive mode to express a stronger negation. *Neque tu haud dicas tibi non prædictum*, And do not say that you were not forewarned, Ter.

But what chiefly deserves attention in Adverbs, is the degree of comparison and the mode with which they are joined, 1. *Apprimè*, *admodum*, *vehementer*, *maximè*, *per-*

*quam, velle, oppido, &c.* and *per* in composition, are usually joined to the positive; as, *Utrique nostrum gratum admodum feceris*, You will do what is very agreeable to both of us, *Cic. perquam puerile*, very childish; *oppido pauci*, very few; *perfacile est*, &c. In like manner, *Parum, multum, nimium, tantum, quantum, aliquantum*; as, *In rebus apertissimus nimium longi sumus; parum firmus multum bonus*, *Cic.* Adverbs in *un* are sometimes also joined to comparatives; as, *Forma viri aliquantulum amplior humani*, *Liv.*

**QUAM** is joined to the positive or superlative in different senses; as, *Quam difficile est!* How difficult it is! *Quam crudelis*, or *Ut crudelis est!* How cruel he is! *Fens quam familiariter*, very familiarly. *Ter.* So *quam severe*, very severely, *Cic.* *Quam late*, very widely, *Cæs.* *Tum multa, quam, &c.* as many things as, &c. *Quam maximas potest copias armat*, as great as possible, *Sall.* *Quam maximas gratias agit, opum primum quam sapissime*, *Cic.* *Quam quisque pessime fecit, tam maxime tutus est*, *Sall.*

**FACILE**, for *haud dubie*, undoubtedly, clearly, is joined to the superlatives or words of a similar meaning; as, *Facile doctissimus, facile princeps*, v. *præcipuus*, **LONGE** to comparatives or superlatives, rarely to the positive; as, *Longè eloquentissimus Plato*, *Cic.* *Peditibus longe melior Lyons*, *Virg.*

**2. CUM**, when, is construed with the indicative or subjunctive, oftener with the latter; **DUM**, whilst, or how long, with the indicative; as *Dum hæc aguntur; Egrato, dum anima est, spes esse dicitur*, *Cic.* *Dunec crisis fellæ, multos numerabis amicos*, *Ovid.* **DUM** and **DONEC**, for *usque* until, sometimes with the indicative and sometimes with the subjunctive; as, *Operior, dum ista cognovico*, *Cic.* *Haud desinam, donec profeceris*, *Ter.* So **QUOAD**, for *quamdiu*, *quantum, quatenus*, as long, as much, as far as; thus, *Quoad Catilina fuit in urbe. Quoad tibi equum videbitur; quoad passem & liceret; quoad progredi poteris amenia*, *Cic.* But **QUOAD**, until, oftener with the subjunctive; as, *Theusalonica esse statueram, quoad aliquid ad me scriberes*, *Cic.* but not always; *Non faciam finem regandi, quoad nunciatum erit te fecisse*, *Cic.* The pronoun *ejus*, with *facere* or *feri* is elegantly added to *quoad* as, *Quoad ejus facere poteris; Quoad ejus feri, possit*, *Cic.* *Ejus* is thought to be here governed by *aliquid* or some such word understood. *Quoad corpus, quoad animam, for secundum*, or *quoad attinet ad corpus vel animam*, as to the body or soul, is esteemed by the best grammarians not to be good Latin.

**3. POSTQUAM** or **POSTEAQUAM**, after, is usually joined with the Indic. **ANTEQUAM**, **PRUSQUAM**, before: **SIMUL**, **SIMULAC**, **SIMUL ATQUE**, **SIMUL UT**, as soon as; **UBI**, when, sometimes with the Ind. and sometimes with the Subj.; as, *Anequam dico or dicam*, *Cic.* *Simulac persensit*, *Virg.* *Simul ut videro Curionem*, *Cic.* *Hæc ubi dicta dedit*, *Liv.* *Ubi semel quis perseveraverit, ei credit postea non oportet*, *Cic.* So **NE**, truly; as *Næ ego homo sum infelix*, *Ter.* *Næ tu, si id fecisses, melius jamæ consulisses*, *Cic.* But **NE**, not, with the imperative, or more elegantly with the subjunctive; as, *Næ jura*, *Plaut.* *Næ post conferas culpam in me*, *Ter.* *Næ te annorum felicitatem in unius horæ dederis discrimen*, *Liv.*

**4. QUASI**, **CEU**, **TANQUAM**, **PERINDE**, when they denote resemblance, are joined with the indicative; *Fuit olim quasi ego sum, senex*, *Plaut.* *Adversari rupto ceu quondam turbine venti configunt*, *Virg.* *Hæc omnia perinde sunt, ut aguntur*. But when used ironically, they have the subjunctive; as, *Quasi de verbo, non de re laboratur*, *Cic.*

**5. UTINAM**, or **SI**, **UT** for *utinam*, I wish, take the subjunctive; as, *Utinam ea, res ei voluptati sit*, *Cic.* *O mihi præteritos referat si Jupiter annos*, *Virg.* *Ut illum dii deæque perdant*, *Ter.*

**6. UT**, when, or after takes the indicative; as, *Ut discessit, venit*, &c. ¶ Also for *quam*, or *quomodo*, how! as, *Ut valet! Ut falsus animi est! Ut sæpe summa ingenia in occulto latent!* *Plaut.* ¶ Or when it simply denotes resemblance; as, *Ut tute es, ita omnes censes esse*, *Plaut.* ¶ In this sense it sometimes has the subjunctive; as, *Us sementem feceris, ita metes*, *Cic.*

**7. QUIN** for **CUR NON**, takes the indic. as, *Quin continetis vocem indicem stultitias vestræ?* *Cic.* ¶ For **IMO**, nay or but, the indic. or Impera'. as, *Quin est paratum argentum; quin tu hoc audi*, *Ter.* ¶ For **UT**, **NON**, **QUI**, **QUÆ**, **QUOD NON**, or **QUO MINUS**, the Subjunctive; as, *Nulla tam facilis, res, quin difficilis fiet quam invitus facias*, *Ter.* *Nemo est, quin malet; Facere non possum, quin ad te mittam*, *L.* cannot help sending; *Nihil adest, quin sim miserimus*, *Cic.*

## THE GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.

**XL. Some Adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive; as,**

*Pridie ejus diæi,*  
*Ubique gentium,*  
*Satis est verborum,*

The day before that day.  
Every where.  
There is enough of words.

1. Adverbs of time governing the genit. s̄c. *Interca. postea, inde, tunc*; as, *Interca. loci*, in the mean time; *postea loci*, afterwards; *inde loci*, then; *tunc temporis*, at that time. 2. Of place, *Ubi* and *quo*, with their compounds *ubique, ubicunque, ubivis ubique*, &c. Also *Es, huc, hucine, undc, usquam, nusquam, longe, ibidem*; as, *Ubi, quo, quovis*, &c. also, *usquam, nusquam, unde terrarum, vel gentium, longc gentium; ibidem loci, eo audacius vecordia, mseritarum*, &c. to that pitch of boldness, madness, misery, &c. 3. Of quantity, *Abunde, affutim, largiter, nimis, satis, parum, minimc*; as, *Abundc gloriæ, affutim divitiarum, largitur auri, satis loquentia, sapientia parum est illi vel habet*. He has enough of glory, riches, &c. *Minimc gentium*, by no means.

Some add *ergo* and *instar*; as, *Ergo virtutis*, for the sake of virtue, Cic. *Instar montis*, like a mountain, Virg. But these are properly nouns.

Obs. 1. These adverbs are thought to govern the genitive, because they imply in themselves the force of a substantive; as, *Potentia gloriæ: que abundc adeptus* the same with *abundantiam gloriæ*: or *res, locus, or negotium* and a preposition, may be understood; as, *Interca loci*, i. e. *inter ea negotia loci*; *Ubi terrarum*, for *in quo loco terrarum*.

Obs. 2. We usually say, *pridie, postridie, ejus, diei, seldom diem*; but *pridie, postridie Kalendas, Nonas, Idus, ludas Apollinaris, natalens ejus, absolutionem ejus*, &c. rarely *Kalendarum*, &c.

Obs. 3. *En* and *ecce* are construed either with the nominative or accusative; as,

*En hostis, or hostem; Ecce miserum hominem*, Cic. Sometimes a dative is added; as, *Ecce tibi Strabo, Ter.* *Ecce duas* (sell. aras.) *tibi Daphni, Virg.* In like manner is construed *hem* put for *ecce*; as, *Hem tibi Davum, Ter.* But in all these examples some verb must be understood.

XLI. Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,

*Omnium optime loquitur.*

*Conceniens naturæ,*

*Venit omnium ei,*

*Proxime castris or castris;*

He speaks the best of all.

Agreeably to nature.

He came to meet him.

Next the camp.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS:

### 1. PREPOSITIONS governing the Accusative.

**AD** astra, to the stars; religari ad asserem, to be bound to a plank; ad diem veniam, solvam, &c. at or on; ad portam, ostium, fores, at, before; ad urbem, Tiberim, near, at; ad templa supplicatio, in; ad summum, at most, or to the top; ad summam, on the whole; Cic.; ad ultimum, extremum, at last, finally; ad. v. in speciem, to appearance; mentis ad omnia capacitas; annus fatalis ad interitum; lenius ad severitatem, for, with respect to; Cic.; ad vivum, sc. corpus, to the quick; ad judicem agere, before; nihil ad Cæsarem, in comparison of; numero ad duodecim, to the number of; omnes ad unum, to a man; ad hoc, besides; ad vulgi opinionem, according to; homo ad unguem factus, an accomplished man; herbc an lunam messc, by the light of, Virg.; ad tem-

pus venit, at; Ira brevis est & ad tempus, for; ad tempus consilium capiam, according to, Cic.; ad decem annos, after; annos ad quinquaginta natus, about; Cic.; nebula erat ad multum diei, for a great part of the day; Liv.; ad pedes jacere, provolvi, procumbere, & ad genua; ad manus esse, at; ad manus venire, to come to a close engagement; ad libertatem deberi, to a farthing, no more and no less; ad amussim, exactly; ad hæc visa auditaque, upon seeing and hearing these things, Liv.

**AD** seems sometimes to be taken adverbially; as, *Ad duo milia cæsa sunt*; *ad mille hominum amissum est*; *ad ducenti perierunt, about*, Liv.

**APUD** forum, at; apud me cœnabis, at my house; apud senatum, judices, v. aliquem dicere, before;

apud majores nostros, *among* ; apud Xenophontem, *in the book of* ; Est mihi fides, *vel valeo apud illum, I have credit with him* ; facio te apud illum deum, *Ter.*

ANTE diem, locum, &c. *before.*

ADVERSUS, v. -um ; CONTRA hostes, *against* ; adversus infimos justitia est servanda, *toward* ; adversum hunc loqui, *to*, *Ter.* Leri-na adversum Antippsim, *over against*, *Plin.*

CIS *vel* CITRA flumen, *on this side* ; citra necessitatem, *without* ; Ede citra cruditatem, bibe citra ebrietatem, *Senec.*

CIRCUM & CIRCA regem, *about* ; Varia circa hæc opinio, *Plin.*

ERGA amicos, *towards*. EXTRA muros ; Extra jocum, periculum, noxiam, sortem, *without* ; nemo extra te, *besides* ; extra conjurationem, *not concerned in*, *Sall.*

INFRA tectum, *below the roof.*

INTER fratres, *among* ; inter & super cenam, *during, in the time of* ; inter hæc parata, *during these preparations* ; *Sall.* Inter tot annos, *in* ; *Cic.* Inter diem, *whence, interdiu, in the day time* ; inter se amant, *they love one another* ; Quasi non noverimus nos inter nos, *Ter.*

INTRA privatos parietes, *intra paucos annos, within* ; intra famam est, *less than report*, *Quinct.*

JUXTA macellum, *near the shambles.*

OB lucrum, *for gain* ; ob oculos, *before* ; ob industriam *scilicet* de industria, *on purpose*, *Plaut.*

PENES quem, *or quem penes, in the power of* ; Penes te es ? *Are you in your senses ?* *Hor.*

PER agros, *through* ; per vim, *per*

scelus, *by* ; per anni tempus, *per statem licet, for, by reason of.*

PONE caput, *behind.*

POST hoc tempus, *after* ; post tergam, *behind* ; post homines natos, *post hominum memoriam, since the world began.*

PRÆTER te nemo, *nobody besides, or except* ; præter casam fugere, *beyond* ; præter legem, morem æquum & bonum, spem, opinionem, &c. *contrary to, against, beyond* ; præter cæteros excellere, lamentari, *above* ; præter ripam ire, *along near* ; præter oculos, *before*, *Cic.*

PROPTER virtutem, *for, on account of* ; propter æquas rivum, *near, hard by*, *Virg.*

SECUNDUM facta & virtutes tuas, *according to*, *Ter.* secundum litus secundum aurem vulneratus est, *near to* ; in actione secundum vocem, vultus plurimum valet ; secundum patrem tu es proximus, *after, next to* ; Prætor secundum me decrevit, *sententiam dedit, for, in my favour*, *Cic.*

SECUS viam, *by, along.*

SUPRA terram, *above.*

TRANS mare, *over, beyond.*

ULTRA oceanum, *beyond.*

To prepositions governing the accusative are commonly added CIRCITER, PROPE, USQUE and VERSUS ; as, Circiter meridiem, *about mid day* ; prope muros, *near the walls* ; usque Puteolos, Tharsum usque, *as far as* ; Orientem versus, *towards the east*. But in these *ad* is understood ; which we find sometimes expressed ; as, Prope ad annum, *Nep.* Ab ovo usque ad mala, *Hor.* Ad oceanum versus, *Cæs.* In Italiam versus, *Cic.*

## 2. PREPOSITIONS governing the Ablative.

A patre, *ab omnibus, abs te, by or from* ; a puero, *vel pueris, a pueritia, in cunabulis, teneris unguibus, &c. from a child, ever since childhood* ; ab ovo usque ad mala, *from the beginning to the end of supper* ; a manu, *scilicet servus, an amanuensis or clerk* ; ad manum, *a waiting man* ; a pedibus, *a foot man* ; a latere principis, *an atten-*

*dant. So a secretis, rationibus, consiliis, cyathis, &c. a secretary, accountant, &c.* fores a nobis, *for nostræ.* Injuria ab illo, *for illius.* Ter. a coena, *after* ; Secundus, tertius a Romulo ; ictus ab latere, *on or in* ; a senatu stare, *for, in defence of* ; ab oculis doleo, *Plaut.* ab ingenio improbus, a pecunia & militibus imparatus, *as to*



with respect to, Cic. Est calor a sole; omissiores ab re, too careless about money; a villa, mercenarium vidi, Ter.

**ABSQUE** causa, without; absque te esset, recte ego mihi, vidiissem, i. e. si tu non esses, nisi tu esses, but for you, had it not been for you, Ter. Absque is chiefly used by comic writers; sine, by orators.

**CLAM** patre & patrem, without the knowledge of.

**CORAM** omnibus, before, in presence of.

**CUM** exercitu, with; testis mecum est annulus, in my possession, Ter. cum prima luce, at break of day; cum imperio esse, in; cum primis, in primis, in the first place; cum metu dicere, cum lætitia vivere, cum cura, &c. Cic. We say, mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum; rarely cum me, cum te, &c. and quocum or cum quo, quibuscum or cum quibus.

**DE** luna caprina riantur, about, concerning; De tanto patrimonio nihil relictum est, of; de loco superiore, from; de die, by day; de nocte, by night; de integro, anew, afresh; de v. ex improviso, unexpectedly; de v. ex industria, on purpose; de meo, at my expense; Id de lucro putato esse, clear gain; Ter. de v. ex compacto agere, by agreement; de transverso, crosswise, athwart; de v. ex ejus sententia, consilio, according to; qua v. hac de causa, for; homo de plebe; templam de marmore, of; de scripto dicere, to read a speech; de Filio emit, from, Cic. De servis fidelissimus; de ipsius exercitu non amplius hominum mille cecidit, Nep. Robur de exercitu, Liv. Adolescens de summo loco, Plaut. De procul aspicere, Id.

**E** foro, ex sedibus, from, out of; e contrario, v. contraria parte, on the contrary; e regione, over against; e republica, e re alicujus, for the good of; statim e somno, ex fuga, ex tanta properantia, aliud ex alio malum, from, after; e vestigio, out of hand, immediately, poculum ex auro; ex equo pugnare, on horse-back; facere pugnam ex commodo, on advanta-

geous ground; Sail.; diem ex die expectare from day to day, day after day; ex ordine, in order; magna ex parte, for the most part; ex super vacuo, superfluously; ex tua dignitate v. virtute, ex decreto senatus, e natura, according to; so vulgus ex veritate pauca, ex opinione multa æstimat; ex v. de more, ad v. in morem alicujus: Ex animo, from the heart; Insolentia ex prosperis rebus, e via languere, ex doctrina nobilis, on account of; ex usu est tibi, of advantage; ex eo die, since, ex amicis certis certissimus, of, or among; ex pedibus laborare, to be ill of the gout, Cic. E re nata, as the matter stands, Ter. Commenta mater est, esse ex alio viro, nescio quo, puerum natum, by, Id.

**PRO** gloria certare, for; Rati noctem pro se, favourable to them; Sail. Hoc est pro me, Cic. pro templo, tribunali, concione, rostris, castris, foribus, before; pro sua dignitate, sapientia, &c. pro potestate cogere, pro tempore, re, loco, suo jure, according to; est pro præloze, pro te molain, comes faciendus pro vehiculo est, for, instead of; pro viribus, pro parte virili; pro sua quisque parte v. facultate, to one's ability or power; Parum tibi pro eo, quod a te habeo, reddidi, in comparison of, considering; Cic. pro ut, pro eo ac, pro eo ut mereor, as I deserve; pro se quisque, uterque, &c. for his own part; pro rata parte, pro portione, in proportion; pro cive se gerit; agere pro victoribus; pro suo tui; pro rupto sædus habet, for, as, so, pro certo, infecto, comperto, nihilo, concesso, &c. habeo duco. Pro occiso, relictus est, Cic.

**PRÆ** se pugionem tulit, before; speciem præ se boni viri fert, pretends to be; Ter. præ lacrymis non possum scribere, for, because of; illum, præ me contempsi, in comparison of; So the adv. præut; as, præut hujus rabies quæ dabit, Ter.

**PALAM** populo, omnibus, before, with the knowledge of.

**SINE** labore, without; sine ulla causa, pompa, molestia, querela,

impensa, &c.; homo sine re, fide, spe, fortunis, sedes, &c. Cic.

Capulo TENUS, up to the hilt. Tenus is construed with the genitive plural, when the word wants the sing.; as, Cumarum tenus, as far as Cuma: or when we speak of things, of which we have by nature only two; as, Oculorum, aurium, narium, labrorum, lumborum, crurum tenus, up to.

We also find Corcyæ tenus, & ostius tenus, Liv. Colchis tenus, Flor. Pectoribus tenus, Ovid.

To prepositions governing the abl. is commonly added PROCUZ; as, Procul domo, far from home; but here a is understood, which is also often expressed; as, Procul a Patria, Virg. Procul ab ostensione, Quinct. Culpa est procul a me, Ter.

### 3. PREPOSITIONS governing the Acc. and Abl.

**XLIV.** The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

*IN* when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative; when it signifies *in* or *among*, it governs the ablative; as,

*IN* urbem ire, *into*; amor in patriam, *in* te benignus, *towards*; in lucem, *until day*; in eam sententiam, *to that purpose, on that head*; in rem tuam est, *for your advantage*; in utramque partem disputare, *on both sides, for and against*; litura in nomen, *on* Cic. potestas in filium, *over*; in aliquem dicere, *against*; mirum in modum, *after*; in pedes stare, *in* aurem dormire, *on*; in os laudare, *to before*; in v. inter patres lectus, *into the number of*; in vulgus probari, *spargere, &c. among*; crescit in dies, *in* singulos dies, *omnes in dies, every day*; in diem postera, proximum, decimum, *against*; in diem vivere, *to live from hand to mouth, not to think of to-morrow*; Est in diem, *will happen sometime after*, Ter. Induciae in duos menses datae, *in* hunc diem, annum, &c. *for*; Ternis assibus in pedem, *v. in* singulos pedes, *transegit. He bargained for three shillings a foot, or for every foot*; So in jugerum, militem, capita, naves, &c. In medimna singula, H. S. quinos denos dediti, Cic.

*IN* portu navigo, *in* tempore, *in* case in potestate, *v. in* potestate, honore *v. honorem, mente v. mentem*; in manu *v. manibus esse*; habere tenere, *in one's power, on hand*; in amicis, *among*; in oculis, *before*; Occisus est in provinciam, *for in* provincia Sall. In pueritia, adolescentia, senectute, absentia, *for* puer or pueri, *when a boy or boys, &c.* Hoc in tempore, Nep. In loco fratris diligere, *for ut* fratrem, Ter.

*SUB* terras ibit imago, *sub* aspectum cadit, *under*; *sub* ipsa sumus, *near, just before*. Hor. *sub* lucem, ortum lucis, noctem, vesperam, brumam, *i. e. incipiente luce, &c. at the dawn of day, &c.*; *sub* idem tempus, *about*; *sub* eas literas recitatae sunt tuae, *sub* festos dies, *after*, Cic.

*SUB* muro, rege, pedibus, &c. *under*; *sub* urbe, *near*, Ter. *sub* ea conditione, *v. -em, on or with*.

*SUPER* Numidiam, *above, beyond*; *super* ripas, *upon*; *super* hæc; *super* morbum etiam fames affixit, *besides*, Liv. *super* arbore, fronde *super* viridi, *upon*; *super*

hac re scribere, his accensa super, concerning; alii super alios trucidantur, Liv. Super coenam, super vinum & epulas, for inter,

during, Curt. Nac super ipse sua molitur laude laborem, for, Virg. SUBTER terram vel terra, under.

Obs. 1. Prepositions in English have always after them the accusative or objective case. And when prepositions in English or Latin do not govern a case, they are reckoned adverbs

Such are *Ante, circa, clam, coram, contra, infra, intra, juxta, palam, pene, post, propter, secus, subter, super, supra, ultra*. But in most of these the case seems to be implied in the sense: as *Longe post tempore venit*, sc. *post id tempus*. *Adversas, juxta, propter, secus, secundum, & cum*, are by some thought to be always adverbs having a preposition understood when they govern a case. So other adverbs also are construed with the acc. or abl.; as, *Intus, cellam*, for *intra*, Liv. *Intus, templi divum*, sc. *in* Virg. *Simul his, sc. cum*, Hor.

Obs. 2. A and E are only put before consonants; AB and EX, usually before vowels, and sometimes also before consonants; as,

*A patre, a regione; ab initio, ab rege; ex urbe, ex parte; ab* before q and t; as, *ab te, ab quibus homine*. Ter. Some phrases are used only with e; as, *e longinquo, e regione, e vertigine, e re mea est, &c.* Some only with ex; as, *Ex compacto, ex tempore magna ex parte, &c.*

Obs. 3. Prepositions are often understood; as, *Devenere locos*, scil. *ad*; *Ita partis*, sc. *ex*, Virg. *Nunc id prodes*, scil. *ob* vel *propter*, Ter. *Maria aspera jura*, scil. *per*, Virg. *Ut se loco movere non possent*, scil. *e* vel *de*, Cæs. *Fina promens delia*, scil. *ex*, Hor. *Quid illo facias? Quid me fiet*, sc. *de*, Ter. And so in English, *Show me the book; Get me some paper*, that is, *to me, for me*. We sometimes find the word to which the preposition refers, suppressed; as, *Circum Concordia* sc. *ordem*, Sall. *Round St. Paul's, namely, church; Campum Stellatim divisit extra partem ad viginti millibus civium*, i. e. *civium millibus ad viginti milia*, Suet. But this is most frequently the case after prepositions in composition; thus, *Emittere seruum*, scil. *manu*, Plaut. *Evermore virus*, scil. *ore*, Cic. *Educere copias*, scil. *castris*, Cæs.

**XLV.** A preposition in composition often governs the same case, as when it stands by itself; as,

*Adeamus scholam,*  
*Exeamus schola.*

Let us go to the school.  
Let us go out of the school.

Obs. 1. The preposition with which the word is compounded, is often repeated; as, *Adire ad scholam; Exire ex schola; Adgredi aliquid, or ad aliquid; Ingredi orationem vel in orationem; Inducere animum, & in animum; Evadere undas & ex undis; Decedere de suo jure, decedere via vel de via; Expellere, ejicere, exterminare, extrudere, exturbare urbe, & ex urbe*. Some do not repeat the preposition; as, *Affari, alloqui, allatrare aliquem, not ad aliquem*. So *Alluere urbem; accelerare flumen; circumvenire aliquem; praeterire injuriam; abdicare se magistratu*, (also *abdicare magistratum*;) *transducere exercitum, fluvium, &c.* Others are only construed with the preposition; as, *Accurrere ad aliquem, adhortari ad aliquid, incidere in mordum, avocare a studiis, avertere ab inepto, &c.*

Some admit other prepositions; as, *Abire, demigrare loco; & a, de, ex loco; abstrahere aliquem a, de, vel e conspectu; Desistere sententia, a vel de sententia, Excidere manibus, de, vel e manibus, &c.*

Obs. 2. Some verbs compounded with *e* or *ex* govern either the ablative or accusative; as,

*Egredi urbe or urbem, sc. extra; egredi extra vallum*, Nep. *Evadere insidiis or insidias*. *Patrios excedere muros*, Lucan. *Scelerata excedere terra*, Virg. *Elabi ex manibus; pugnam vincula*, Tac.

Obs. 3. This rule does not take place, unless when the preposition may be disjoined from the verb, and put before the noun by itself; as, *Alloquor patrem*, or *loquor ad patrem*.

### 3. THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

**XLVI.** The interjections *O heu* and *proh*, are constructed with the nominative, accusative, or vocative; as,

*O vir bonus et bone!* O good man! *Heu me miserum!* Ah wretched me!  
So, *O vir fortis atque amicus!* Ter. *Heu vanitas humana!* Plin. *Heu miserande puer!* Virg. *O præclarum custodem votum* (ut aliant) Cic.

**XLVII.** *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative; as,

*Hei mihi!* Ah me! *Væ vobis!* Wo to you!  
Obs. 1. *Heus* and *ohe* are joined only with the vocative; as, *Heus Syre*, Ter. *Oh libelle!* Martial. *Proh* or *pro*, *ab*, *vob*, *hem*, have generally either the accusative or vocative; as, *Proh hominum fidem!* Ter. *Proh Sancte Jupiter!* Cic. *Hem astutias!* Ter.  
Obs. 2. Interjections cannot properly have either concord or government. They are only mere sounds excited by passion, and have no just connexion with any other part of a sentence. Whatever case, therefore, is joined with them, must depend on some other word understood, except the vocative, which is always placed absolutely thus, *Heu me miserum!* stands for *Heu quam me miserum sentio!* *Hei mihi* for *Hei! malum est mihi!* *Proh dolor!* for *Proh! quantus est dolor!* and so in other examples.

### THE CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

The circumstances, which in Latin are expressed in different cases, are, 1. The *Price of a thing*. 2. The *Cause, Manner, and Instrument*. 3. *Place*. 4. *Measure and Distance*. 5. *Time*.

#### 1. PRICE.

**XLVIII.** The price of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

*Emi librum duobus assibus,*  
*Constitit talento.*

I bought a book for two shillings.  
It cost a talent.

So *Asses carum est;* vile *viginti minis;* *auro venale,* &c. *Nocet emptæ dolore voluptas,* Hor. *Spem pretio non emam,* Ter. *Plurimi auro veniunt honores,* Ovid.

¶ These genitives *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris,* are excepted; as,

*Quanti constitit,* How much cost it? *Asses et pluris,* A shilling and more.

Obs. 1. When the substantive is added, they are put in the ablative; as, *pauvo pretio, impensæ pretio vendere,* Cic.

Obs. 2. *Magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, minimo, plurimo* are often used without the substantive; as, *Permagno constitit,* scil. *pretio,* Cic. *Heu quanto regni nax stetit una tuis!* Ovid. Fast. ii. 812. We also say, *Emi carè, carius, carissimè;* *bene, melius, optimè;* *malè, pejus, vilius, vilissimè;* *Valde carè æstimas:* *Emit domum prope ultimio carius, quam æstimabat,* Cic.

Obs. 3. The ablative of price is properly governed by the preposition *pro* understood, which is likewise sometimes expressed; as, *Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus venderet,* Liv.

#### 2. MANNER AND CAUSE.

**XLIX.** The cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative; as,



Obs. 2. The name of a town, when put in the ablative, is here governed by the preposition *in* understood; but if it be in the genitive, we must supply *in urbe*, or *in ap- pido*. Hence, when the name of a town is joined with an adjective or common noun, the preposition is generally expressed thus, we do not say *Natus est Romæ urbis celebri*: but either *Romæ in celebri urbe*, or *in Romæ celebri urbe*, or *in Roma celebri urbe*, or sometimes *Romæ celebri urbe*. In like manner, we usually say, *Habitat in urbe Carthagine* with the preposition. We likewise find, *Habitat Carthagini*, which is sometimes the termination of the ablative when the question is made by *ubi*?

## 2. The Place WHITHER.

LI. When the question is made by *Quo*? *Whither*? the name of a town is put in the accusative; as,

*Venit Romam,*  
*Profectus est Athenas.*

He came to Rome.  
He went to Athens.

Obs. 2. We find the dative also used among the poets, but more seldom; as, *Carthagini nuncios mittam*. Horat.

Obs. 3. Names of towns are sometimes put in the accusative, after verbs of telling and giving where motion to a place is implied; as *Romam, erat nunciatum*, The report was carried to Rome, Liv. *Hæc nunciavit domum Albani*, Id. *Messanam literas dedit*, Cic.

## 3. The Place WHENCE.

LII. When the question is made by *Unde*? *Whence*? or *Qua*? *By or through* what place? the name of a town is put in the ablative; as,

*Ducescit Corintho,*  
*Laodicæa iter faciebat,*

He departed from Corinth.  
He went through Laodicea.

When motion *by or through* a place is signified, the preposition *per* is extremely used; as, *Per Thebas iter fecit*, Nep.

## *Domus* and *Rus*.

LIII. *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns; as,

*Manet domi,*  
*Domum revertitur,*  
*Domo accessit enim,*  
*Vivit rure,* or more frequently *ruri,*  
*Rediit rure,*  
*Abiit rus,*

He stays at home.  
He returns home.  
I am called from home.  
He lives in the country.  
He is returned from the country.  
He is gone to the country.

Obs. 1. *Humi*, *militiæ*, and *belli*, are likewise construed in the genitive, as names of towns; thus,

*Domi et militiæ*, or *belli*, At home and abroad. *Jacet humi*, He lies on the ground.

Obs. 2. When *Domus* is joined with an adjective, we commonly use a preposition; as, *In domo paterna*, not *domi paterna*; So, *Ad domum, paternam*: *Ex domo paterna*. Unless when it is joined with these possessives, *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, regius* and *alienus*; as, *Domu meæ vivit*, Cic. *Regiam domum comportant*, Sall.

Obs. 3. When *domus* has another substantive in the genitive after it, the preposition is sometimes used, and sometimes not; as, *Deprehensus est domi, domo*, or *in domo Casaris*.

LIV. To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is commonly added; as,

When the question is made by

Ubi? *Natus in Italia in Latia, in urbe, &c.*

Quo? *Abiit in Italiam, in Latium, in or ad urbem, &c.*

Unde? *Rediit ex Italia, e Latia, ex urbe, &c.*

Qua? *Transiit per Italiam per Latium, per urbem, &c.*

Obs. 1. A preposition is often added to names of towns; as, *In Roma*, for *Romæ*; *ad Romam*, *ex Roma*, &c.

*Peto* always governs the accusative as an active verb, without a preposition; as, *Petivit Egyptum*, He went to Egypt.

Obs. 2. Names of countries, provinces, &c. are sometimes construed without the preposition like names of towns; as, *Pompeius Cyprum visum est, exa. Creta jussit considere Apollo*, Virg. *Non Lybia* for *in Lybia*; *non ante Tyra*, for *Tyri*. Id. Æn. iv. 36. *Venit Sardiniam*, Cic. *Roma, Numidæque facinora ejus memorat*, Sall.

#### 4. MEASURE AND DISTANCE.

LV. Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

*Murus est decem pedes altus,*

The wall is ten feet high.

*Urbs distat triginta millia, or triginta*

The city is thirty miles distant.

*millibus passuum,*

One day's journey.

*Iter, or itinere unius diei,*

Obs. 1. The accusative or ablative of measure is put after adjectives and verbs of dimension; as, *Longus, latus, crassus, profundus, and altus: Patet, porrigitur, emanet, &c.* The names of measure are *pes, cubitus, ulna, passus, digitus*, an inch; *palmus*, a span, an hand-breadth, &c. The accusative or ablative of distance is used only after verbs which express motion or distance; as, *Eo, curro, absum, disto, &c.* The accusative is governed by *ad* or *per* understood, and the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

Obs. 2. When we express the measure of more things than one, we commonly use the distributive number; as, *Muri sunt denos pedes alti*, and sometimes *denam pedum*, for *denorum*, in the genitive, *ad mensuram* being understood. But the genitive is only used to express the measure of things in the plural number.

Obs. 3. When we express the distance of a place where any thing is done, we commonly use the ablative; or the accusative with the preposition *ad*; as, *Sex millibus passuum ab urbe concessit*, or *ad sex millia passuum*, Cæs. *Ad quantum milliarium, v. milliare concessit*, Cic. *Ad quantum lapidem*, Nep.

Obs. 4. The excess or difference of measure and distance is put in the ablative; as,

*Hoc lignum excedit illud digito. Tota vertice supra est. Virg. Britannia longitudo ejus latitudinem ducentis quadraginta milliariis superat.*

#### 5. TIME.

LVI. When the question is made by *Quando?* When? time is put in the ablative; as,

*Venit. hora tertia.*

He came at three o'clock.

¶ When the question is made by *Quamdiu?* How long? time is put in the accusative or ablative, but oftener in the accusative; as,

*Mansit paucos dies,  
Sex mensibus absuit.*

He staid a few days:  
He was away six months.

\* *Of thus, Time when is put in the ablative, time how long is put in the accusative.*

Obs. 1. When we speak of any precise time, it is put in the ablative; but when continuance of time is expressed, it is put for the most part in the accusative.

Obs. 2. All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a preposition; as, *In presentia, or in praesenti, scil. tempore; in vel ad praesens; Per decem annos; Surgunt domate; ad horam destinatum; Intra annum; Per idem tempus, ad Kalendas soluturas ait, Suet.* The preposition *ad* or *circa* is sometimes suppressed, as in these expressions, *hoc, illud, id, istud, etatis, temporis, horae, &c.* for *hac aetate, hoc tempore, &c.* And *ante* or some other word; as, *Annos natus unum & viginti, sc. ante.* *Siculi quotannis tributa conferunt sc. tot annis, quot vel quatuor sunt, Cic. Prope diem, sc. ad soon; Oppidum paucis diebus, quibus ad ventum est, expugnatum, sc. post eos dies, Caes. Ante diem tertium Kalendas Melas accepti tuus literas, for die tertio ante, Cic. Qui dies futurus esset in ante diem octavum Kalendas Novembris, Id. Ex ante diem quantum Kal. Octob. Liv. Lacedaemonii septingentes jam annos amplius ante moribus et namquam inutatis legibus vivunt, sc. quam per, Cic. We find, *Primum stipendium meruit annorum decem septemque, sc. Atticus; for septemdecim annos natus, seventeen years old. Nep.**

Obs. 3. The adverb *ABHINC*, which is commonly used with respect to past time, is joined with the accusative or ablative without a preposition; as, *factum est abhinc biennio or biennium.* It was done two years ago. So likewise are *post* and *ante*; as, *Paucos post annos*: but here, *ex*, or *id*, may be understood.

## COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A compound sentence is that which has more than one nominative, or one finite verb.

A compound sentence is made up of two or more simple sentences or *phrases*, and is commonly called a *Period*.

The parts of which a compound sentence consists, are called *Members* or *Clauses*.

In every compound sentence there are either several subjects, and one attribute, or several attributes, and one subject, or both several subjects and several attributes: that is, there are either several nominatives applied to the same verb, or several verbs applied to the same nominative, or both.

Every verb marks a judgment or attribute, and every attribute must have a subject. There must, therefore, be in every sentence or period as many prepositions, as there are verbs of a finite mode.

Sentences are compounded by means of relatives and conjunctions; as,

*Happy is the man who loveth religion, and practiseth virtue.*

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

LVII. The relative *Qui, Quae, Quod*, agrees with the antecedent in gender, number, and person; and is construed through all the cases, as the antecedent would be in its place; as,



	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Vir qui,</i>	The man who.	<i>Viri qui.</i>
<i>Femina quae,</i>	The woman who.	<i>Feminae quae.</i>
<i>Negotium quod,</i>	The thing which.	<i>Negotia quae.</i>
<i>Ego qui scribo,</i>	I who write.	<i>Nos qui scribimus.</i>
<i>Tu qui scribis,</i>	Thou who writest.	<i>Vos qui scribitis.</i>
<i>Vir qui scribit,</i>	The man who writes.	<i>Iri qui scribunt.</i>
<i>Mulier quae scribit,</i>	The woman who writes.	<i>Mulier quae scribunt.</i>
<i>Animal quod currit,</i>	The animal which runs.	<i>Animalia quae currunt.</i>
<i>Vir quem vidi,</i>	The man whom I saw.	<i>Viri quos vidi.</i>
<i>Mulier quam vidi,</i>	The woman whom I saw.	<i>Mulier quae vidi.</i>
<i>Animal quod vidi,</i>	The animal which I saw.	<i>Animalia quae vidi.</i>
<i>Vir cui pareo,</i>	The man whom he obeys.	<i>Viri quibus pareo.</i>
<i>Vir cui est simile,</i>	The man to whom he is like.	<i>Viri quibus est simile.</i>
<i>Vir a quo,</i>	The man by whom.	<i>Viri a quibus.</i>
<i>Mulier ad quam,</i>	The woman to whom.	<i>Mulier ad quas.</i>
<i>Vir cuius opus est,</i>	The man whose work it is.	<i>Viri quorum opus est.</i>
<i>Vir quem misero,</i>		
<i>cuius misero, vel miserere,</i>	}	The man whom I pity.
<i>cuius me misero,</i>		whose interest it is, &c.
<i>cuius vel cuja interest, &amp;c.</i>		

If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb.

But if a nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be of that case, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before, use to govern.

Thus the construction of the relative requires an acquaintance with most of the foregoing rules of syntax, and may serve as an exercise on all of them.

**Obs. 1.** The relative must always have an antecedent expressed or understood, and therefore may be considered as an adjective placed between two cases of the same substantive, of which the one is always expressed, generally the former; as,

*Vir qui (vir) legit; vir quem (virum) amo:* Sometimes the latter; as *Quisquisque nobis artem, in hac (arte) se exerceat, Cic. Eunuchum, quem delicti nostri, quas turbas dedit. Ter. sc. Eunuchus.* Sometimes both cases are expressed; as, *Eram omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus demo exire possent, Cic.* Sometimes, though more rarely, both cases are omitted; as, *Sunt, quae hoc genus minime juvat, for sunt homines, quae homines, &c. Hor.*

**Obs. 2.** When the relative is placed between two substantives of different genders, it may agree in gender with either of them, though most commonly with the former; as,

*Vultus quem dixere chaos, Ovid. Est locus in carcere, quod Tullianum appellatur, Sall. Animal, quem vocamus hominem, Cic. Cogito id quod res est, Ter.* If a part of a sentence be the antecedent, the relative is always put in the neuter gender; as *Pompeius se afflixit, quod mihi est summo dolere, scilicet Pompeium se affligere, Cic.* Sometimes the relative does not agree in gender with the antecedent, but with some synonymous word supplied; as, *Scelus, qui for sceleratus, Ter. Abundantia carum rerum, quae mortales prima putant, scilicet negotia, Sall. Vel virtus tua me vel vicinitas, quod ego in aliqua parte amicitiae puto, facit ut te moneam, scilicet negotium, Ter. In omni Africa, qui agebant; for in omnibus Africa, Sallust. Jug. 89. Non dissidentia futuri, quae impe visisset, for quod, Ib. 100.*

**Obs. 3.** When the relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the first or second person rather than the third; as, *Ego sum vir, qui facio, scarcely*

*facit.* In English it sometimes agrees with either; as, *I am the man who make, or maketh.* But when once the person of the relative is fixed, it ought to be continued through the rest of the sentence; thus it is proper to say, "I am the man, who takes care of your interest," but if I add "at the expense of my own," it would be improper. It ought either to be "his own," or "who take." In like manner, we may say, "I thank you, who gave, who did love," &c. But is improper to say, "I thank thee, who gave, who did love:" it should be, "who gavest, who didst love." In no part of English syntax are inaccuracies committed more frequently than in this. Beginners are particularly apt to fall into them, in turning Latin into English. The reason of it seems to be our applying *thou or you, thy or your*, promiscuously, to express the second person singular, whereas the Latins almost always expressed it by *tu* and *tuus*.

Obs. 4. The antecedent is often implied in a possessive adjective; as,

*Omnes laudare fortunas meas, qui haberem gnatum tali ingenio proditum.* Ter. Sometimes the antecedent must be drawn from the sense of the foregoing words; as, *Carne pluit, quem imbrem aves rapuisse feruntur; l. c. pluit imbrem carne, quem imbrem, &c.* Liv. *Si tempus est ullum jure homines necandi, quæ multa sunt, scilicet tempora, &c.*

Obs. 5. The relative is sometimes entirely omitted; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit: Tyrti tenere coloni,* scilicet *quam* or *eam*, Virg. Or if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, so that it must be supplied in a different case; as, *Bocchus cum pedibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna assuecunt, Romanos invadunt; for quique in priore pugna non assuecunt,* Sall. In English the relative is often omitted, where in Latin it must be expressed; as, *The letter I wrote, for the letter which I wrote; The man I love, to wit, whom.* But this omission of the relative is generally improper, particularly in serious discourse.

Obs. 6. The case of the relative sometimes seems to depend on that of the antecedent; as, *Eam aliquam agas eorum, quorum consulisti, for quæ consulisti agere, or quorum aliquid agere consulisti.* Cic. *Residue in quem me accepisti locum, for in locum, in quo.* Ter. And, iv. l. 58. But such examples rarely occur.

Obs. 7. The adjective pronouns, *ille, ipse, is, hic, is,* and *idem*, in their construction, resemble that of the relative *qui*; as, *Liber ejus, His or her book; Vita eorum, Their life,* when applied to men; *Vita earum, Their life,* when applied to women. By the improper use of these pronouns in English, the meaning of sentences is often rendered obscure.

Obs. 8. The interrogative or indefinite adjectives, *quis, quantum, quotus, &c.* are also sometimes construed like relatives; as, *Facies est, qualem decet esse sororum,* Ovid. But these have commonly other adjectives either expressed or understood, which answer to them; as, *Tanta est multitudo quantum urbs capere potest; and are often applied to different substantives; as, Quales sunt cives, talis est civitas,* Cic.

Obs. 9. The relative *who* in English is applied only to persons, and *which* to things and irrational animals; but formerly *which* was likewise applied to persons; as, *Our Father, which art in heaven; and whose, the genitive of who, is also used sometimes, though perhaps improperly, for of which. That* is used indifferently for persons and things. *What,* when not joined with a substantive, is only applied to things, and includes both the antecedent and the relative, being the same with *that which, or the thing which*; as, *This is what he wanted; that is, the thing which he wanted.*

Obs. 10. The Latin relative often cannot be translated literally into English, on account of the different idioms of the two languages; as, *Quod eum ita esset,* When that was so; not, *Which* when it was so, because then there would be two nominatives to the verb *was*, which is improper. Sometimes the accusative of the relative in Latin must be rendered by the nominative in English; as, *Quem dicunt advenire?* Who do they say that I am; not whom. *Quem dicunt advenire?* Who do they say is coming?

Obs. 11. As the relative is always connected with a different verb from the antecedent, it is usually construed with the subjunctive mode, unless when the meaning of it

verb is expressed positively; as, *Audire cupio, quæ legeris*, I want to hear what you have read; that is, what perhaps or probably you may have read; *Audire cupio, quæ legisti*, I want to hear, what you (actually or in fact) have read.

To the construction of the Relative may be subjoined that of the ANSWER TO A QUESTION.

The answer is commonly put in the same case with the question; as,

*Qui vocare? Geta, sc. voco: Quid quaris. Librum, sc. quæra. Quod heri videri? Scitâ. Sometimes the construction is varied; as, Cujus est liber? Meus, not mel. Quævis emperus est? Decem assibus. Damnatusne es furti? Imo alio crimine. Often the answer is made by other parts of speech than nouns; as, Quid agitur? Statur, sc. a me, a nobis. Quis fecit? Nescio: Avunt Petrum fecisse. Quomodo volas? Bene, male. Scripsistine? Scripsi, ita, etiam, immo, &c. An vidisti? Non vidi, non, vidimus, &c. Chærea tuam vestem detraxit tibi? Factum. Et ed est invidus? Factum, Ter. Most of the Rules of Syntax may thus be exemplified in the form of questions and answers.*

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

LVIII. The conjunctions *et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel*, and some others, couple like cases and modes; as,

*Honora patrem et matrem,  
Nec legi nec scribit,*

Honour father and mother.  
He neither reads nor writes.

Obs. 1. To this rule belong particularly the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions; as likewise, *quam, nisi, præterquam, an*; and also adverbs of likeness; as, *ceu, tanquam, quasi, ut, &c.* as,

*Nulum præmium a vobis postulo, præterquam hujus diei memoriam, Cic. Gloria virtutem sanguinem umbra sequitur. Id.*

Obs. 2. These conjunctions properly connect the different members of a sentence together, and are hardly ever applied to single words, unless when some other word is understood. Hence if the construction of the sentence be varied, different cases and modes may be coupled together; as,

*Interest mea et reipublicæ; Constitit asse et pluris; Sive as Romæ, sive in Epiro; Decius cum se devoveret, et in mediam aciem irruerat, Cic. Vir magni ingenii summæque industriæ; Neque per vim, neque insidiis, Sall. Tecum habita, & nôris, quam sit tibi curta supellex, Pers.*

Obs. 3. When *et, aut, vel, sive, or nec*, are joined to different members of the same sentence, without connecting it particularly to any former sentence, the first *et* is rendered in English by *both* or *likewise*; *aut* or *vel* by *either*; the first *sive*, by *whether*; and the first *nec*, by *neither*; as,

*Et legit, et scribit: so tum legit, tum scribit; or cum legit, tum scribit, He both reads and writes; Sive legit, sive scribit, Whether he reads or writes; facere quæ vera, quæ falsa; Incurrere quæ consules ipso, quæ exercitum, to upbraid both the consuls and the army, Liv.*

**LIX.** Two or more substantives singular coupled by a conjunction, (as, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, &c.) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural; as,

*Petrus et Joannes, qui sunt docti,*

Peter and John, who are learned.

Obs. 1. If the substantives be of different persons, the verb plural must agree with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third; as, *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus*, If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well, *Cic.* In English the person speaking usually puts himself last; thus, *You and I read*; *Cicero and I are well*: but in Latin the person who speaks is generally put first; thus, *Ego et tu legimus*.

Obs. 2. If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective or relative plural must agree with the masculine rather than the feminine or neuter; as, *Pater et mater, qui sunt mortui*; but this is only applicable to beings which may have life. The person is sometimes implied; as, *Athenarum et Cratippi, ad quos, &c. Propter summam doctoris auctoritatem et urbis, quorum alter, &c. Cic.* Where *Athenæ & urbs* are put for *the learned men* of Athens. So in substantives; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque reges legati missi*, i. e. the king and queen, *Liv.*

Obs. 3. If the substantive signify things without life, the adjective or relative plural must be put in the neuter gender; as, *Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt*, *Sall.*

The same holds, if any of the substantives signify a thing without life: because when we apply a quality or join an adjective to several substantives of different genders, we must reduce the substantive to some certain class, under which they may all be comprehended, that is, to what is called their *Genus*. Now the *Genus* or class which comprehends under it both persons and things, is that of substances or beings in general, which are neither masculine nor feminine. To express this, the Latin Grammarians use the word *Negotia*.

Obs. 4. The adjective or verb frequently agrees with the nearest substantive or nominative, and is understood to the rest; as,

*Et ego et Cicero meus flagitabit, Cic. Sociis et rege recepto, Virg. Et ego in culpa sum, et tu.* Both I am in the fault, and you; or, *Et ego et tu es in culpa*, Both I and you are in the fault. *Nihil hic nisi carmina, desunt*; or *nihil hic deest nisi carmina. Omnia quibus turbari solita eras civitas, domi discordia, feris bellum exortum*; *Duo milia et quadringenti cæsi, Liv.* This construction is most usual; when the different substantives resemble one another in sense; as, *Mens, ratio, et consilium, in senibus est*, Understanding, reason, and prudence is in old men. *Quibus, ipse meique ante Larem proprium vecor, for vescimur, Horat.*

Obs. 5. The plural is sometimes used after the preposition *cum* put for *et*; as,

*Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt, Verg.* The conjunction is frequently understood; as, *Dum actus, motus, magister prohibebant, Ter. Frons, oculus, vultus sepe mentiuntur, Cic.*

The different examples comprehended under this rule are commonly referred to the figure *Syllepsis*.

LX. The conjunctions *ut, uo, licet, ne, utinam,* and *dummodo,* are for the most part joined to the subjunctive mode; as,

*Lego ut discam,  
Utinam sapias,*

I read that I may learn.  
I wish you were wise.

Obs. 1. All interrogatives, when placed indefinitely, have after them the subjunctive mode.

Whether they be adjectives; as *Quantus, qualis, quotus, quotuplex, uter;* Pronouns, as, *quis & cujus;* Adverbs, as, *Ubi, quo, unde, qua, quorum, quamdiu, quamdiudum, quampridem, quoties, cur, quare, quomobrem, num, utrum, quomodo, qui, ut, quam, quantopere;* or Conjunctions, as, *ne, an, anne, annon: Thus, Quis est? Who is it? Nescis quis sit; I do not know who it is. An venturus est? Nescio, dubita, an venturus sit; Viden' ut alba sit nive candidum Soracis? Hor.* But these words are sometimes joined with the indicative; as, *Scio quid ego, Plaut. Haud scio, an amat, Ter. Vide croa: itia quid facit. Id. Vides quam turpe est, Cic.*

¶ In like manner the relative *QUI* in a continued discourse; as, *Nihil est quod Deus efficere non possit. Quis est, qui utilia fugiat? Cic.* Or when joined with *QUIPPE* or *UTPOTE;* *Neque Antonius procul aberat, utpote qui acqueretur, &c. Sall.* But these are sometimes, although more rarely, joined with the indicative. So *Est qui sunt qui, est quando v. ubi, &c.* are joined with the indicative or substantive.

NOTE, *Haud scio an recte dixerim,* is the same with *dico, affirmo, Cic.*

So in English, *if, though, unless, except, whatever, whether, or; also, so, before, ere, till, &c.* have after them the subjunctive mode; as, *If thou let this man go; If thou be the Son of God; Although my house be not so; Though he slay me; Though he fall, &c. Unless he wash his feet; I will not let thee go except thou bless me; Except it were given from above; Whether it were I or they; Whosoever he be; Whatever be our fate, &c.* So likewise *that,* expressing the motive or end; *lest* and *that* annexed to a command preceding; and *if* with *but* following it; as, *Let him that standeth take heed lest he fall; Beware that thou bring not my son thither; If he do but touch the hills, they shall smoke.*

The nominative case following the verb sometimes supplies the place of *if, or though;* as, "Had he done this, he had escaped," i. e. if he had done this: "Charm he never so wisely," or rather, ever so wisely, i. e. *how wisely soever;* for, *though* he charm, &c.

Obs. 2. When any thing doubtful or contingent is signified, conjunctions and indefinites are usually construed with the subjunctive; but when a more absolute or determinate sense is expressed, with the indicative mode; as, *If he is to do it; Although he was rich, &c.*

Obs. 3. *ETSI, TAMETSI, and TAMENETSI QUANQUAM,* in the beginning of a sentence, have the indicative; but elsewhere, they also take the subjunctive; *ETIAMSI* and *QUAMVIS* commonly have the subjunctive, and *UT,* although, always has it; as, *Ut queras, non reperies, Cic. QUONIAM, QUANDO, QUANDOQUIBEM,* are usually construed with the indicative; *SI, SEN, NE, NISI, SIQUIDEM; QUOD,* and

QUIA, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive. DUM, for *dummodo*, provided has always the subjunctive; as, *Oderint dum metuant*, Cic. And QUIPPE, for *nam*, always the indie.; as, *Quippe vector falsus*.

Obs. 4. Some conjunctions have their correspondent conjunctions belonging to them; so that, in the following member of the sentence, the latter answers to the former: thus, when *etsi*, *tametsi*, or *quamvis*, although, are used in the former member of a sentence, *tamen*, yet or nevertheless, generally answers to them in the latter. In like manner, *Tamquam*; *Adeo* or *ita*,—*ut*: in English. *As*,—*as*, or *so*; as, *Etsi sit liberalis, tamen non est profusus*, Although he be liberal, yet he is not profuse. So *prius* or *ante*,—*quam*. In some of these, however we find the latter conjunction sometimes omitted, particularly in English.

Obs. 5. The conjunction *ut* is elegantly omitted after these verbs, *Volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *rogo*, *precor*, *censeo*, *suadeo*, *licet*, *oportet*, *necesse est*, and the like; and likewise after these imperatives, *Sine*, *fac*, or *fucito*; as, *Ducas volo hodie uxorem*; *Nolo mentiare*; *Fac cogites*, Ter. In like manner *ne* is commonly omitted after *cave*; as, *Cave facias*, Cic. *Post* is also sometimes understood; thus, *Die octavo, quam creatus erat*, Liv. 4. 47. scil. *post*. And so in English, *See you do it*; *I beg you would come to me*, scil. *that*.

Obs. 6. *Ut* and *Quod* are thus distinguished: *ut* denotes the final cause, and is commonly used with regard to something future; *quod* marks the efficient or impulsive cause, and is generally used concerning the event or thing done: as, *Lego ut discam*, I read that I may learn. *Gaudeo quod legi*, I am glad that or because I have read. *Ut* is likewise used after these intensive words, as they are called, *Adco*, *ita*, *sic*, *tam*, *talit*, *tantus*, *tot*, &c.

Obs. 7. After the verbs *timeo*, *vereor*, and the like, *ut* is taken in a negative sense for *ne non*, and *ne* in an affirmative sense; as,

*Timeo ne faciat*, I fear he will do it; *Timeo ut faciat*, I fear he will not do it. *Id paves ne ducas tu illam, tu autem ut ducas*, Ter. *Ut sis vitalis, metuo*, Hor. *Timeo ut frater vivat*, will not;—*ne frater moriatur*, will. But in some few examples they seem to have a contrary meaning.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF COMPARATIVES.

### LXI. The comparative degree governs the ablative; as,

*Dulcior melle*, sweeter than honey. *Praestantior auro*, better than gold.

Obs. 1. The sign of the ablative in English is *than*. The positive with the adverb *magis*, likewise governs the ablative; as, *Magis dilecta luce*, Virg.

The ablative is here governed by the preposition *proæ* understood, which is sometimes expressed; as, *Fortior proæ cæteris*. We find the comparative also construed with other prepositions; as, *immanior ante omnes*, Virg.

Obs. 2. The comparative degree may likewise be construed with the conjunction *quam*, and then, instead of the

ablative, the noun is to be put in whatever case the sense requires; as,

*Dulcor quam mei, scil. est. Amo te magis quam illum, I love you more than him, that is. quam amo illum, than I love him. Amo te magis quam ille, I love you more than he, i. e. quam ille amat, than he loves. Plus datur a me quam illo. sc. ab.*

Obs. 3. The conjunction *quam* is often elegantly suppressed after *amplius* and *plus*; as,

*Vulnerantur amplius sexcenti. Cæs. scil. quam. Plus quingentos colaphos infregit mihi, He has laid on me more than five hundred blows, Ter. Castra ab urbe haud plus quinque millia passuum locant, sc. quam, Liv.*

*Quam* is sometimes elegantly placed between two comparatives; as,

*Triumphus clarior quam gratior, Liv. Or the prep. pro is added; as, Probatum atrocius, quam pro numero pugnantium editur, Liv.*

The comparative is sometimes joined with these ablatives, *opinatione, spe, æquo, justo, dicto*; as,

*Credibili opinione major, Cic. Credibili fortior, Ovid. Fast. iii. 618. Gravius æquo, Sall. Dicto citius, Virg. Majora credibillitulumus, Liv. They are often understood; as, Liberius vivebat, sc. justo, too freely, Nepos.*

*Nihil* is sometimes elegantly used for *nemo* or *nulli*; as,

*Nihil vidi quidquam lætius, for neminem, Ter. Crasso nihil perfectius, Cic. Asperius nihil est humili, cum surgit in alium. So quid nobis laboriosius, for quis, &c. Cic. We say, inferiori patre nulla re, or quam pater. The comparative is sometimes repeated or joined with an adverb; as, Magis magisque, plus plusque, minus minusque, carior cariorque; Quotidie plus, iudicis magis, semper candidior candidiorque, &c.*

Obs. 4. In English, the relative *who* after *than* is always put in the accusative case; as, He is a man, *than whom* there is none better: but here if we substitute a pronoun in place of the relative, the pronoun must be put in the nominative; as, there is none better than *he*, not, than *him*. In like manner, it is improper to say, He is better than *me*, than *us*, than *her*, than *them*, &c. It should be, He is better than *I*, than *we*, than *she*, than *they*, &c. the auxiliary verb being understood to each of them.

Obs. 5. The relation of equality or sameness is likewise expressed in English by conjunctions; as, *Est tam doctus quam ego*, He is as learned as I. *Animus erga te idem est ac fuit. Ac and atque* are sometimes, though more rarely, used after comparatives; as, *Nihil est magis verum atque hoc, Ter.*

Obs. 6. The excess or defect of measure is put in the ablative after comparatives; and the sign in English is *by*, expressed or understood; (*or more shortly*, the difference of measure is put in the ablative;) as,

*Est decem digitis altior quam frater, He is ten inches taller than his brother, or by ten inches. Altero tanto major est fratre, i. e. duplo major, he is as big again as his brother, or twice as big. Sequipede minor, a foot and a half less; Altero tanto, aut sesquimajor, as big again, or a half bigger, Cic. Ter tanto pejor est; Bis tanto amici sunt inter se, quam prius, Plaut. Quingies tanto amplius, quam quantum licitum sit civitatibus imperavit, five times more, Cic. To this may be added many other ablatives, which are joined with the comparative, to increase its force; as, *Tanta, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, paulo, nimio, &c.* thus, *Quo plus habent, eo plus raptunt, The more**

they have, the more they desire. *Quanto melior, tanto adleior.* The better, the happier. *Quoque minor spes est, hoc magis ille cupit.* Ovid. Fast. li. 766. We frequently find *multo, tanto, quanto*, also joined with superlatives; *Multo pulcherrimam eam habebimus*, Sall. *Multoque id maximum fuit*, Liv.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

LXII. A Substantive and a participle are put in the ablative, when their case depends on no other word; as,

*Sole oriente, fugiunt tenebræ,*

*O pere peracto, ludemus,*

{ The sun rising, or while the sun riseth, darkness flies away.  
Our work being finished, or when our work is finished, we will play.

So, *Dominante libidine, temperantia nullus est locus; Nihil amicitia prestabilis est, excepta virtute; Oppressa libertate patriæ, nihil est quod speremus, amplius; Nobilitum vitæ victuque mutatis, mores mutari civitatum puto.* Cic. *Parumper silentium et quies fuit, nec Etruscis, nisi cogentur, pugnam inivitur, et dicitur arcem Romanam respectante, at ab auguribus, simul aves rite admisissent, ex composito tolleretur signum.* Liv. *Bellice, depositis clypeo paulisper et hastâ, Mars ades,* Ovid, Fast iii. l.

Obs. 1. This ablative is called *Absolute*, because it does not depend upon any other word in the sentence.

For if the substantive with which the participle is joined, be either the nominative to some following verb, or be governed by any word going before, then this rule does not take place; the ablative absolute is never used, unless when different persons or things are spoken of; as, *Milites, hostibus victis, redierunt.* The soldiers, having conquered the enemy, returned. *Hostibus victis*, may be rendered in English several different ways, according to the meaning of the sentence with which it is joined; thus, 1. *The enemy conquered, or being conquered;* 2. *When or after the enemy is or was conquered;* 3. *By conquering the enemy;* 4. *Upon the defeat of the enemy, &c.*

Obs. 2. The perfect participles of deponent verbs are not used in the ablative absolute; as, *Cicero locutus hæc consedit*, never *his locutis*. The participles of common verbs may either agree in case with the substantive before them, like the participles of deponent verbs, or may be put in the ablative absolute, like the participles of passive verbs; as, *Romani adepti libertatem floruerunt;* or, *Romani, libertate adeptâ floruerunt.* But as the participles of common verbs are seldom taken in a passive sense, we therefore rarely find them used in the ablative absolute.

Obs. 3. The participle *existente* or *existentibus*, is frequently understood; as, *Cæsare duce*, scil. *existente*. *His consiliis*, scil. *existentibus*. *Invitâ Minervâ*, sc. *existente*, against the grain; *Crassa Minervâ*, without learning, Hor. *Magistrâ ac duce naturâ;* *vivis fratribus;* *te hortatore;* *Cæsare impulsore*, &c. Sometimes the substantive must be supplied; as, *Nondum comperto, quam regionem hostes pessissent*, i. e. *cum nondum compertum esset*, Liv. *Tum demum palam facto*, sc. *negotio*, Id. *Excepto quod non simul esses, cætera lætus*, Hor. *Parto quod avebas*, Id. In such exam-



ples *negotio* must be understood, or the rest of the sentence considered as the substantive, which perhaps is more proper. Thus we find a verb supply the place of a substantive; as, *Vale dicto*, having said farewell, Ovid.

Obs. 4. We sometimes find a substantive plural joined with a participle singular; as, *Nobis presente*, Plaut. *Absente nobis*, Ter. We also find the ablative absolute, when it refers to the same person with the nominative to the verb; as, *me duce ad hunc voti finem, me milite, veni*, Ovid. Amor. ii. 12. 12. *Laetos fecit se consule fastos*, Lucan, v. 384. *Populo spectante fieri credam, quicquid me conscio faciam*, Senec. de Vit. Beat. c. 20. But examples of this construction rarely occur.

Obs. 5. The ablative called *absolute* is governed by some preposition understood; as, *a, ab, cum, sub, or in*. We find the preposition sometimes expressed; as, *Cum diis iuvantibus*, Liv. The nominative likewise seems sometimes to be used absolutely; as, *Perniciosa libidine paulisper usus, infirmitas natus æ accusatur*, Sall. Jug. 1.

Obs. 6. The ablative absolute may be rendered several different ways; thus, *Superbo regnante*, is the same with *cum, dum, or quando Superbus regnabat*. *Opere peracto*, is the same with *Post opus peractum, or Cum opus est peractum*. The present participle, when used in the ablative absolute, commonly ends in *e*.

Obs. 7. When a substantive is joined with a participle in English independently in the rest of the sentence, it is expressed in the nominative; as, *Illo descendente*, He descending. But this manner of speech is seldom used except in poetry.

## APPENDIX TO SYNTAX.

## I. VARIOUS SIGNIFICATION AND CONSTRUCTION OF VERBS.

[The verbs are here placed in the same order as in Etymology.]

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

**ASPIRARE** ad gloriam & laudem, *to aim at*; in curiam, *to desire to be admitted*, Cic.; equis Achillis, *to wish for*; labori ejus, *to favour*; amorem dictis, sc. ei, *to infuse*, Virg.

**DESPERARE** sibi de se; salutem, salutem, *de salute, to despair of*.

**LEGARE** aliquem ad alium, *to send as an ambassador*; aliquem sibi, *to make his lieutenant*; pecuniam alicui, i. e. testamento relinquere. *N. B.* Publice legantur homines; qui inde legati dicuntur: privatim allegantur; unde allegati.

**DELEGARE** res alienum fratri, *to leave him to pay*; laborem alteri, *to lay upon*; aliquid ad aliquem, i. e. in eum transferre, Cic.

**LEVARE** metum ejus & ei, eum meum, *to ease*.

**MUTARE** locum, solum, *to be banished*; aliquid aliqua re; bellum pro pace, *to exchange*; vestem, i. e. sordidam togam induere, Liv. vestem cum aliquo, Ter. fidem, *to break*.

**OBNUNCIARE** comitiis vel concilio, i. e. comitia auspiciis impedire, *to hinder, by telling bad omens, and repeating these words* ALIO DIE; Consuli v. magistratui; i. e. prohibere ne cum populo agat, Cic.

**PRONUNCIARE** pecuniam pro reo, *to promise*; aliquid edicto, *to order*; sententias, *to sum up the opinions of the senators*, Cic.

**RENUNCIARE** aliquid, de re, alicui, ad aliquem, *to tell*; consulem, *to declare, to name*; vitæ amicitiam ei, *to give up*; maneri, hospitio, *to refuse*; repudium, *to divorce*.

**OCCUPARE** aliquem, *to seize*; se in aliquo negotio, *to be employed*;

se ad negotium, *Plaut.* pecuniam, alicui v. apud aliquem grandi fœnore, *to give at interest*, Cic. occupat facere bellum, transire in agrum hostium, *begins first, anticipates*, Liv.

**PRÆOCCUPARE** salum, portas, Ciceriliam, *to seize beforehand*, Nep.

**PRÆJUDICARE** aliquem, *to condemn one from the precedent of a former sentence or trial*, Cic.

**ROGARE** aliquem id, & de ea re; id ab eo; salutem, & pro salute, Cic. legem, *to propose*; hence UTI ROGAS, dicere, *to pass it*; militem sacramento, *to administer the military oath*; Roget quis? *if any one should ask*. Comitibus rogandis consulibus, *for electing*, Liv.

**ABROGARE** legem, *seldom legi, to disannul a law, to repeal, or to change in part*; multam, *to take of a fine*; imperium ei, *to take from*.

**ABROGARE** id sibi, *to claim*.

**DEROGARE** aliquid legi v. de lege, *to repeal or take away some clause of a law*; lex derogatur, Cic. fidem ei, v. de fide ejus, *to hurt one's credit*; ex æquitate; sibi, alicui, *to derogate or take from*.

**EROGARE** pecuniam in classem, in vestes, *to lay out money on*.

**IRROGARE** multam ei, *to impose*.

**OBROGARE** legi, *to enact a new law contrary to an old*.

**PROROGARE** imperium, provinciam alicui, *to prolong*; diem ei ad solvendum, *to put off*.

**SUBROGARE** aliquem in locum alterius, *to substitute*; legi, *to add a new clause or to put one in place of another*.

**SPECTARE** orientem, ad orientem, *to look towards*; aliquem ex

censu, animum alicujus ex suo, *to judge of.*

**SUPERARE** hostes, *to overcome*; montes, *to pass*; superat pars capti, *sc. operis, remains*; Captæ superavimus urbi, *survived*, Virg.

**TEMPERARE** iras, ventos *to moderate*; orbem, *to rule*: mihi sibi, *to restrain, to forbear*; alicui, *to spare*; cædibus, a lacrymis, *to abstain from.*

**VACARE** cura, culpâ, morbo, munere militiæ, &c. a labore, *to be free from*; animo, *sc. in, to be at ease*; philosophiæ, in v. ad rem, *to apply to*; vacat locus, *is empty*; si vacas, v. vacat tibi, *if you are at leisure.*

**VINDICARE** mortem ejus, *to revenge*; ab interitu, exercitum fame, *to free*; id sibi, & ad se, *to claim*; libertatem ejus, *to defend*; se in libertatem, *to set at liberty.*

**DARE** animam, *to die*; animos, *to encourage*; manus, *to yield*; manum ei, *to shake hands*; Plaut, jura, *to prescribe laws*; literas alicui ad aliquem, *to give one a letter to carry to another*; terga, fugam, v. se in fugam, *in pedes, to fly*; hostes in fugam, *to put to flight*; operam, *to endeavour*; operam philosophiæ, literis pælestæ, *to apply to*; operam honoribus, *to seek*, Nep. veniam ei, *to grant his request*, Ter. gemitus, lacrymas, amplexus, cantus, ruinam, fidem, jusjurandum, &c. *to groan, weep, embrace, sting, fall, &c.* cognitores honestos, *to give good vouchers for one's character*, Cic. aliquid mutuum, v. utendum, *to lend*; pecuniam foenori, & collocare, *to place at interest*; se alicui ad docendum, Cic. multum suo ingenio *to think much of*; se ad aliquid, *to apply to*; se auctoritati senatus, *to yield*; fabulam, scripta foras, *to publish*; Cic. effectum, *to perform*; senatum, *to give a hearing of the senate*; actionem, *to grant leave to prosecute*; præcipitem, *to tumble headlong*; aliquid paternum, *to act like one's father*; lectos faciendos, *to bespeak*; Ter. litem secundum aliquem, *to determine a lawsuit in favour of one*; aliquem exitio, morti, neci, letho, rarely lethum, alicui, *to kill*; aliquid alicui dono, v. muneri, *to make a present*; crimini, vitio, laudi, *to accuse, blame, praise*;

pænas, *to suffer*; nomen militiæ, v. in militiam, *to list one's self to be a soldier*; se alicui, *to be familiar with*, Ter. Da te mihi hodie, *be directed by me*, Id aures, *to listen*; oblivioni, *to forget*; civitatem ei, *to make one free of the city*; dicta, *to speak*; verba alicui, *to impose on, to cheat*; se in viam *to enter on a journey*; viam ei *to give place*; jus gratiæ, *to sacrifice justice to interest*; se turpiter *to make a shabby appearance*; fundum vel domum alicui, mancipio, *to convey the property of, to warrant the title to*; Vitaque mancipio nulli datur, omnibus usu, Lucr. servos in questionem, *to give up slaves to be tortured*; primas secundas, &c. (*sc. partes*) actioni *to ascribe every thing to delivery*; Cic. Dat ei bibere, Ter. comas diffundere ventis, *to let them flow loose*; Virg. Da mihi v. nobis, tell us, Cic. Ut res dant se, *as matters go*; solertem dabo, *I'll warrant him expert*, Ter.

**SATISDARE** judicatum solvi, *to give security that what the judge has determined shall be paid*, Cic.

**STARE** contra aliquem; ab, eum, v. pro aliquo, *to side with, to be of the same party*; judicio ejus, *to follow*; in sententia; pæcto, conditionibus conventis, *to stand to, to make good an agreement*; re judicatâ, *to keep to what has been determined*; stare, v. constare animo, *to be in his senses*: Non atar per me quo minus pecunia solvatur, *it is not owing to me that, &c. multum sanguine ea Pænis victoria cost, cost*, Liv. Mihi stat alere morsum desinere, *I am resolved*, Nep.

**ADSTARE** mensæ, *to stand by*; ad mensam, in conspectu.

**CONSTARE** ex multis rebus, animo et corpore, *to consist of*; secum, *to be consilious with*, Cic. liber constitit v. stetit mihi duobus assibus, *cost me*; non constat ei color, *his colour comes and goes*; auri ratio constat, *the sum is right*, Constal, impers. *It is evident, certain, or agreed on*; mihi, inter omnes, de hac re.

**EXTARE** aquis, *to be above*, Ovid. ad memoriam posteritatis, *to remain*, Cic. sepulchra extant, Liv.

**INSTARE** victis, *to press on the vanquished*; rectam viam, *to be in*

*the right way; cursum Marti, to make speedily, Virg.; instat factum, insists that it was done, Ter.*

**OBSTARE** ei, *to hinder.*

**PRÆSTARE** multa, *to perform; alicui, v. aliquem virtute, to excel; silentium ei, to give; auxilium, to grant, Juv impensus, to defray; iter tutum, to procure; se incolumem, to preserve; se virum, i. e. præbere, exhibere; amoris, v. benevolentiam alicui, to show; culpam, v. damnum, i. e. in se transferre, to take on one's self; præstabo de me eum facturum, I will be answerable; In iis rebus repetendis, quæ mancipi sunt, is periculum iudicii præstare debet, qui se nexu obligavit, In recovering, or*

*in an action to recover those things which are transferable, the seller ought to take upon himself the hazard of a trial, Cic. N. B. Those things were called, Res mancipi, (contracted for mancipi, i. e. quæ emptor manu caperet,) the property of which might be transferred from one Roman citizen to another; as houses, lands, slaves, &c.*

**Præstat** impers, i. e. *it is better; Priesto esse alicui, adv. to be present, to assist; Libri prostant venales, the books are exposed to sale.*

**ACCUBARE** alicui in convivio, *to recline near; apud aliquem. Incubare ovis & ova, to sit upon; stratis & super strata.*

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

**HABERE** spem, febriam, finem, bonum exitum, tempus, consuetudinem, voluntatem nocendi, opus in manibus, v. inter manus, *to have; gratiam & gratum, to have a grateful sense of a favour; iudicium, to hold a trial; honorem ei, to honour; in oculis, to be fond of, Ter.; fidem alicui, to trust or believe; curam de v. pro eo; rationem alicujus, to pay regard to, to allow one to stand candidate for an office; rationem, v. rem cum aliquo, to have business with; satis, to be satisfied; orationem, concionem ad populum, to make a speech; alicquem odio, in odium, to hate; iudibrio, to mock; religioni, to have a scruple about it; So, habere aliquid questui, honori, prædæ, voluptati, &c. sc. sibi; se bene v. graviter, to be well or ill; se parçè et duriter, to live, Ter. aliquid comperitum, cognitum, perspectum, exploratum, certum v. pro certo, to know for certain; aliquem contemptui, despiciatui, -um, v. in despiciatum, to despise; excusatam, to excuse; susque deque, to scorn, to slight; Ut res se habet, stands, is; rebus ita se habentibus, in this state of affairs; Hæc habeo, v. habui dicere de, &c. Non habeo necesse scribere, quid sim facturus, Cic. Habe tibi tuas res, a form of divorce.*

**ADHIBERE** diligentiam, celerita-

*tem, vim, severitatem in aliquem, to use; in convivium v. consilium, to admit; remedium vulneri, curationem morbo, to apply; vinum ægrotis, to give; aures versibus, to bare with taste; cultum & preces diis, to offer, Cic. Exhibere molestiam alicui, to cause trouble.*

**JUBERE** legem, *to vote for, to pass; regem, to choose; aliquem salvere, to wish one health; esse bono animo, &c. Uxorem suas res sibi habere jussit, divorced, Cic.*

**DOCEO** te hanc rem, & de hac re Doctus, *adj. utriusque linguæ; Latinis & Græcis literis; Latinè; & Græcè; ad militiam.*

**MISCERE** aliquid alicui, cum aliquo, ad aliquid; vinum aqua, Plin. caneta sanguine, Tacit. sacra profanis, Hor. humana divinis, Liv.

**VIDERE** rem v. de re; sibi, de isthoc, *to take care of, Ter. plus, to be more wise, Cic. De hoc tu videris, consider, be answerable for, Cic. Videor videre, methinks I see; visus sum audire, methought I heard; mihi visus est dicere, he seemed; Quid tibi videtur? What think you? Si tibi videtur, if you please; videtur fecisse, guilty, &c.*

**INVIDERE** honorem ei, v. honori ejus; ei, vel eum, *to envy.*

**PROVIDERE** & prospicere id, *to foresee; ei, to provide for; in posterum; rei frumentariæ, rem v. de re.*

**SEDERE** ad dextram ejus; in equo, *to ride*; toga bene sedet, *sits*; Sedet hoc animo, *is fixed*, Virg.

**ASSIDERE** ei; Adherbalem, *to sit by*, Sall. Assidet insano, *is near or like to*, Hor.

**DISSIDERE** cum aliquo, *to disagree*.

**INSIDERE** equo, & in equo, *to sit upon*; locum, Liv. in animo, *memoria*, *to be fixed*.

**PRÆSIDERE** urbi, imperio, *to command*, Cic. exercitum, Italiam, Tacit.

**SUPERSEDERE** labore, litibus; pugnae, loqui, *to forbear, to give over*.

**PENDERE** promissis, ab v. ex aliquo, *to depend*; de. ex, ab & in arbore; Opera pendent interrupta, Virg.

**IMPENDET** malum nobis, nos, v. in nos, *threatens*.

**SPENDERE** & despondere filiam alicui, *to betroth*.

**RESPONDERE** domum alicujus sibi, *to be sure of*, Cic. animo & -is, *to promise, to hope*; animum & -os, *to despair*; Liv.

**RESPONDERE** ei, literis ejus, his, ad hæc, ad nomen, *to answer*; votis ejus, *to satisfy his wishes*; ad spem.

**SUADERE** ei pacem, v. de pace; legem, *to speak in favour of*.

**DOLERE** casum ejus; de, ab, ex, in, pro re; dolet mihi cor, v. hoc dolet cordi meo; caput doler a sole.

**VALERE** gratiâ apud aliquem, *to be in favour with one*, lex valet, *is in force*, quid verbum valet, non video, *signifies*; valet decem talenta, *or ostiener talents, is worth*; vale vel, valeas, *farewell*; or ironically, *goodby with you*.

**EMINERE** aliqua re, vel in aliqua re, inter omnes; super cæteris, Liv. super utrumque. Hor. *to be eminent, to excel*; ex aqua, v. aquam, super undas, *to be above*. Imminere alicui, *to hang over, to threaten*; in occasionem, exitio alicujus, *to seek, to watch for*.

**TENERE** promissum; se domi, oppido, castris, sc. in, *to keep*; modum, ordinem, *to observe*; rem, dicta, lectionem, *to understand, to remember*; linguam, *but not sram*,

silentium, se in silentio, *to be silent*; ora, *to keep the countenance fixed*; secundum locum imperii, *to hold*, Nep. jura civium, *to enjoy*, Cic. causam, *to gain*; mare, *to be in the open sea, to hold, to be master of*; terrarum, portum, metam, montes, *to reach*; risum, lachrymas, *to restrain*: se ab accusando, quin accuset, Cic. Ventus tenet, *blows*; teneri legibus, jurejurando, &c. *to be bound by leges tenent eum, bind*; veneri in manifesto furto, *to be seized*; tenet fama, *prevails*.

**ABSTINERE** maledictis, v. a, *to abstain*; publico, *to live retired*, Tacit. animum a scelere, ægrum a cibo, *to keep from*; jus belli ab aliquo, *not to treat rigorously*, Liv. Id ad me, ad religionem, &c. *pertinet, concerns me*; crimen ad te pertinet, Cic. But it is not proper to say, Liber ad me, ad fratrem pertinet, *for mei fratris est, belongs to*; venæ ad vel in omnes corporis partes pertinet, *reaches*.

**SUSTINERE** personam judicis, nomen consularis, *to bear the character*; assensionem, v. se ab assensu, *to withhold assent*; rem in nocentem, *to defer*.

**MANERE** apud aliquem; in castris; ad urbem; in urbe; proposito, sententiâ, in sententia, statu suo, &c. adventum hostium, *to expect*, Liv. promissis, *to stand to, to keep*, Virg. Omnes una manet nax, *awaits*, Horat. Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium & industria, Cic. Munera vobis certa moneant, Virg.

**MERERE** laudem; bene, male de aliquo; stipendia, equo, pedibus, *to serve as a soldier*; iustuarium, *to be beaten to death*.

**HÆRERE** lateri; tergis, v. in terga hostium, Liv. curru, Virg. alicui in visceribus, Cic. Hæret mihi aqua, *I am in doubt*; Vide, ne hæreas, *lest you be at a loss*, Cic.

**ADHÆRERE** & adhærescere justitiæ; ad turrim; in me. Inhærere rei, & in re.

**MOVERE** castra, *to decamp*; bella, *to raise*; aliquem tribu, *to remove a Roman citizen from a more honourable to a less honourable tribe*; e senatu, *to degrade a sena-*

tor; risum vel jocum alicui, to cause laughter; stomachum ei, to trouble, Cic.

**FAVETE** ore, vel lingua, sc. mihi, attend in silence, or abstain from words of a bad omen.

**CAVERE** aliquid, aliquem, vel ab aliquo, to guard against, to avoid; alicui, to provide for, to advise as a lawyer does his client; aliquid alicui, Cic. sibi ab aliquo vel per ali-

quem de re aliqua, to get security on; mihi praedibus & chirographo cautum est, I have got security by bail and bond; veteranis cautum esse volumus, Cic. Cave facias, sc. ne, see you don't do it; mihi cavendum, vel mea cautio est, I must take care.

**CONNIVERE** ad fulgura, Suet. to wink; in hominum sceleribus, to take no notice of, Cic.

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

#### Verbs in IO.

**FACERE** initium, finem, pacem, finem vitae; pacem, amicitiam; testamentum, nomen, fossam, pontem in flumine, in Tiberim, to make; divortium cum uxore, Cic. bellum regi, Nep. se hilarem, to show, Ter. se divitem, miserum, pauperem, to pretend, Cic. aes alienum, v. contrahere, conficere, to contract debt; animos, to encourage; damnum, detrimentum, jacturam, to lose; naufragium, to suffer; sumptum, to spend; gratum alicui, to oblige; gratiam delicti, to pardon a fault; gratiam legis, to dispense with; justa vel funus alicui to perform one's funeral rites; rem, to make an estate; pecuniam, divitias ex metallis; foedus, v. inire, icera, serire, percussore, jungere, sancire, firmare, &c. to make a league; moram alicui, to delay; verba, to speak; audientiam sibi, Cic. negotium, et facessere, to trouble; aliquid missum, to pass over: aliquem missum, to dismiss or excuse; ad aliquid, rarely; alicui, to be fit or useful; ratum, to ratify; planum, to explain; pulam suis, to make known; Nep. stipendium pedibus, v. equo, & merere, to serve in the army; sacra, sacrificium, v. rem divinam, to sacrifice; reum, to impeach; sabbulum, carmen, versus, &c. to write a play, &c. copiam consilii ei, to offer advice; copiam vel potestatem dicendi legatis, to grant leave; fidem, to procure or give credit; periculum, to make trial; potestatem sui, to expose himself; Nep. aliquem loquentem, v. loqui to suppose or represent; Cic. piraticam, sc. rem, to be a pirate; argentarium, medi-

cinam, mercaturam, &c. to be an usurer, a physician, &c. versuram, to contract a new debt, to discharge an old one, to borrow money at great interest, Cic. cum v. ab, aliquo, to side with; contra v. adversus, to oppose; nomen, v. nomina, to borrow money; and also, to settle accounts; i. e. rationes acceptarum, sc. pecuniarum & expensarum inter se conferre; nomen in litura, to write it where something was before, Cic. pedem, v. pedes, to trim the sails, Virg. Fac ita esse, suppose it is so; obvius fieri alicui, to meet; ne longum, v. longa faciam, ut breve faciam, not to be tedious; equus non facit, will not move, Cic. Fac velle, sc. me, suppose me to be willing, Virg. Aen. iv. 540.

**AFFICERE** aliquem laude, honore, praemio, & ignominia, poena, morte, leto, &c. to praise, honour, &c. to disgrace, punish, &c. Affectus aetate, morbo, weakened.

**CONFICERE** bellum, to finish; orationes, to compose; Nep. cibum, to chew; argentum, to raise, to get; also to spend, Cic.; cum aliquo de re, to conclude a bargain; exercitus hostium, v. destroy; alterum, Curiatium, to kill; Liv. Qui stipendiis collectis erant, i. e. emeriti, had served out their time, Cic.

**DEFICERE** animo, to faint; ab aliquo, to revolt; tempus deficit mihi vel me, fails: Defici viribus, ratione, &c. to be deprived of.

**INFICERE** se vitro, to stain; Infectus, part. stained; infectus, adj. not done. Inficior, -atus, -ari, to deny

**OFFICERE** alicui, to hinder or

*hurt*; Diogeni apicanti, *to stand before him and the sun*; auribus, visui, *to stop or obstruct*; Umbra terre soli officinas noctem efficit, Cic.

**PRÆFICERE** aliquem exercitui, *to set over*. Proficere alicui, *to profit, to do good*; in philosophia, & progressu laeere, *to make progress*.

**REIFICERE** muros, templa, mœdes, rates, res, *to repair*; animum, vires, saucios, se, iumenta, *to refresh, to recover*.

**SUFFICERE** laboribus, ictibus, *to be able to bear*; arma v. vires alicui, *to afford*, Valerius in locum Collatini suffectus est, *was substituted*, Liv. Filius patri suffectus, Tacit. Oculos suffecti sanguine & igne, sc. secundum, *having their eyes red and inflamed*, Virg.

**SATISFACERE** alicui, in v. de aliqua re, *to satisf.*; fidei, promisso, *to perform*.

**JACERE** aliquem in præceps; contumelias in eum, *to throw*; fundamenta, & ponere, *to lay*; talos, *to play at dice*; anchoram, *to cast*.

**ADJICERE**, *to add*; oculos alicui rei, *to covet*; animum studiis, *to apply*; sacerdotibus creandis, Liv.

**CONJICERE** se in pedes, v. fugam; cœtera, *to conjecture*.

**INJICERE** manus ei, *to lay on*; spem, ardorem, suspicionem, pivorem, alicui, *to inspire*; admirationem sui cuius ipso aspectu, Nep.

**OBJICERE** se hostibus, in v. ad omnes casus, *to oppose or expose*: crimen ei, *to lay to one's charge*.

**REJICERE** tela in hostes, *to throw back*; iudices, mela, *to reject*; rem ad senatum, Roman, *to refer*; rem ad Idus Febr., Cic.

**SUBJICERE**, ova gallinæ, *to set an hen*; se imperio alicujus, *to submit*; testamenta, *to forge*; testes, *to suborn*; partes v. species generibus, ex quibus emanant, *to put or class under*; aliquid ei, *to suggest*; libellum ei, i. e. in manus dare: odio civium, *to expose*; bona Pompeii v. fortunas hastæ vel voci & sub voce præconis, *to expose to public sale*, Cic. sub hasta venire *to be sold*, Liv.

**TRAJICERE** copias v. exercitum,

fluvium, Hellespontum, vel trans flavium, *to transport*; Marius cum parva navicula in Africam trajectus est, *passed or sailed over*. Trajectus ferro, *pierced*.

**CAPERE** conjecturam, consilium, dolorem, sagam, specimen, spem, sedem, &c. *to guess, consult, grievè, fly, essay, hope, sit, &c.* augurium, v. auspiciam, & agere, *to take an omen*: exemplum de aliquo: locum castris; terram, *to alight*: insulam, summam, sc. loca, *to reach*: spolia ex nobilitate, *to gain*, Sall. de republica nihil præter gloriam, Nep. magistratum, *to receive or enjoy*: virginem Vestalem, *to choose*: animentiam, spiritum, superbiam alicujus, *to bear, to contain*: aliquem, consilio, perfidiam, *to catch*: nec te Troja capit, Virg. Edes vix nos capiunt, *the house hardly contains us*. Altero oculo capitur, *blind of one eye*: capitur locis, *he is delighted with*, Virg.

**ACCIPERE** pecuniam, vulnus claudem, injuriam ab aliquo, *to receive*: Orbis terrarum divitiis accipere nolo pro patriæ caritate, Nep. binas literas eodem exemplo, *two copies of the same letter*, Cic. clamorem de Socrate, *to hear*: id in bonam partem, *to take in good part, to understand in a good sense*: omnia ad contumeliam, aliter, aliorum, ac, atque, Ter rudem v. rude donari, *to be discharged as a gladiator*: aliquem bene, v. male, *to treat*: cum male acceptum in Midiam hiermatum coegit redire, *roughly handled*, Nep. rogationem, *to approve the bill*: nomen, i. e. ad pretenam ad mittere, *to allow to stand candidate*; omen, *to esteem good*; satisfactionem, v. excusationem, Cæs. Acceptus plebi, apud plebem, popular.

**CONCIPERE** verba juramenti, *to prescribe the form of an oath*; conceptis verbis jurare: inimicitias cum aliquo, *to bear enmity to one*: aquam, *to gather*, *to form the head of an aqueduct*, Frontinus.

**EXCIPERE** eum hospitio, *to entertain*: fugientes, *to catch*; extremum spiritum cognatorum; sanguinem puterâ, *to keep or gather*; notis, & scribere, *to write in short hand*; mo-

tas futuros, *to foresee*; *Flos homines excipio, I except*; *virtutem excipit immortalitas*; *turbulentior annus excipit, succeeded*; *sic excipit regia Juno, replied, Virg.*

**INCIPERE**, occipere, *to begin*. *Pericipere fructus, to reap.*

**PRÆCIPERE** futura, *to foresee*; *gaudia, spem victoriæ, to anticipate*; *pecuniam mutuanam, to take before the time, Cæs. lac, to dry up, Virg. alicui id, v. de eu re, to order*; *artem ei, to teach.*

**RECIPERE** aliquid, *to receive*; *urbem, to recover*; *eum tectis, to entertain*; *se v. pedem, to retreat*; *se domum, to return*; *se, mentem, animam, to come to one's self again, to recover spirits*; *in se, to take charge*; *alicui, to promise*; *se ad frugem, to amend*; *senem sossium, to give a seat to, Cic.*

**RAPERE** vel trahere in pejorem partem, *to take a thing in the worst sense*; *in jus, to bring before a judge*; *partes inter se, to share*; *Liv. Subdivum, to reveal, Horat.*

**UO.**

**EXUERE** vestes sibi, *se vestibus*; *jugum sibi, se jugo, to cast off*; *fidem, sacramentum, to break*; *mentem, to change, Virg. hostem castris, to beat from.*

**RUERE** ad interitum, in ferrum: *cæteros, Ter. spumas, to drive or toss, Virg.*

**LUERE** poenas capitis, *to suffer*; *res alienum, to pay, Curt. culpam suam vel alterius, morte, sanguine, to expiate, to atone, or suffer for.*

**FLUERE** amicitias remissione usûs, *to drop gradually, Cic.*

**STATUERE** stipendium iis de publico, *to appoint*; *exemplum in hominem, vel -ne, to make one a public example*; *aliquem, capite in terram, to set or place, Ter.*

**CONSTITUERE** coloniam, *to settle*; *agmen paulisper, to make to stop or halt*; *Sall. in digitis, to count on one's fingers, Cic. urbem, to build, Ovid. Is hodie venturum ad me constituit domum, appointed, resolved, Ter. Si utilitas amicitiam constituit, tollet eadem, makes, constitutes. Cic. Corpus bene constitutum, a good constitution, Id.*

**DESTITUERE** aliquem, *to forsake*;

*spem, to deceive*; *propositum, to give over, Ovid deos pactâ mercede, to defraud, Hor.*

**INSTITUERE** aliquem secundum hæredem filio, *to appoint, Cic. collegum laborum, sacra, to institute, to found, Plin. aliquem doctrinâ Græcis literis, to instruct*; *naves, to build, Cæs. sermonem, to enter upon*; *Id. animum ad cogitandum, to settle*; *antequam pro Mucena dicere instituo, I begin, Cic.*

**PRÆSTITUERE** petitori, *qua actione illam uti oporteat, to prescribe to the prosecutor, what form of process he should use, Cic. tempus ei, to determine.*

**RESTITUERE** exules; *virginem suis, to restore*; *oppida vicosque, to repair*; *aciem inclinatum, to rally*; *prælium, to renew, Liv.*

**SUBSTITUERE** aliquem in locum ejus, *to restore, to substitute or put in the place of, Cic.*

**STRUERE** epulas, *to prepare*; *insidias, mendacium, to contrive*; *odium, crimen alicui, vel in aliquem, to raise against*

**BO**

**SCRIBERE** sua mânu, bene, velociter, *epistolam alicui, v. ad aliquem*; *bellum, v. de bello*; *milites, to enlist*; *supplementum militibus, to recruit them*; *hæredem to make one his heir*; *dicam ei, to raise an action against one*; *nummos, to give a bill of exchange*; *de rebus suis scribi cupivit, Cic. Decemvir legibus scribendis, Liv.*

**ASCRIBERE** aliquem civitati, in civitatem, *v. -e, to make free.*

**DESCRIBERE** aliquem, *to describe and not to name*; *partes Italiæ, pecuniam, populum ordinibus, to distribute, to divide*; *vectigal civitatibus, i. e. imperare*; *jura, i. e. dare v. constituere*; *ensores binos in singulas civitates, i. e. facere, Cic.*

**INSCRIBERE** literas alicui, *to correct a letter*; *librum, to entitle, or name*; *sedes mercede, to put a ticket on one's house to let, Ter.*

**PROSCRIBERE** bona alienjus, *sedes suas, auctionem, to publish to be sold, to set to sale*; *aliquem, to banish or outlaw.*

**RESCRIBERE** alienjus literis *v. ad literas, alicui ad aliquem, to write an*



anncer; pecuniam, to pay money by bill; legionem ad equum, to set foot soldiers on horseback, Cæs.

SUBSCRIBERE exemplum literarum, to write below; causam, to join or take part in an accusation; Cæsaris iræ, to favour, Ovid.

## CO.

DICERE aliquid, v. de aliqua re, ex aliquo loco, alicui, ad v. apud aliquem; in aliquem, against; ad aliquem, in answer to; sententiam, to give an opinion; jus, to administer justice, to pronounce sentence; multam ei, to amerce or fine; diem ei, to appoint a day for his trial before the people; prodicere, to put it off; causam, to plead; testimonium, to give evidence; non idem, loqui est ac dicere, to harangue; Cic. sacramento, seldom sacramentum, to take the military oath.

ADDICERE aliquid ei, to call out at an auction, to sell; servituti, v. in servitutum; to sentence or adjudge to bondage; bona, to give up the goods of the debtor to the creditor; se alicui, to devote himself to one's service; aves non addixerunt, v. abdixerunt, the birds did not give a favourable omen; pretio addictam habere fidem, to be corrupt, Cic.

CONDICERE operam alicui, to promise assistance; coenam alicui, v. ad coenam, to purpose supping with one without invitation.

EDICERE alicui, to order; delectum, to appoint a levy; prædam militibus, to promise by an edict; justitium, diem comitiis, vel comitia consulis creandis, to appoint.

INDICERE bellum, justitium, to proclaim war; legem tibi, to appoint, Cic. coetus in domos tribunorum, to summon, Liv. indicare, to show; Indictus, an adj. not said; causâ indictâ, v. non cognitâ condemnari, to be condemned without being heard; me indicente, hæc non sunt, not telling, Ter.

INTERDICERE alicui, aliquid v. aliqua re; sœminis usus purpureæ, to forbid, or debar from; ei aquâ & igne, v. aquam et ignem, to banish; male rem gerentibus bonis paternis interdici solet, Cic. interdici non poterat socero gener, discharged the company of, Nep.

PRÆDICARE alicui aliquid, de aliqua re, id in hac re, to foretell, to forewarn.

DUCERE in carcerem v. vincula, to lead; exercitum, to command; spiritum, animam, vitam, to breathe, to live; solum, murum, sulcum, to make or draw; bellum, to prolong, also to carry on, Virg. ætatem, diem, to spend; uxorem, to take a wife; in jus, to summon before a judge; aliquem, & vultura alicujus, ære, ex ære, de auro, marmore, &c. to make a statue; genus, nomen ab v. ex aliquo, to derive; omnia pro nihilo, infra se; id laudi, laudem, v. in laudem, ostener the first, to reckon it a praise to him; in concipientiam, to impute to a consciousness of guilt; in gloria, Plin. in crimen, Tacit. centesimas, sc. usuras, vel. soenus centesimis, to compute interest at one for the hundred a month, or at 12 per cent. per annum; banis centesimis fœnerari, to take 24 per cent. per annum, Cic. ducere, longas voces in fietum, to draw out, Virg. ordines, to be a centurion, Liv. illa, to pant like a broken-winded horse, Hor.

ADDUCERE aliquem in judicium, arbitrium meum, to bring to a trial; in suspicionem regi, Nep. arcum, to draw in; habenas, to straiten the reins.

CONDUCERE aliquem ex loco, to convey; navem, domum, equos, to hire; columnam faciendam, to engage to make at a certain price; Conducit hoc tum laudi; in v. ad rem, is of advantage.

DEDUCERE naves, to launch; classem in prælium, to bring, Nep. equites, to make to alight, Liv. eum domum, to accompany, to carry home; de sententia, Cic. coloniam, to transplant; lacum, to drain.

EDUCERE gladium e vagina, to draw; florem Italie, to lead out; copias in aciem, Cic. filium, to educate, ostener educare; in astra, to extol, Hor. celo, Virg.

INDUCERE tenebras clarissimis rebus, to bring on, Cic. animum, v. in animum, to persuade himself; seuta pedibus, to cover, Cæs. soleas pedibus, v. in pedes, to put on; colorem picturæ, to varnish, Plin.

nomina, *to cancel or raise, to rub out.*

**ODUCERE** exercitum, *to lead against; callum dolori, to blunt it; sepulchrum sensibus, to cover.*

**REVERERE** aliquem in: memoriam alicujus, *vel alicui aliquid in memoriam;* *to bring back to one's remembrance;* in gratiam cum aliquo, *to reconcile;* Vallis reducta, *retired or low.*

**PRODUCERE** testes, *to bring out;* funus, *to attend;* sermonem in noctem, *to prolong, to continue;* rem in hiemem, *to defer;* servos vendendos, *to bring to market.*

**SUBDUCERE** se a custodibus, *to steal away;* naves, *to draw up on shore;* cibum ei & deducere, *to take from;* summam, rationes, *to reckon, to cast up accounts.*

**PARCERE** sibi, labore, *to spare, &c. a caedibus, to forbear;* aurum nativis, Virg.

**ASSUESCERE** rei alicui, v. re aliqua, in v. ad hoc, *to be accustomed;* mentem pluribus & assuefacere, Hor. Animis bella, Virg. *to accustom.* So, insuesco rei v. re; insuevit hoc me pater, Hor.

**SCISCERE** legem, *to vote, to decree;* hence plebiscitum.

**ASCISCERE** regium nomen, *to assume;* socios sibi, ad societatem sceleris, *to associate;* ritus peregrinos, *to adopt.*

**CONSCISCERE** mortem v. necem sibi, *to kill one's self;* fugam sibi, *to flee,* Liv.

**DISCERE** aliquid ab aliquo, v. apud aliquem, ex aliqua re, *or without ex;* Dedicere, *to forget what he hath learned;* Ediscere, *to get by heart.*

**DESCENDERE** de palatio, presidio, sedibus; in forum, curiam, campum; ad accusandum, ad omnia, ad extrema, *to have recourse to,* Cic.

**DO.**

**LUDERE** aleam, v. -am, *to play at dice;* par impar, *at even and odd;* operam, *to lose one's labour.*

**ALLUDERE** alicui, ad aliquem; Colludere ei, cum eo; illudere ei, eum, in eum, in eo; id, *to mock.*

**EVADERE** insidias, -iis, vel ex, *to escape;* in muro, *to mount;* Hæc quorsum evadant, nescio, *to what*

*they will turn out;* Oturus evasit, *became*

**CEDERE** multa multis de suo jure, Cic. Bona creditoribus, *to yield, whence cessio bonorum;* alicui loco, de, a, ex loco, v. locum, *to give place;* vitam, e vita decedere, *to die;* loco, *to turn bankrupt;* Hæreditas cedit mihi, *falls to;* Cedit in proverbium, *becomes.*

**ACCEDERE** oppidum, -do, ad v. in oppidum, *to approach;* ad conditiones *to agree to;* Ciceroni, sententiæ, v. ad sententiam ejus, *to agree with;* ad Ciceronem, *to go to;* ad rempublicam, *to bear the questorship, or the first public office;* ad amicitium Philippi, *to gain the friendship of,* Nep. Ad hæc mala hoc mihi accedit etiam, *added,* Ter. Robur accessit senati, Cic. Animi accessere hosti, Liv. Ad corporis firmitatem plura animi bona accesserant, Nep. Accedit plurimum pretio; huc, ed, *accedit quod, is added.*

**ANTECEDERE** alicui rei; aliquem, *rarely alicui, to excel.*

**CONCEDERE** ei aliquid & de aliquo; paulum de suo jure; tempus ad rem, *to grant;* ab oculis, ad dextram, in exilium, in hiberna, *to retire, to go;* fato, naturæ, vitam, *to die;* in sententiam ejus, *to come into one's measures;* in conditiones, *to agree to;* Liv.

**DISCEDERE** transversum, & latum unguem, v. digitum a re, *to depart in the least.*

**INTERCEDERE** legi, *to give a negative against, to oppose a law;* pecuniam pro aliquo, *to become surety;* Intercedit mihi tecum amicitia vel inter nos, *there is, &c.*

**SUCCEEDERE** ei, in locum ejus, *to succeed;* muro, v. murum; ad urbem; sub primam aetatem; in pugnam, *to come to.*

**CADERE** altè, ab alto, in terram, *to fall;* causâ, formulâ, in iudicio, & item perdere, *to lose one's cause, to be cast;* in v. sub sensum, oculos, potentatem, &c. in morbum, & incidere, Cic. Non cadit in virum bonum mentiri, *is incapable of,* Cic. Homini lacrymæ cadunt, quasi puero, gaudio, Ter.

**ACCIDERE** genibus, v. ad genus,

to fall at; auribus v ad aures, to come to; alicui, cusi, proter opinionem, to happen; accidit in te inud verbum, applies, Ter.

TENDERE vela, to stretch; insidias, retia, plagas, &c to lay snares; arum, to bend; iter, cursum, to direct; ad nitiora, in coelum, to aim at; extra vallum, sc. tabernaculum, to pitch a tent; Manibus tendit divellere nodos, tries, Virg.

ATTENDO te, Cic. tibi, Plin de hac re, ad hanc rem, to take heed; animum ad rem; res hostium, Sall.

CONTENDERE nervos, omnibus nervis, to exert one's self; aliquid ab aliquo, to ask earnestly; inter se; amori, poet. for cum amore, to strive; causas, sc inter se, to compare; Cic Aliquid ad aliquid, cum aliquo, & alicui.

COMPREHENDERE naturam rerum, to understand; rem pluribus & luculentioribus verbis, to express; aliquem humanitate, amicitia, to gain; rem fictam, to discover.

INTENDERE animum rei, ad v. in rem, to apply; latendi animo in rem, Liv. Vocem, nervos to exert; arcum, to bend; actionem, v. litem alicui r. in aliquem, also impingere, to raise a law suit against one; telum ei, v. in eum, to shoot at; manum v. digitum in aliquid, to point at; in aliquo, sc. ire, to go to; officia, to attend, to do more than is required, Sall.

OBTENDERE velum rei, v. rem velo, to cover, to veil.

PENDERE pecuniam, to pay; poena, to suffer; id parvi, to value it little.

SUSPENDERE aliquem arbori, de, in, v. ex arbore, to hang; expectatione, vel suspensum delinere, to keep in suspense; edificium, to arch a house; naao adunco, to smear at, Horat.

ABDERE se literis, in literas, to hide, or shut up one's self among books; se domum, rus, &c. domo, Virg in silvas, tenebrat, &c.

CONDERE urbem, to build; fructus, to lay up; in carcerem, to imprison; carmen, to compose; lumina, to close; Ov. Jura, to establish;

terra, sepulchro, in sepulchro, to bury.

DEDERE se alicui, in ditionem alicujus, ad aliquem, to surrender; Deditus preceptori, & studiis, fond of; vino epuisque, engaged in, Nep. dedit opera, on purpose.

EDERE librum, & in lucem, to publish; ovum, to lay; sonos, cantus, risus, gemitus, questus, hinnitum, pugnam, stragem, to sound, sing, &c. munus gladiatorum, to exhibit a show of gladiators; nomen to mention; laetus, to bring forth; extremum spiritum, to die; exempla cruciatu: in aliquem, to inflict exemplary torture.

OSDERE pessulum foribus, to bolt the door

PROMERE arcem hostibus, to betray; aliquid posteris, v. memoris, to hand down; genus ab aliquo, to derive; flammam, interregem, to appoint; aliquot dies nuptiis, to put off; Ter. exemplum, to give to posterity, Liv.

REDDERE animum, se sibi, to revive; animam v. vitam, to die; Latinè, verbum verbo, to translate; matrem, i. e. referre, to resemble; epistolam alicui, to deliver.

SUADERE calcar equo, to spur; spiritus alicui, to encourage.

CREDERE rem; homini, to believe; aliquid alicui, to trust; pecuniam ei per syngrapham, to lend on bond or bill; rumoribus credi non oportet; itaque crede, si, &c. I suppose, Cic.

FUNDERE aquam, to pour out; hostes, to rout.

EFFUNDERE fruges, copiam oratorum, to produce; ararium, to spend; odium, i. e. diiungere, to drop; gratiam collectam, i. e. perdere: omnia, quæ tacuerat, to tell.

GO.

JUNGERE se cum aliquo, alicui, & ad aliquem, dextram dextræ: equos curru; amnem ponte, to make a bridge

ADJUNGERE accessionem sedibus, to build an addition to one's house; animum ad studia, to apply.

STRINGERE cultum, gladium, ense, to draw; frondes, to lop off; glandes, baccas, to beat down; rem;

to waste one's fortune, Hor. *littus*, to touch, to brush or graze upon, Virg.

**TANGERE** rem acu, to hit the nail on the head.

**ATINGERE** Britanniam navibus, to reach; reges, res summas, to mention, Nep. Aliquem cognatione, affinitate, to be related to: forum, to reach manhood, Cic. Res non te attingit, concernis.

**FINGERE** orationem, to polish; oratorem, to form; se ad arbitrium alterius, to adopt: Vultus a mente fingitur, lingua fingit vocem, Cic. Sui cuique mores fingant fortunam, Nep.

**FRANGERE** navem, to break; navem, to suffer shipwreck; foedus, fidem, to violate; sententiam ejus, to refute, Cic. hostem, to subdue.

**AGERE** gratias, to give thanks; vitam, to live; praedas, to plunder: *fabulam*, to act a play; triumphum de aliquo, ex aliqua re, to triumph; *nugas*, to trifle; *ambages*, to beat about the bush; *stationem*, *custodiam orbis*, to be on guard; *rimas*, to chink, to leak, to be rent; *causam*, to plead; *de re*, to speak; *radices*, to take root; *cuniculos*, to undermine; *undam*, to raise a steam; *sinuam*, to be at the lost gasp; *alias res*, to be inattentive; *festum diem*, *nutalem*, *serias*, &c. to keep, to observe: *actum*, v. rem actam, to labour in vain; *censum*, & *habere*, to make a review of the people, their estates, &c. *forum*, to hold a court to try causes; *lege* in aliquem, & *cum* aliquo, to go to law with one; hence actor a plaintiff; in hereditatem, to claim; *cum populo*, to treat with, to lay before; *decimum aetatis annum*, he is ten years old; *id agitur*, that is the question; *libertas agitur*, v. de libertate, is at stake; *actum est de libertate*, is lost; *actum est, illicet*, all is over; *actum est de pace*, was treated about; *cum illo bene actum est*, he has been lucky, or well used; *hoc ago*, mind what you are about; *Civitas laeta agere*, for erat, Shall.

**ADIGERE** milites sacramento, ad r. in iusjurandum, in sua verba, per iusjurandum, to force to enlist; ar-

bitrum, i. e. age e v. cogere aliquem ad arbitrum, to force to submit to an arbitration, Cic.

**COGERE** copias, to bring together; ad militiam, to force to enlist; *senatum*, to assemble; in *senatum*, sc. *minis pignoribus captis*, &c. to force to attend; *agmen*, to rally, to bring up; *lac*, to curdle; *jus civile diffusum & dissipatum*, in certa genera cogere, to digest, to arrange.

**EXIGERE** foras, to drive out, to divorce; aliquid ab aliquo, to require: *sarta tecta*, sc. et, i. e. *sarta et tecta*, ut sint bene reparata to require that the public works be kept in good reparation; Cic. *suppliciam*, de aliquo, to inflict; *sua nomina*, to demand or call in one's debts; *avvum*, *vitam*, *annos*, to spend; aliquid ad normam, to try or examine; *calumniam ad perpendicularum*, to apply the plummet, to see if it be straight; *monumentum*, to finish, Hor. *tempus & modum*, to settle, Virg. *comœdiam*, to disapprove, to hiss of. Ter.

**REDIGERE** aliquid in memoria alicujus, to bring back; *pecuniam ex bonis venditis*, to raise money; *hostes sub imperium*, to reduce.

**LEGERE** oram, *littus*, to coast along; *vela*, to furl the sails; *hilitum*, to catch one's breath; *militem*, to enlist; aliquid in senatum in Patres, to choose; *sacra*, to steal, to commit sacrilege. Hor.

#### HO.

**TRAHERE** obsidionem, bellum, to prolong; *purpuras*, to spin; aliquid in religionem, to scruple; *navem remulco*, to tow.

**DETRAHERE** aliquem, to draw down; *alicui vel de aliquo*, de fama, to detract from, to lessen one's fame; *aliquid alicui*, to take by force; *laudem*, v. de laudibus: *novem partes multæ*, to take from the fine, Nep.

**EXTRAHERE** diem, to spin out, to spend; *certuven*, bellum, *judicium*, to prolong.

**VEHERE**, *vehens*, *invehens*, *invectus*, *curru*, *quadrigis*, &c. riding in a chariot; *invehi in portum ex alto*, to enter; in aliquem, to inveigh against; *provehi longias*, to proceed too far.

## LO.

**CONSULERE** rem, v. de re, *to consult about*; eum, *to ask his advice*; e i. *to consult for his good*; de salute sua; *gravius in aliquem, to pass a severe sentence against*; in commune, publicum, medium; *to provide for the common good*; verba boni, *to take in good part*; ego consultor, *my advice is asked*; mihi consultatur, *my good is consulted*; mihi consulum ac provisum est, *for a me, I have taken care*, Cic.

**APPELLERE** classe in Italiam, *vel classem, to land on*; se aliqūd, Ter. *ad villam nostram navis appelletur*, Cic. *animum ad philosophiam, to apply*.

**ANTECELLERE** ei, *rarely sum: excellere aliis, super, inter, præter alios aliqua re, v. in re, to excel*.

**TOLLERE** animos suos, *to take courage*; animos alicui, *to encourage*; aliquem laudibus, & laudes ejus in astra, *to extol*; inducias, *to break a truce*; clamores, *to cry*; filium, *to educate*; de vel e medio, *to kill*.

## MO.

**ADIMERE** claves uxori, *to divorce*; annulum v. equam equiti, *to take away from a knight the ring or horse given him by the public, to degrade*.

**DIMINERE** litem, controversiam, *to determine*.

**EXIMERE** aliquem servitio, noxæ e vinculis, & culpa, de numero prescriptorum, obsidione, *to free*; de dolio, *to draw out*; diem dicendo, *to waste in speaking*.

**INTRIMERE** se, *to kill*.

**REDIMERE** captivos, *to ransom*; pecuniam de censibus, *to take or farm the public pastures*.

**SUMERE** in manus; diem, tempus ad deliberandum; exemplum ex, v. de eo, *to take*; poenas, supplicium de aliquo, *to punish*; pecunias mutuas, *to borrow*; togam vilicem, *to put on the dress of a man*; sibi inimicitias, *to get ill will*; operam in re, vel in rem insumere, *to bestow pains*; sumo tantum, vel hoc mihi, *I take this upon me*.

**PREMERE** esseum, *to make cheese*; vocem, *to be silent*; dolorem corde, *to conceal*; vestigia e-

jus, *to follow*; litus, *to come near*; pollicem, *to save a gladiator*; librum in nonum annum, *to delay publishing*, Hor.

**EXPRIMERE** succum, *to press out*; risum alicui; pecuniam ab aliquo, *to force from*; effugium, *to draw to the life*; verbum verbo, de verbo, e verbo, ad verbum, de Græcis, &c. *to translate word for word*.

**IMPRIMERE** aliquid animo, in animo, v. in animum, *to imprint*.

**REPRIMERE** se, & reprehendere o. retinere, *to check*.

## NO.

**PONERE** spem in homine v. re, & habere; castra, *to pitch*; vitem, *to plant*; vitam, *to die*; ova, *to lay*; insidias alicui; panem convivis, *not ante*; personam amici, *to lay aside the character of a friend*; præmia, *to propose*; pocula, *to stake or lay*; studium, tempus, multum operæ in aliqua re, *to employ, to bestow*; aliquid in laude, in virtus, in loco beneficii, *to reckon*; ferocia corda, *to lay aside*; aliquem in gratiam v. gratia, i.e. efficere gratiosum apud alterum, Cic.: ventos, *to calm*: hominem coloribus, saxo, *to paint*: engrave, Hor. pecuniam in senore, *to lay out at interest*: tetra, *to build*, Virg. Venti posuere, *are hush'd*, Virg. Pon esse victum eum, Ter. Positum sit, *suppose, grant*, Cic.

**COMPONERE** carmen, literas, &c. *to compose*: lites, *to settle*: bellum, *to finish by treaty*: parva magnis, dicta cum factis, *to compare*: manus manibus, *to join*, Virg.

**DEPONERE** v. ponere togam prætextam, *to lay aside the dress of a boy*: imperium & demittere, *to lay down a command*.

**EXPONERE** rem, *to set forth or explain*: trumentum, *to expose to sale*, Cic. pueros, foetus, *to leave to perish*, Liv. exercitum, sc. in terram, *to land*.

**IMPOSERE** onus alicui v. in aliquem: aliquem in equum, *to set upon*: personam v. partes duriores ei, *to lay a task or duty on one*: alicui, *to impose on, to deceive*, Nep. honorem ei, *to confer*: vadimonium ei, *to force to give bail*: Nep. manum summam v. extremam rei alicui, in aliqua re, *to finish*: potem flu-

mini, *to make a bridge*, Curt. Hoc loco libet interponere, *to insert*, Nep.

OPPONERE se periculis & ad periculum, *to expose*: pignori, *to pledge*: munus fronti, ante oculos, *to put*, Ovid.

PROFONERE aliquid sibi facere, exempla ei ad imitandum, *to propose*, *to set before*: edicta, legem in proficium, i. e. publicè legenda effigere: congiarium, *to promise a largess*, a gift of corn or money.

SUPPONERE ova gallinæ, *to set a hen*: testamentum, v. subjicere, *to forge*.

CANERE aliquem, *to praise*: signa, classicum, bellicum, i. e. ad arma conclamare, *to sound an alarm*, *to give the signal for battle*: receptui, rarely uno, *to sound a retreat*: tibia, *to play on the pipe*: ad tibiam, *to sing to it*: palinodiam, *to utter a recantation*.

STERNERE lectos, *to spread or cover the couches*: equos, *to harness*: viam, *to pave*: squora, *to calm*, Virg.

PO.

CARPERE agmen, *to cut off the rear*: somnos, quietem, *to sleep*: viam, iter, *to go*, Virg. opera alienus, *to censure*: labores, virtutes, *to diminish or obscure*, Hor.

RUMPERE fidem, foedus, amicitiam, *to violate*: vocem v. silentium, *to speak*, Virg.

ERUMPERE ex tenebris, castris, &c. se portis, *to break out*; stomachium in aliquem, *to vent passion*; nubem, *to break*, Virg.

RO.

QUERERE bonum, gratiam sibi, *to seek or gain*, Cic. sermonem, *to beat about for conversation*, Ter. rem mercaturis faciendis, *to make a fortune by merchandise*; ex aliquo; & in aliquem, *de re aliqua per tormenta, to put to the rack*: in dominum de servo quaeri noluerunt Romani, Cic.

INQUIRERE aliquid, *to search after*: aliquem capitis, v. -te, *to accuse or try for a capital crime*.

GERERE res, *to perform*; negotium, malè, *to manage*; consulum, *to bear to manage*; se bene vel malè, *to behave*; exercitum,

*to conduct*, Sall. st. moiem ei, vel morigerari, *to humour*; civem, se pro cive, personam alienam, *to pass for, to bear the character of*; inimicitias vel amicitiam cum aliquo, *to be at enmity or variance with*.

INGERERE convicia ei, in eum, *to inveigh against*.

SUGGERERE aliquid ei, *to suggest*, *to hint*; sumptus his rebus, *to supply or afford*: idoratum Bruto, *to choose in place of, to put after*, Liv.

SERERE crimina in eum, *to raise, to spread accusations*.

CONSERERE manus, manu, certamen, pugnam, eum hostibus, inter se, *to engage*.

ASSEVERARE aliquid *to affirm*; aliquem manu, ab injuria, in libertatem, *to free*; in servitatem, *to reduce*; divinam majestatem, *to claim*.

TO.

PETERE aliquid alicui; id ab eo rarely eum; in beneficii gratiaque loco, Cic. *to ask*; urbem Romam, murum, montes, *to go to, to make for*; aliquem sagittâ, lapide, *to aim at*; consulum poenas ab aliquo, *to punish*.

COMPETERE animo, *to be in one's senses*; in eum competit actio, *an action lies against him*, Cic.

REPETERE res, *to demand restitution*; bona lege, v. *prosequi lite, to recover by law*; castra, oppidum, huc, *to return to*; aliquid memoriæ, *to call to mind*; aliè, *to trace from the beginning*. Mihi nihil suppetit, multa suppetunt, *I have*; si vita suppetet, *if life shall remain*, Cic.

MITTERE alicui, v. ad aliquem; in suffragia, *to send the people to vote*; auleum, mappam, *to drop the curtain*; alios, *to throw the dice*; senatum, *to dismiss*; timorem, *to lay aside*; in acta, *to register, to record*; sanguinem, vel emittere, *to let blood*; noxam, *to forgive*; signa timoris, *to shew*; vocem, *to utter, to speak*; habenas, v. *remittere, to slacken*; manu et emittere, *to free a slave*; filium emancipare, *to free a son from the power of his father*; sub jugum, *to make to pass under the yoke*; inferias manibus diis, *to sacrifice to the infernal gods*; rem, v. de re, *to omit*; mitto rem, *I say nothing*.

of fortune. Ter. in possessionem bonorum, to give the possession of the debtor's effects; misti orare, ut vepirem; i. e. aliquem ad orandum, Ter.

AMITTERE litem, v. causam: vitam, sidem, lumina, aspectum, to lose, Cic

ADMITTERE in cubiculum, to admit; equum immittere, & permittere, to gallop; delictum in se, to commit a fault; aves non admiserunt, have not given a favourable omen. Liv.

COMMITTERE facinus, to commit; se alicui, v. in fidem alicujus, to entrust; paelium, to engage; exercitum pugnare, rem in casum ancipitis evenus praestare, to risk a battle, Liv. iv. 27. aliquem cum aliquo, homines inter se, to set at variance, or by the ears; rem eo, to bring to that pass; gladiatores, pugiles, Græcos cum Latinis to match or pair; committere, ut, to cause; incommoda sua legibus & judiciis, to seek redress by law

COMPROMITTERE. Candidati compromiserunt, H. S. quingentis in singulos apud M. Catonem depositis, petere ejus arbitrata, ut qui contra fecisset, ab eo condemnaretur, made a compromise or agreement, &c.

DISMITTERE exercitum, to disband; exorem, & repudiare, nuntium d. repudiam ad eam remittere, to divorce.

PROMITTERE id ei, to promise; capillum, barbam, to let grow, Liv.

PERMITTERE alicui, to allow; divi cætera, to leave. Horat se in fidem n. fidei ejus; vela ventis; equum in hostem: rem suffragiis populi, to let the people decide; tribunatum vendendis consulibus, to give up, to employ, Liv.

REMITTERE animum, to ease; calces, tela, to throw back: ex pecunia, de supplicio, tributo, &c. to abate; debitum, iras alicui, to give up, to forgive; justiciam, to discontinue; pugnam, to slacken; remittit, explorare, neglects. Sallust.

SUBMITTERE fasces populo, to lower; se d. animum, to submit, to humble; percussores alicui, to suborn assassins.

TRANSMITTERE in Africam, neut. to pass over.

VERTERE in fugam, to put to flight; terga, to fly; in imo, to overthrow; solum, to go into banishment; id ei vitio, v. crimini, & in crimes, to blame; in superbiam, to impute; Platonem, Latine Græca, Græca vel ex Græcis in Latinum, to translate; pollicem, to doom a gladiator to death by turning up the thumb; terram, to plough; crateram, to empty, Virg. Sulum, to correct; Horat. Salus vel causa in eo vertitur, depends; fortuna verterat, Liv. Annus vertens, a whole year, Nep. Res bene vertat, Di bene vertant, prosper

ANIMADVERTERE id, to observe; in enim verberibus, morte, &c. to punish.

ADVERTERE agmen urbi, to bring up to. Virg. oras, to arrive at; aures, mentes, animum, v. animo ad aliquid, monitis, to attend to; in aliquem, oftener animadvertere, to punish

ANTEVERTERE, ei, to come before; damnationem veneno, to prevent; rem rei, to prefer, Plaut.

INTERVERTERE pecuniam alicujus, & alicquem pecunia, to embezzle, to cheat; candelabrum, to steal, to pilfer; promissum & receptum, sc. Dolobellæ consulatum, intervertit, ad seque transtulit, treacherously withheld, Cic.

PRÆVERTERE, & -i, dep. ventos cursu, to outstrip; desiderium plebis, to prevent; metum supplicii morte voluntaria. Liv. Aliquid alicui rei, to put before, id

SISTERE vadimonium; se in judicio, to appear in court at one's trial; nec susti posse, nor could the state be saved; Liv

ASSISTERE, ei, to stand by; ad fores; contra, super eum.

CONSISTERE in digitis, to stand on tiptoe; in anchoris, ad anchoram, to ride at anchor; frigore, to be frozen; Ovid. Spes in velis consistebat, depended on; virtus in actione consistit, Cic.

INSISTERE jacentibus, to stand upon; vestigiis ejus; viam, v. viâ; in re aliqua, in rem, v. rei; in

dolos, negotium, Plaut. *to insist upon, to urge.*

OBSTITERE ei, *to stop, to oppose.*

RESISTERE ei, *to resist.*

SUBSISTERE, *to stand still; sumptui, to bear.*

VO.

SOLVERE pecuniam ei, *to pay; versurâ, to pay a debt by borrowing from another, Ter. Fidem, to break a promise, or according to others, to perform, Ter. And IV. 1. 19. litem aestimatam, to pay the fine imposed on him, Nep. Votum, to discharge;*

obsidionem urbis, v. urbem obsidione, *to raise a siege; navem e portu, to set sail; epistolam, v. resignare, to break open; aliquem legibus, legum vinculis, to free from; solvitur in somnos, Virg. Oratio soluta, i. e. libera, numeris non stricta & devicta, prose; solve metus, dismiss, Virg.*

DISSOLVERE societatem, *to break.*

RESOLVERE vocem, v. ora, *to break silence, Virg. jura, to violate; vectigal, to take off taxes, Tacit. In pulverem, to reduce to.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

AUDIRE aliquem, aliquid ex v. ab aliquo, *to hear from one; de aliquo, about one, also from one, as, sæpe hoc audiui de patre, for ex patre, Cic. Audire bene v. malè apud socios, ab omnibus, to be well spoken of, to have a good character; rexque paterque audisti, have been called, Hor. Antigonus credit de suo adventu esse auditum, Nep.*

VENIRE ad finem, aures, pactionem, certamen, manus, nihilum, &c. in suspicionem, odium, gratiam, &c. in jus, *to go to law, Liv. in circulum, into a company, Nep. Hæreditas ei venit, he has succeeded to an estate; ei usum venit, happened, Nep. Quod in buccam venerit, scribito, occurs, Cic.*

ADVENIRE & adventare ei, urbem, ad urbem, *to come to.*

ANTEVENIRE aliquem, & antevertere, Sall. rei, Plaut. tempus, consilia & itinera.

CONVENIRE in colloquium; fratrem, *to meet with, to speak to; ego et frater convenimus, copiam conve-*

*nient, will meet together; convenit mihi cum fratre de hac re, inter me et fratrem, inter nos; hæc fratri mecum conveniunt, I and my brother are agreed; sævis inter se convenit ursis, Juv. Ipsi secum non convenit, vel ipse, he is inconsistent; pax convenit, vel conventa est, is agreed upon; rem conventuram putamus, Cic. condiciones non convenerunt; mores conveniunt, agree; calcei pedibus v. ad pedes conveniunt, fit, fait; hoc in illum convenit. Catilinam interfectum esse convenit, ought to have been slain, Cic. Convenire in manum, the usual form of marriage, named Coemptio, whereby women were called matres familias.*

SENTIRE sonorem, colorem, &c. *to perceive; cum aliquo, to be of one's opinion; bene vel malè de eo, to think well or ill of him.*

CONSENTIRE tibi tecum, inter se; alicui rei, de v. in aliqua re; ad aliquid peragendum, *to agree; So dissentire; et ab aliquo, to disagree; ne vita orationi dissentiat, Senec.*

DEPONENT VERBS.

PROFITERI philosophiam, *to profess, to teach publicly; se candidatum, to declare himself a candidate for an office; pecunias, agros, nomina, &c. apud censorem, to give an account of, to declare how much one has; indicium, to promise to make a discovery.*

LOQUI cum aliquo, inter se, some-

*times alicui, ad v. apud aliquem: aliquid, de aliqua re.*

SEQUI feras; sectam Cæsaris, *to be of his party, Cic. Assequi, consequi, to overtake; gloriam, to attain. Consequi hereditatem, to get, Cic.*

PROSEQUI aliquem amore, laudibus, &c. *to love, praise, &c.*



**NITI** hastâ ; in cubitum, *to lean* ; ejus consilio, in eo, *to depend on* ; ad gloriam, ad v. in summa, *to aim at* ; in vetitum, in adversum, contra aliquem, pro aliquo, *to strive* ; gradi-

bus, *to ascend*.

**UTI** eo familiariter, *to be familiar with one* ; ventis adversis, *to have cross winds* ; honore usus, *one who has enjoyed a post of honour*.

## IRREGULAR VERBS

**ESSE** magni roboris, v. -no, -re ; ejus opinionis, v. ea opinione ; in maxima spe : in timore, luctu, opinione, itinere, &c. cum telo, in vel cum imperio ; magno periculo, v. in periculo ; in tuto ; apud se, in his sensus ; sui juris, v. mancipii, sui potens, v. in sua potestate, *to be at his own disposal* : Res est in vado, *is safe*, Ter. Est animus, sc. mihi, *I have a mind*, Virg. Est ut, cur, quamobrem, quod, quin, &c. *There is cause* ; bene, male est mihi, *with me* ; nihil est mihi tecum, *I have nothing to do with you* ; Quid est tibi, sc. rei, *What is the matter with you ?* Ter. Cernere erat, *one might see* ; religio est mihi id facere *I scruple to do it* ; si est, ut facere velit, ut facturus sit ut admiserit, &c. for si velit, &c. Ter. Est ut viro vir latius ordinet arbusta sulcis, *it happens*, Hor. Certum est facere, sc. mihi ; *I am resolved*, Ter. Non certum est, quid faciam, *I am uncertain*, Id Cassius querere solebat. Cui Bono fuerit : Omnibus bono fuit, *it was of advantage*, Cic.

**ABESSE** pugne, in pugna, ad exercitum, ad tempus, in tempore, cum aliquo, *to be present* ; alicui, *to favour, to assist* ; scribendo, v. esse ad scribendum, *to subscribe one's name to a decree of the senate*, Cic. consilio utrique, *to be a counsellor to*, Nep.

**ABESSE** domo, urbe, a domo, ab signis, *to be absent alicui*, v. deesse *to be wanting, not to assist* ; a sole, *to stand out of the sun* ; sumptus funeri defuit, *he had not money to bury him*, Liv. abesse a persona principis, *to be inconsistent with the character*, Nep. Paulum v. parum absuit quin urbem caperent, quin occideretur, &c. they were near taking, &c. Tantum abest ne enervetur oratio, ut, &c. *is so far from being*, &c. Cic. Tantum

absuit a cupiditate pecunie, a societate sceleris, &c. Nep.

**INTERESSE** convivio, v. in convivio, *to be at a feast* ; anni decem interfuerent, *intervened* ; stulto intelligens quid interest, Ter. Hoc dominus & pater interest id. Inter hominem & belluam hoc interest, Cic. differ in this, *this is the difference* ; multum interest, utrum, *it is of great importance*. Pons inter eos interest, *is between*, Cic.

**PRÆESSE** exercitui, *to command* ; comitiis, judicio, questioni, *to preside in or at*.

**OBESSE** ei, *to hurt, to hinder*.

**SUPERESSE**, *to be over and above* ; alicui, *to survive* ; modo vitâ supersit, sc. mihi, *if I live* ; super est, ut, *it remains, that*.

**IRE** ad arma, ad saga, *to go to war* ; in jus, *to go to law* ; pedibus in sententiam alicujus, *to agree with* ; vjam v. via ; res bene eunt, Cic. Tempus, dies, mensis, *it passes*.

**ABIRE** magistratu, *to lay down an office* ; a conspectu, *to retire from company* ; in ora hominum, *to be in every body's mouth* ; ab emptione, *to retract his bargain* ; decem menses abierunt, *have past*, Ter. Non hoc tibi sic abibit, i. e. non feres hoc impune, Ter. Abi in malam rem, *a form of imprecation*.

**ADIRE** periculum capitis, *to run the hazard of one's life*.

**EXIRE** vitâ, e, v. de vita, *to die* ; ære alieno, Cic. Verbum exit ex ore Id. tela, *to avoid*, Virg. Tempus induciarum cum Veienti populo exierat, *had expired*, Liv.

**INIRE** magistratum ; suffragium, rationem, consilium, pugnam, viam, &c. *to enter upon, to begin* ; gratiam ejus, apud eum, cum vel ab eo, *to gain his favour* : Incunte æstate, vere, anno, &c. *in the beginning of* ; Lut. *we seldom say, Incunte die, noc-*

te, &c. *Ab ineunte ætate, from our early years.*

**OBIRE** diem edicti, *vel* auctionis iudicium, vadimonium, *to be present at; provinciam, domos, nostras, to visit, to go through, Cic. negotia, res, munus, officium, legationem, sacra, to perform; pugnas, Virg. mortem, vel morte; diem supremum v. diem, to die.*

**PRÆIRE** alicui, *to go before; verba, carmen, vel sacramentum alicui, to repeat or read over before; alicui voce, quid iudicet, to prescribe or direct by crying, Cic.*

**PRODIRE** in publicum, *to go abroad; non præterit te, you are not ignorant, Cic. Dies induciarum præterit, is past, Nep.*

**RÊDIRE** in gratiam eam aliquo, *to become friends again; ad se, to come to himself, to recover his senses.*

**SUBIRE** murum, *vel -o, ad montes, to come up to; laborem vel -i, onus, poenam, periculum, crimen, to undergo; spes, timor subiit animum, came into.*

**VELLE** aliquem, *sc. alloqui vel conuentum, to desire to speak with; alicui, ejus causa, to wish one's good; tibi consultum volo; nihil tibi negatum volo, I wish to deny, Liv. Quid sibi vult; What does he mean? Volo te hoc facere, hoc a te fieri: si quid recte curatum velis; illos monitos etiam atque etiam volo, sc. esse, I will admonish them again and again, Cic. nollem factum, I am sorry it was done; nollem huc exitum, sc. esse a me, I wish I had not come out here, Ter.*

**FERRE** legem, *to propose or make; privilegium de aliquo, to propose or pass an act of impeachment against one, Cic. rogationem ad populum, to bring in a bill; conditiones ei, to offer terms; suffragium, to vote; sententiam, to give an opinion; centuriam, tribum, to gain the vote of; perdere, to lose it; victoriam ex eo; omne punctum, omnia suffragia, to gain all the votes; repulsam, to be rejected; fructum hoc fructi, to reap, Ter. lætitiã de re, to rejoice; præ se, to pretend or declare openly; alienam personam, to disguise one's self; in oculis, to*

*be fond of, Ter. manus, in prælia, to engage, Virg. acceptum et expensum, to mark down as received and spent or lent, as Dr. and Cr. Cic. animus, opinio fert, inclines; tempus, res, causa fert, allowes, requires.*

**CONFERRERE** benevolentiam alicui, *in vel erga aliquem, to show; beneficia, culpam in eum, to confer, to lay; operam, tempus, studium, ad vel in rem, & impendere, to apply; capita inter se, consilia sua, to lay their heads together, to consult; signa, arma, manus, to engage; omne bellum circa Corinthum, Nep. pedem, to set foot to foot; rationes, to cast up accounts; castra castris, to encamp over against one another; se in, vel ad urbem, to go to; tributa, to pay; se alicui, vel cum aliquo, to compare; neminem cum illo conferendum pietate puto, Cic. Hæc conferunt ad aliquid; oratori futuro, servæ, are useful to, Quinct.*

**DEFERRE** situlam vel sitellam, *to bring the ballot box; aliquid ad aliquem, to carry word, to tell; rarely alicui; causam ad patronos; honores ei; gubernacula rei publicæ in eum; summam rerum ad eum, to confer; in beneficiis ad ærarium, to recommend for a public service, Cic. aliquem ambitus, de ambitu, nomen alicujus ad prætorem, apud magistratum, to accuse of bribery; primas, sc. partes ei, to give him the preference, Cic.*

**DIFFERRE** vel transferre rem in animum; *post bellum, diem solutionis, to put off; rumores, to spread; ab aliquo, alicui, inter se, moribus, to differ in character; amore, cupiditate, doloribus, differri, to be distracted or torn asunder, Cic. & Ter.*

**EFFERRE** fruges, *to produce; verba, to utter; verbum de verbo expressum, to translate, Ter. pedem domo, to go out; corpus amplo funere, & cum funere, to bury; ad honorem, ad cælum laudibus, to raise, to extol; foras peccatum, to divulge.*

**INFERRERE** bellum patriæ; *vim, manus, necem alicui, to bring upon; signa, sc. pedem, to advance; litem vel periculum capitis alicui, vel in aliquem, to bring one to a trial for his life.*

**OFFERRE** se morti, ad mortem, in discrimen, to expose, to present.

**PERFERRE** legem, to carry through, to pass it.

**PREFERRE** facem ei, to carry before; salutem ei reipublice suis commodis, & anteferre, antepone, to prefer. Prælatu equo, riding before.

**PROFERRE** imperium, pomerium, terminos, to enlarge; in medium, in apertum, in lucem, to publish; nuptias diem, to delay; diem Ilio, to defer the destruction of, Hor.

**REFERRERE** alicui, to answer; se, gradum v. pedem, to retreat; gratiam alicui, to make a requital; par pari, Ter. victoriam ab, vel ex aliquo, et reportare, to gain; institutum to renew; judicia ad equestrem ordinem, to restore to the Equites the right of judging; aliquid, de aliqua re, ad senatum, ad consilium, ad

sapientes, ad populum, to lay before; aliquid in tabulam, codicem, album, commentarium, &c. to mark down; aliquid acceptum alicui, & in acceptum, to acknowledge one's self indebted; pecunias acceptas & expensas; nomina vel summas in codicem accepti et expensi, to mark down accounts; alienos inopes ad suos, to judge of by; in v. inter serarios, to reduce to the lowest class; in numerum deorum, in vel inter deos, & reponere, to rank among; pugnas, res gestas, to relate; patrem ore, to resemble; amissos colores, to regain, Horat.

**TRANSFERRE** rationes in tabulas, to post one's books, to state accounts; in Latinam linguam, to translate; verba, to use metaphorically; culpam in eum & rejicere, to lay the blame on him.

## II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

A *Figure* is a manner of speaking different from the ordinary and plain way, used for the sake of beauty or force.

The figures of *Syntax* or *Construction* may be reduced to these three, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, and *Hyperbaton*.

The two first respect the constituent parts of a sentence; the last respects only the arrangement of the words.

### 1. ELLIPSIS.

**ELLIPSIS** is when one or more words are wanting to complete the sense; as, *Aiunt, ferunt, dicunt, perhibent*, scil. homines: *Dic mihi, Damoeta, cuium pecus*; that is, *Dic (tu) mihi, Damoeta, (eum hominem) cuium pecus*; (est hoc pecus.) *Aberant bidui, sc. iter vel itinere. Decies sestertium, sc. centena millia. Quid multa? sc. dicam. Antiquum obtines, sc. morem, v. institutum, Plaut. Hodie in ludum cecepi ire literarium, ternas jam scio, sc. literas, i. e. AMO, Id. Triduo abs te nullas acceperam, sc. literas, i. e. epistolam, Cic. Brevi dicam, sc. sermone: So Complecti, respondere, &c. breve. Dii meliora, sc. faciant: Rhodum volo, inde Athenas, sc. ire, Id. Bellicum, v. classicum canere, sc. signum, Liv. Civica donatus, sc. coronâ; So obsidionalem, muralem adeptus, &c. Id. Epistola librarii manu est, sc. scripta, Cic. So in English, "The twelve," i. e. apostles; "the elect," i. e. persons.*

When a conjunction is to be supplied, it is called **ASYNDĒTON**; as, *Deus optimus maximus, sc. et*; *Sartum tectum conservare, i. e. sartum et tectum*; So *Abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit, Cic. Ferte citi flammæ, date vela, impellite remos, Virg. Velis notis, sc. seu.*

To this figure may be reduced most of those irregularities in Syntax, as they are called, which are variously classed by grammarians, under the names of **ENALLĀGE**, i. e. the changing of words and their accidents, or the putting of one word for another; **ANTIPTŌSIS**, i. e. the putting of one case for another; **HĒLLENISM** or **GRÆCISM**, i. e. imitating the construction of the Greeks; **SYNĒSIS**, i. e. referring the construction, not to the gender or number of the word, but to the sense, &c.; thus, *Samnitium duo millia cæsi, is, Duo milia (hominum) Samnitium (fuerant homines) cæsi, Liv. So Servitia immemores, Liv. Monstrum quæ, scil. mulier, Hor. Scelus qui, sc. homo, Ter. Omnia Mercurio similis, scil. secundum, Virg. Missi magnis de rebus uterque, legati; i. e. Missi legati (et) uterque (legatus missus) de magnis rebus, Horat. Servitia repudiabat, cujus, scil. servitii, Sall. Cat. 51. Familia nostra, quorum, &c. sc. hominum, Sall. Concursum populi, mirantium, Liv. Illum ut vivat optant, for ut ille vivat, Ter. Populum late regem, for regnantem, Virg. Expediti militum, for milites; Classis stabat Rhegii, for ad Rhegium, Liv. Latium Capuaque agro multati, sc. homines, Id. Utraque formosæ, sc. mulieres, Ovid. Aperite aliquis ostium, Ter. Sensit delapsus, for delapsum, sc. se esse, Virg.*

When a writer frequently uses the Ellipsis, his style is said to be elliptical or concise.

## 2. PLEONASM.

**PLEONASM** is when a word more is added than is absolutely necessary to express the sense; as, *Video oculis, I see with my eyes; Sic ore locuta est; adest præsens: Nusquam gentium; vivere vitam; servire servitutem; Quid mihi Celsus agit? Fac me ut sciam, &c. Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo, Ter. Suo sibi succo vivant, Plaut.*

When a conjunction is used apparently redundant, it is called **POLYSYNDĒTON**; as, *Una Eurusque Notusque ruunt. Virg.*

When that which is in reality one, is so expressed as if there were two, it is called **HENDIADYS**; as, *Pateris libamus et auro, for aureis pateris, Virg.*

When several words are used to express one thing, it

called PERIPHRAISIS ; as, *Urbs Trojæ*, for *Troja*, Virg. *Res voluptatum*, for *voluptates*, Plaut. *Usus purpurarum*, for *purpura* ; *Genus piscium*, for *pisces* ; *Flores rosarum*, for *rosæ*, Hor.

### 3. HYPERBATON.

HYPERBATON is the transgression of that order or arrangement of words which is commonly used in any language. It is chiefly to be met with among the poets. The various sorts into which it is divided, are, *Anastrôphe*, *Hystêron*, *protêron*, *Hypalläge*, *Synchêsis*, *Tmesis*, and *Parenthêsis*.

1. ANASTRÔPHE is the inversion of words, or the placing of that word last which should be first ; as, *Italiam contra* ; *His accensa super* ; *Spenque metumque inter dubii* ; for *contra Italiam*, *super his*, *inter spem*, &c. Virg. *Terram sol facit are* for *are facit*, Lucret.

2. HYSTÊRON PROTÊRON is when that is put in the former part of the sentence, which, according to the sense, should be in the latter ; as, *Valet atque vivit*, for *vivit atque valet*, Ter.

3. HYPALLÄGE is the exchanging of cases ; as, *Dare clasibus austros*, for *dare classes austris*, Virg.

4. SYNCHÊSIS is a confused and intricate arrangement of words ; as, *Saxa vocant Itali mediis quæ in fluctibus aras* ; for *Quæ saxa in mediis fluctibus Itali vocant aras*, Virg. This occurs particularly in violent passion ; as, *Per tibi ego hunc juro fortem castumque cruorem*, Ovid. Fast. ii. 841. *Per vos liberos utque parentes*, sc. *oro vos per liberos*, &c. Salust. Jug. 14.

5. TMESIS is the division of a compound word and the interposing of other words betwixt its parts ; as, *Septem subjecta, trioni gens*, for *Septentrioni*, Virg. *Quæ meo cunque animo libitum est facere*, for *quæcunque*, Ter. *Quem sors diarum cunque dabit, lucro Appone*, Horat.

6. PARENTHÊSIS is the inserting of a member into the body of a sentence, which is neither necessary to the sense, nor at all affects the construction ; as, *Tityre, dum redeo, (brevis est via,) pasce capellas*, Virg.

## III. ANALYSIS AND TRANSLATION.

The difficulty of translating either from English into Latin, or from Latin into English, arises in a great measure from the different arrangement of words which takes place in the two languages.

In Latin the various terminations of nouns, and the inflection of adjectives and verbs, point out the relation of one word to another, in whatever order they are placed. But in English the agreement and government of words can only be determined from the particular part of the sentence in which they stand. Thus in Latin, we can either say, *Alexander vicit Darium*, or *Darium vicit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darium vicit*, or *Darium Alexander vicit*; and in each of these the sense is equally obvious: but in English we can only say *Alexander conquered Darius*. This variety of arrangement in Latin gives it a great advantage over the English; not only in point of energy and vivacity of expression, but also in point of harmony. We sometimes, indeed, for the sake of variety and force, imitate in English the inversion of words which takes place in Latin; as, *Him the Eternal hurl'd*, Milton. *Whom ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you*. But this is chiefly to be used in poetry.

With regard to the proper order of words to be observed in translating from English into Latin, the only certain rule which can be given, is to imitate the CLASSICS.

The order of words in sentences is said to be either *simple* or *artificial*; or, as it is otherwise expressed, either *natural* or *oratorical*.

The *Simple* or *Natural* order is, when the words of a sentence are placed one after another, according to the natural order of syntax.

*Artificial* or *Oratorical* order is, when words are so arranged, as to render them most striking, or most agreeable to the ear.

All Latin writers use an arrangement of words, which appears to us more or less artificial, because different from our own, although to them it was as natural as ours is to us. In order therefore to render any Latin author into English, we must first reduce the words in Latin to the order of English, which is called the *Analysis* or *Resolution* of sentences. It is only practice that can teach one to do this with readiness. However, to a beginner, the observation of the following rule may be of advantage.

Take *first* the words which serve to introduce the sentence, or shew its dependence on what went before; *next* the nominative, together with the words which it agrees with or governs; *then*, the verb and adverbs joined with it; and *lastly*, the cases which the verb governs, together with the circumstances subjoined, to the end of the sentence;

supplying through the whole the words which are understood.

If the sentence is compound, it must be resolved into the several sentences of which it is made up; as,

*Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibi que persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum; sed multo fore cariorem, et talibus monumentis præceptisque lætabere.* Cic. Off. lib. 3. fin.

Farewell then, my Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear to me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take delight in such writings and instructions.

This compound sentence may be resolved into these five simple sentences; 1. *Igitur, mi (filii) Cicero, (tu) vale.* 2. *et (tu) persuade tibi (ipsi) te esse quidem (filium) carissimum mihi:* 3. *sed (tu persuade tibi ipsi te) fore (filium) cariorem (mihi in) multo (æegotio,* 4. *et (tu) lætabere talibus monumentis,* 5. *et (si tu lætabere talibus) præceptis.*

1. Fare (you) well then, my (son) Cicero, 2. and assure (you) yourself that you are indeed (a son) very dear to me: 3. but (assure you yourself that you) shall be (a son) much dearer (to me) 4. If you shall take delight in such writings, 5. and (if you shall take delight in such) instructions.

It may not be improper here to exemplify *Analogical Analysis*, as it is called, or the analysis of words, from the foregoing sentence, *Vale igitur, &c.* thus;

*Vale, scil. tu;* Fare (thou) well, Second person singular of the imperative mode, active voice, from the neuter verb, *Valeo, valui, valitum, vale, e.* to be in health, of the second conjugation, not used in the passive. *Vale* agrees to the second person singular with the nominative *tu*, by the third rule of syntax.

*Igitur*, then, therefore, a conjunction, importing some inference drawn from what went before.

*Mi.* Voc. sing. masc. of the adjective pronoun, *meus, -a, -um*, my; derived from the substantive pronoun *Ego*, agreeing with *Cicero*, by Rule 2. *Cicero*, voc. sing. from the nominative *Cicero, -one, -is*, a proper noun of the third declension.

*Et*, and, a copulative conjunction, which connects the verb *persuade* with the verb *vale*, by Rule 60. We turn *que* into *et* because *que* never stands by itself.

*Persuade scil. tu*, persuade thou, second person singular of the imperative active, from the verb *persua-deo, si, sum, dère*, to persuade; compounded of the preposition *per*, and *suades, -ti, -sum*, to advise, used impersonally in the passive; thus, *Persuadetur mihi*, I am persuaded: seldom or never *Ego persuadeor*. We say however in the third person, *Hoc persuadeetur mihi*, I am persuaded of this.

*Tibi, dat. sing.* of the personal pronoun *tu*, thou; governed by *persuade*, according to Rule 17. *Te* accusative sing. of *tu*, put before *esse*, according to Rule 4.

*Esse*, present of the infinitive, from the substantive verb *sum, fui esse*, to be.

*Quidem*, indeed, an adverb, joined with *carissimum* or *esse*.

*Carissimum*, accusative sing. masc. from *carissimus, -a, -um*, very dear, dearest, superlative degree of the adjective *carus, -a, -um*, dear: Comparative degree, *carior, carior, carius*, dearer, more dear: agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood, by Rule 2. and put in the accusative by Rule 5.

*Mihi*, to me, dat. sing. of the substantive pronoun *Ego*, I; governed by *carissimum*, by Rule 12.

*Sed*, but, an adverbial conjunction, joining *esse* and *fore*.

*Fore*, the same with *esse futurum*, to be, or to be about to be, infinitive of the defective verb *forem, -res, vci, &c.* governed in the same manner with the foregoing *esse*, thus, *te fore*, Rule 4. or thus, *esse sed fore*. See Rule 60.

*Multo, scil. æegotio*, ablat. sing. neut. of the adjective *multus, -a, -um*, much, put in the ablative, according to observation 6. Rule 61. But *multo* here may be taken adverbially in the same manner with *much* in English.

*Cariorem*, accus. sing. masc. from *carior, -or, -us*, the comparative of *carus*, as before, agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood. Rule 2. or Rule 5.

*Si*, if, a conditional conjunction, joined either with the indicative mode, or with the subjunctive, according to the sense, but oftener with the latter. See Rule 60. obs. 2.

*Lætabere*, Thou shalt rejoice, second person singular of the future of the indicative, from the deponent verb *lætar, lætatus, lætârî*, to rejoice: Future *lætaber, abêris* or *abêre, abitur, &c.*

*Talibus*, ablat. plur. neut. of the adjective *talis, talis, tale*, such; agreeing with *monumentis*, the ablat. plur. of the substantive noun *monumentum, -i, neut.* a monument or writing: of the second declension; derived from *monéo, -ui, -itum, -ère*, to admonish; here put in the ablative according to Rule 49. *Et*, a copulative conjunction, as before.

*Præceptis*, a substantive noun in the ablative plural, from the nominative *præceptum, -i, neut.* a precept, an instruction; derived from *præcipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, -cipere*, to instruct, to order, compounded of the preposition *præ*, before, and the verb *capio, cēpi, captum, capere*, to take. The *æ* of the simple is changed into *i* short; thus, *præcipio, præcipis, &c.*

The learner may in like manner be taught to analyze the words in English, and in doing so, to mark the different idioms of the two languages.

To this may be subjoined a *Praxis*, or Exercise on all the different parts of grammar, particularly with regard to the inflexion of nouns and verbs in the form of questions, such as these, Of Cicero? *Cicerōnis*. With Cicero? *Cicerōne*. A dear son? *Carus Filius*. Of a dear son? *Cari Fili*. O my dear son? *Mi or meus care fili*. Of dearer sons? *Cariōrum filiorum, &c.*

Of thee? or of you? *Tui*. With thee or you, *te*: Of you? *Festram* or *vestr*. With you? *Vobis*.

They shall persuade? *Persuadebunt*. I can persuade? *Persuadeam*, or much more frequently *possum persuadere*. They are persuaded? *Persuadetur*, or *persuadum est illis*, according to the time expressed. He is to persuade? *Est persuasurus*. He will be persuaded? *Persuadebitur*, or *persuadum erit illi*. He cannot be persuaded? *Non potest persuaderi illi*. I know that he cannot be persuaded? *Scio non posse persuaderi illi*. That he will be persuaded? *Et persuasum iri, &c.*

When a learner first begins to translate from the Latin, he should keep as strictly to the literal meaning of the words as the different idioms of the two languages will permit. But after he has made farther progress, something more will be requisite. He should then be accustomed, as much as possible, to transfuse the beauties of an author from the one language into the other. For this purpose it will be necessary that he be acquainted, not only with the idioms of the two languages, but also with the different kinds of style adapted to different sorts of composition, and to different subjects; together with the various turns of thought and expression which writers employ, or what are called the figures of words and of thought; or the *Figures of Rhetoric*.

#### IV. DIFFERENT KINDS OF STYLE.

The kinds of Style (*genera dicendi*) are commonly reckoned three; the low, (*humile, submissum, tenue;*) the middle, (*medium, temperatum, ornatum, floridum;*) and the sublime, (*sublime, grande.*)

But besides these, there are various other characters of style; as, the *diffuse* and *concise*; the *feeble* and *nervous*; the *simple* and *affected*, &c.

There are different kinds of style adapted to different subjects and to different kinds of composition; the style of the Pulpit, of the Bar, and of Popular Assemblies; the style of History, and of its various branches, Annals, Memoirs or Commentaries, and Lives; the style of Philosophy, of Dialogue or Colloquial discourse, of Epistles, and Romance, &c.

There is also a style peculiar to certain writers, called their *Manner*; as, the *style* of Cicero, of Livy, of Sallust, &c.

But what deserves particular attention is, the difference between the style of poetry and of prose. As the poets in



a manner paint what they describe, they employ various epithets, repetitions, and turns of expression, which are not admitted in prose.

The first virtue of style (*virtus orationis*) is perspicuity or that it be easily understood. This requires, in the choice of the words, 1. *Purity*, in opposition to barbarous, obsolete or new coined words, and to errors in Syntax: 2. *Propriety*, or the selection of the best expressions, in opposition to vulgarisms or low expressions: 3. *Precision*, in opposition to superfluity of words or a *loose style*.

The things chiefly to be attended to in the structure of a sentence, or in the disposition of its parts, are, 1. *Clearness*, in opposition to *ambiguity* and *obscurity*: 2. *Unity*, and *Strength*, in opposition to an *unconnected*, *intricate* and *feeble* sentence: 3. *Harmony*, or musical arrangement, in opposition to *harshness* of sound.

The most common defects of style (*vitia orationis*) are distinguished by various names:

1. A **BARBARISM** is when a foreign or strange word is made use of; as, *croftus*, for *agellus*; *rigorosus*, for *rigidus* or *severus*; *alterare*, for *mutare*, &c. Or when the rules of Orthography, Etymology, or Prosody are transgressed; as, *charus*, for *carus*; *stavi*, for *steti*; *tibcen*, for *tibicen*.

2. A **SOLECISM** is when the rules of Syntax are transgressed; as, *Dicit libros lectos iri*, for *lectum iri*: *We was walking*, for *we were*. A barbarism may consist in one word, but a solecism requires several words.

3. An **IDIOTISM** is when the manner of expression peculiar to one language is used in another; as an *Anglicism* in Latin, thus, I am to write, *Ego sum scribere*, for *ego sum scripturus*; It is I, *Est ego*, for *Ego sum*: Or a *Latinism* in English, thus, *Est sapientior me*, He is wiser than me, for *than I*; *Quem dicunt me esse?* Whom do they say that I am? for *who*, &c.

4. **TAUTOLOGY** is when we either uselessly repeat the same words, or repeat the same sense in different words.

5. **BOMBAST** is when high sounding words are used without meaning, or upon a trifling occasion.

6. **AMPHIBOLOGY** is when, by the ambiguity of the construction, the meaning may be taken in two different senses; as in the answer of the oracle to Pyrrhus, *Aio te, Æacide, Romanos vincere posse*. But the English is not so liable to this as the Latin.

## V. FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

Certain modes of speech are termed *Figurative*, because they convey our meaning under a borrowed form, or in a particular dress.

Figures (*figuræ* or *schemata*) are of two kinds; figures of words, (*figuræ verborum*), and figures of thought, (*figuræ sententiarum*.) The former are properly called *Tropes*; and if the word be changed, the figure is lost.

## 1. TROPES, OR FIGURES OF WORDS.

A *Trope* (*conversio*), is an elegant *turning* of a word from its proper signification.

Tropes take their rise partly from the barrenness of language, but more from the influence of the imagination and passions. They are founded on the relation which one object bears to another, chiefly that of resemblance or similitude.

The principal tropes are the *Metaphor*, *Metonymy*, *Synecdoche*, and *Irony*.

1. METAPHOR (*translatio*) is when a word is transferred from that to which it properly belongs, to express something to which it is only applied from similitude or resemblance; as, a *hard* heart; a *soft* temper; he *bristles* his anger; a *joyful* crop; *ridet* ager, the field *smiles*, &c. A metaphor is nothing else but a short comparison.

We likewise call that a metaphor, when we substitute one object in the place of another, on account of the close resemblance between them; as when, instead of *youth*, we say, *the morning* or *spring time of life*; or when, in speaking of a family connected with a common parent, we use the expressions which properly belong to a tree, whose trunk and branches are connected with a common root. When this allusion is carried on through several sentences, or through a whole discourse, and the principal subject kept out of view, so that it can only be discovered by its resemblance to the subject described, it is called an ALLEGORY. An Example of this we have in Horace, book 1. ode 14. where the republic is described under the allusion of a ship.

An ALLEGORY is only a continued metaphor. This figure is much the same with the *Parable*, which so often occurs in the sacred scriptures; and with the *Fable*, such as those of *Æsop*. The *Ænigma* or *Riddle* is also con-

sidered as a species of the Allegory; as likewise are many *Proverbs* (*Proverbia* v. *Adagia*;) thus, *In sylvam ligna ferre*, Horat.

Metaphors are improper when they are taken from low objects; when they are forced or far-fetched; when they are mixed or too far pursued; and when they have not a natural and sensible resemblance; or are not adapted to the subject of discourse, or to the kind of composition, whether poetry or prose.

When a word is very much turned from its proper signification, it is called *Catachrêsis* (*abusio*;) as, *a leaf of paper, of gold, &c. the empire flourished*; *parricida*, for any murderer; *Vir gregi ipse caper*, Virg. *Altum ædificant caput*, Juv. *Hunc vobis deridendum propino*, for *trado*, Ter. *Eurus per Siculas equitavit undas*, Hor.

When a word is taken in two senses in the same phrase, the one proper and the other metaphorical, it is called *Syllepsis*, (*comprehensio*;) as, *Galatæa thymo mihi dulcior Hyblæ*, Virg. *Ego sardois videar tibi amarior herbis*, Id.

2. METONYMY (*mutatio nominis*) is the putting of one name for another. In which sense it includes all other tropes; but it is commonly restricted to the following particulars; 1. When the cause is put for the effect; or the inventor, for the thing invented; or the author for his works; as, *Bona labores*, for *corn*; *Mars*, for *war*; thus, *Æquo Marte pugnatum est*, with equal advantage, Liv. *Ceres*, for *grain*, or *bread*; *Bacchus*, for *wine*; *Venus*, for *love*; *Vulcanus*, for *fire*; thus, *Sine, Cerere & Baccho friget Venus*, Ter. *Furit Vulcanus*, Virg. So a general is put for his army; *Cicero, Virgil, and Horace*, for their works; *Moses* and the *Prophets* for their books; a beautiful *Raphael, Titian, Guido, Rheni, Rembrant, Reubens, Vandyke, &c.* for their pictures. 2. When the effect is put for the cause; as, *Pallida mors*, *Pale death*, because it makes pale; *atra cura, &c.* 3. The container for what is contained, and sometimes the contrary; as, *Hausit pateram*, for *vinum*, Virg. *He loves his bottle*, for *drink*: *Secundam mensam servis dispertit*, i. e. *fercula in mensa*, Nep. So *Roma*, for *Romani*; *Europe*, for the *Europeans*; *Heaven*, for the *Supreme Being*; *Secernit Europeen ab Afro*, for *Africa*; *In arduos tollor Sabinos*, for *in agrum Sabinorum*; *Incolumi Jove*, for *Capitolio*; *Janus*, for the *temple of Janus*, Hor. *Proximus ardet Ucaligon*, for *domus Ucalegontis*, Virg. So *Sergestus*, for his ship, Id. *Æn.* v. 272. 4. The sign for the thing signi-

fied; as, *The crown*, for royal authority; *palma* or *laurus*, for victory; *cedant arma togæ*, that is, as Cicero himself explains it, *bellum concedat paci. Ferri togæque consilia*, consultations about war and peace, *Stat. Sylv. v. 1. 82. 5.* An abstract, for the concrete; as, *Scelus*, for *scelestus*, *Ter. Audacia*, for *audax*, *Cic. Custodia*, for *custodes*, *Virg. Servitus*, for *servi*; *nobilitas*, for *nobiles*; *juventus*, for *juvenes*; *vicinia*, for *vicini*; *vires*, for *strong men*, *Hor. Furta*, for *stolen oxen*, *Ovid. Fast. i. 560. 6.* The parts of the body, for certain passions or sentiments, which were supposed to reside in them; thus, *cor*, for *wisdom* or *address*; as, *habet cor, vir cordatus*, a man of sense, *Plaut.* But with us the *heart* is put for courage or affection, and the *head* for wisdom; thus, *a stout heart; a warm heart; a sound head, &c.* So, *to have a well hung tongue*, for *to speak with ease, &c.*

When we put what follows to express what goes before, or the contrary, it is called *Metalepsis*, (*transmutatio*;) thus, *desiderari*, to be desired or regretted, for *to be dead, lost, or absent*: So *Fuimus Troes, & ingens gloria Dardaniæ*, i. e. are no more. *Virg. Æn. ii. 325.*

3. SYNECDOCHE (*comprehensio* or *conceptio*) is a trope by which a word is made to signify more or less than in its proper sense; as, 1. When a *genus* is put for a *species*, or a whole for a part, and the contrary; thus, *Mortales*, for *homines*; *summa arbor*, for *summa pars arboris*; *priusquam pabula gustassent Trojæ, Xanthumque bibissent. for partem pabuli, & fluminis Xanthi*, *Virg. Nat uncta carina*, for *navis*; *centum puppes*, a hundred sail, or a hundred ships; *tectum*, the roof, for the whole house; *capita* or *animæ*, for *homines*; *ungula*, for *equus* or *equi*, *Horat. Sat. i. 1. 114*; the door, or even the threshold, for the house or temple, *tum foribus divæ*, for *in templo divæ*, *Virg. Tempe*, for any beautiful vale, &c. 2. When a singular is put for a plural, and the contrary; thus, *Hostis, miles, pedes, eques*, for *hostes, &c.* *It is written in the prophets*, for in a book of some one of the prophets; *millies*, a thousand times, for many times. 3. When the materials are put for the things made of them; as, *Æs* or *argentum*, for money; *æra*, for vases of brass trumpets, arms, &c.; *ferrum*, for a sword; *taurus*, for a bull's hide, *Virg. Dust thou art*, i. e. made of dust, &c.

When a common name is put for a proper name, or the contrary, it is called *Antonomasia* (*pronomination*;) as, the *Philosopher*, for *Aristotle*; the *Orator*, for *Demosthenes* or *Cicero*; the *Poet*, for *Homer* or *Virgil*; the *Wise man*, for

*Solomon*; *Astu*, for *Athens*; *Urbs*, the city or town, for the capital of any country; *Pænus*, for *Hannibal*; a *Nero*, for a cruel prince; *Mæcenas*, for a patron of learning; as, *Sint Mæcenates non deerint, Flaccæ, Marones, i. e. sint munifici patroni, non deerint boni poetæ*, Martial, viii. 56. 5.

An *Antonomasia* is often made by a *Periphrasis*; as, *Pelöpis parens*, for *Tantalus*; *Anxi reus*, for *Socrates*; *Trojani belli scriptor*, for *Homer*; *Chironis alumnus*, for *Achilles*; *Potor Rhodani*, for *Gallus*; *Jubæ tellus*, for *Mauritania*, Horat. &c. or by a patronymic noun; as, *Anchisiades*, for *Aeneas*; *Tyndaris, Adis*, for *Helëna*, &c. or by an epithet; as, *Impius reliquit*, for *Aeneas*, Virg. sometimes with the noun added; as, *Fatalis et incestus iudex, famosus hospes*, for *Paris*, Hor.

4. IRONY is when one means the contrary of what is said; as, when we say of a bad poet, *he is a Virgil*; or of a profligate person, *Tertius e Cælo cecidit Cato*.

When any thing is said by way of bitter raillery, or in an insulting manner, it is called a *SARCASM*; as, *Satia te sanguine, Cyre*, Justin. *Italiam metre jacens*, Virg.

When an affirmation is expressed in a negative form, it is called *LITOTES*; as, *He is not fool*, for *he is a man of sense*; *Non humilis mulier*, for *nobilis* or *superba*; *non indecoro pulvere*, for *decoro*, Horat. When a word has a meaning contrary to its original sense, it is called *Antiphrasis*; as, *auri sacra fames*, for *execrabilis*, Virg. *Pontus Euxini falso nomine dictus*, i. e. *hospitalis*, Ovid.

When any thing sad or offensive is expressed in more gentle terms, it is called *EUPHEMISMUS*; as, *Vita functus*, for *mortuus*; *conclamare suos*, to give up for lost, Liv. *Valeant*, for *abeant*; *mactare* or *ferire*, for *occidere*; *Fecerunt id servi, Melonis, quod suos quisque servos in tali re facere voluisset*, i. e. *Clodium interfecerunt*, Cic. This figure is often the same with the *Periphrasis*.

The *PERIPHRAÏSIS*, or *Circumlocution*, is when several words are employed to express what might be expressed in fewer. This is done either from necessity, as in translating from one language into another; or to explain what is obscure, as in definitions; or for the sake of ornament, particularly in poetry, as in the descriptions of evening and morning, &c.

When after explaining an obscure word or sentence by a periphrasis, one enlarges on the thought of the author, it is called a *Paraphrase*.

When a word imitates the sound of the thing signified, it is called *Onomatopœia*, (*nominis fictio*;) as, the *whistling* of winds, *purling* of streams, *buz* and *hum* of insects, *hiss* of serpents, &c. But this figure is not properly a trope.

It is sometimes difficult to ascertain to which of the above-mentioned tropes certain expressions ought to be referred. But in such cases minute exactness is needless. It is sufficient to know in general that the expression is figurative.

There are a great many tropes peculiar to every language, which cannot be literally expressed in any other. These, therefore, if possible, must be rendered by other figurative expressions equivalent: and if this cannot be done, their meaning should be conveyed in simple language; thus, *Interiore notâ Falerni*, with a glass of old *Falernian wine*: *Ad umbilicum ducere*, to bring to a conclusion, *Horat.* These, and other such figurative expressions, cannot be properly explained without understanding the particular customs to which they refer.

## 2. REPETITION OF WORDS.

Various repetitions of words are employed for the sake of elegance or force, and are therefore also called *Figures of words*. Rhetoricians have distinguished them by different names, according to the part of the sentence in which they take place.

When the same verb is repeated in the beginning of any member of a sentence, it is called *ANAPHORA*: as, *Nihilne te nocturnum præsidium palatii, nihil urbis vigiliæ, &c.* *Cic.* *Te dulcis conjux, te solo in litore secum, Te veniente die, te descendente cenebat, Virg.*

When the repetition is made in the end of the member, it is called *EPISTROPHE*, or *conversio*; as, *Fornos Populus Romanus iustitid, vicit, armis vicit, liberalitate vicit, Cic.* Sometimes both the former occur in the same sentence, and then it is called *SYMPLOCE*, or *Complexio*; as, *Quis legem tulit? Rullus. Quis, &c. Rullus, Cic.*

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of the first clause of a sentence, and in the end of the latter, it is called *EPANALEPSIS*; as, *Vulnus victoriam tuam prætorum exitu terminatum; gladium vaghiâ vacuum in urbe non vidimus, Cic. pro Marcello.*

The reverse of the former is called *ANADAPLOSIS*, or *Reduplicatio*; as, *Hic tamen vivit! vivit! imo in ætæternam venit, Cic.*

When that which is placed first in the foregoing member, is repeated last in the following, and the contrary, it is called *EPANODOS*, or *Regressio*; as, *Crudelis tu quoque mater; Crudelis mater magis an puer imprûbus ille? Imprûbus ille puer, crudelis tu quoque mater, Virg.*

The passionate repetition of the same word in any part of a sentence, is called *EPIZEUXIS*; as, *Excitate, excitate eum ab inferis, Cic.* *Fuit, fuit ista virtus, &c. Id. Me, me, adsum qui feci, in me convertite ferrum, Virg.* *Bella, horrida bella, Id. Ibi-mus, ibimus, Hor.*

When we proceed from one thing to another, so as to connect by the same word the subsequent part of a sentence with the preceding, it is called *CLIMAX*, or *Gradatio*; as, *Africano virtutem industria, virtus gloriam, gloria amulos, comparavit, Cic.*

When the same word is repeated in various cases, moods, genders, numbers, &c. it is called *POLYPHOTON*; as, *Pleni sunt omnes libri, plene sapientium voces, plena exemplorum vetustas, Cic.* *Littora litoribus contraria, fluctibus undas imprecer, arma armis, Virg.* To this is usually referred what is called *SYNONYMIA*, or the using of words of the same import, to express a thing more strongly; as, *Non feram, non patiar, non sinam, Cic.* *Premittit, recipit, spondee, Id.* And also *EXPOLITIO*, which repeats the same thought in different lights.

When a word is repeated the same in sound, but not in sense, it is called **ANTANACLASIS**; as, *Amari jucundum est, si cubetur ne quid inest amari*, Cic. But this is reckoned a defect in style, rather than a beauty. Nearly allied to this figure is the **PARONOMASIA**, or **Agnominatio**, when the words only resemble one another in sound; as, *Civem bonarum artium, bonarum partium; Consul pravo animo & parvo; De oratore arator factus*, Cic. *Amantes sunt amentes*, Ter. This is also called a **PUN**.

When two or more words are joined in any part of a sentence in the same cases or tenses, it is called **HOMOIOPTON**, i. e. *similiter cadens*; as, *Pollet auctoritate, circumfuit epibus, abundat, amicis*, Cic. If the words have only a similar termination, it is called **HOMOIOTELEUTON**, i. e. *similiter desinens*; as, *Non ejusdem est facere fortiter, & vivere turpiter*, Cic.

### 3. FIGURES OF THOUGHT.

It is not easy to reduce figures of thought to distinct classes, because the same figure is employed for several different purposes. The principal are the *Hyperbole*, *Prosopopœia*, *Apostrophe*, *Simile*, *Antithesis*, &c.

1. **HYPERBOLE** is when a thing is magnified above the truth; as, when Virgil, speaking of *Polyphæmus* says, *Ipsæ arduus, atque pulsat sidera*. So *Contracta pisces æquora sentiunt*, Hor. When an object is diminished below the truth, it is called *Tapeinōsis*. The use of extravagant Hyperboles forms what is called *Bambast*.

2. **PROSOPOPEIA**, or *Personification*, is when we ascribe life, sentiments, or actions, to inanimate beings, or to abstract qualities; as, *Quæ (patria) tecum, Catalina, sic agit, &c.* Cic. *Virtus sumit aut ponit secures*, Hor. *Arbore nunc aquas culpante*, Id.

3. **APOSTROPHE**, or *Address*, is when the speaker breaks off from the series of his discourse, and addresses himself to some person present or absent, living or dead, or to inanimate nature, as if endowed with sense and reason. This figure is nearly allied to the former, and therefore often joined with it; as, *Trojaque nunc stares, Priami que arx alta maneres*, Virg.

4. **SIMILE**, or *Comparison*, is when one thing is illustrated or heightened by comparing it to another; as, *Alexander was as bold as a lion*.

5. **ANTITHESIS**, or *Opposition*, is when things contrary or different are contrasted, to make them appear in the most striking light; as, *Hannibal was cunning, but Fabius was cautious*. *Cæsar beneficiis ac munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate, vitæ Cato, &c.* Sall. Cat. 54. *Ex hac parte pudor pugnat, illinc petulantia, &c.* Cic. Similar to this figure is the *Oxumōron*, i. e. *acute dictum*; as, *Amici absentes ad-sunt, &c.* Cic. *Impietate pia est*, Ovid. *Num capti potuere capi*, Virg.

6. **INTERROGATION**, (Græc. *Erotōsis*,) is a figure

whereby we do not simply ask a question, but express some strong feeling or affection of the mind in that form; as, *Quousque tandem, &c.* Cic. *Creditis avectos hostes?* Virg. *Heu! qua me aquora possunt accipere,* Id. Sometimes an answer is returned, in which case it is called *Subjectio*; as, *Quid ergo? audacissimus ego ex omnibus? minime,* Cic. Nearly allied to this is *Expostulation*, when a person pleads with offenders to return to their duty.

7. EXCLAMATION; (*Echphonēsis*), as, *O nomen dulce libertatis!* &c. Cic. *O tempora, O mores!* Id. *O patria! O Divam domus Ilium!* &c. Virg.

8. DESCRIPTION, or *Imagery*, (*Hypotyphōsis*), when any thing is painted in a lively manner, as if done before our eyes. Hence it is also called *Vision*; as, *Videor mihi hanc urbem videre,* &c. Cic. in *Cat.* iv. 6. *Videte magnos jam videor duces, Non indecoro pulvere sordidos,* Hor. Here a change of tense is often used, as the present for the past, and conjunctions omitted, &c. Virg. xi. 637. &c.

9. EMPHASIS is when a particular stress is laid on some word in a sentence; as, *Hannibal peto pacem,* Liv. *Proh! Jupiter ibit hic!* Virg.

10. EPANARTHOSIS, or *Correction*, is when the speaker either recalls or corrects what he had last said; as, *Filium habui, ah! quid dixi habere me? imò habui,* Ter.

11. PARALEPSIS, or *Omission*, is when one pretends to omit or pass by, what he at the same time declares.

12. APARITHMĒSIS, or *Enumeration*, is when what might be expressed in a few words, is branched out into several parts.

13. SYNATHROISMUS, or *Coacervatio*, is the crowding of many particulars together; as,

*Faces in castra tulissæm,  
Implessemque foros flammis, natumque, patremque  
Cum genere extinxem, memet super ipsa dedissem.* Virg,

14. *Incrementum*, or CLIMAX in sense, is when one number rises above another to the highest; as, *Facinus est vincire civem Romanum, scelus verberare, parricidium necare,* Cic. When all the circumstances of an object or action are artfully exaggerated, it is called *Auxēsis*, or *Amplification*. But this is properly not one figure, but the skilful employment of several, chiefly of the Simile and the Climax.

15. TRANSITION (*metabāsis*) is when a speech is abruptly introduced; or when a writer suddenly passes from one



subject to another; as, Horat. Od. ij. 13. 13. In strong passion, a *change of person* is sometimes used; as, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 365, &c. xi. 406, &c.

16. **SUSPENSIO**, or *Sustenatio*, is when the mind of the hearer is long kept in suspense; to which the Latin inversion of words is often made subservient.

17. **CONCESSIO** is the yielding of one thing to obtain another; as, *Sit fur, sit sacrilegus, &c. at est bonus imperator*, Cic. in Verrem, v. 1. **PROLEPSIS**, *Prevention* or *Anticipation*, is when an objection is started and answered. **ANACOINOSIS**, or *Communication*, is when the speaker deliberates with the judges or hearers; which is also called *Diaphorēsis* or *Addubitatio*. **LICENTIA**, or the pretending to assume more freedom than is proper, is used for the sake of admonishing, rebuking, and also flattering; as, *Vide quam non reformidem, &c.* Cic. pro Ligario. **APOSIOPĒSIS**, or *Concealment*, leaves the sense incomplete; as, *Quos ego — sed præstat motos componere fluctus*, Virg.

18. **SENTENTIA**, (*gnome*) a sentiment, is a general maxim concerning life or manners, which is expressed in various forms; as, *Otium sine literis mors est*, Seneca. *Adco in teneris assuescere multum est*, Virg. *Probitas laudatur & alget; Misera est magni, custodia censis; Nobilitas sola est atque unica virtus*, Juv.

As most of these figures are used by orators, and some of them only in certain parts of their speeches, it will be proper that the learner know the parts into which a regular formal oration is commonly divided. These are, 1. The *Introduction*, the *Exordium* or *Proœmium*, to gain the good will and attention of the hearers: 2. The *Narration*, or *Explication*: 3. The argumentative part, which includes, *Confirmation* or proof, and *Confutation* or refuting the objections and arguments of an adversary. The sources from which arguments are drawn, are called *Loci*, topics; and are either intrinsic or extrinsic; common or peculiar. 4. The *Peroration*, *Epilogue*, or *Conclusion*.

## THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

The quantity of a syllable is the space of time taken up in pronouncing it.

That part of grammar which treats of the quantity and accent of Syllables, and of the measures of verse, is called **PROSODY**.

Syllables with respect to their quality, are either *long* or *short*.

A long syllable in pronouncing requires double the time of a short; as, *tēndērē*.

Some syllables are *common*; that is, sometimes long, and sometimes short; as the second syllable in *volucris*.

A vowel is said to be long or short by nature, which is always so by custom, or by the use of the poets.

In polysyllables or long words, the last syllable except one is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult*, and the last syllable except two, the *Antepenultima*.

When the quantity of a syllable is not fixed by some particular rule, it is said to be long or short by *authority*; that is, according to the usage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lēgo* is said to be short by authority, because it is always made short by the Latin poets.

In most Latin words of one or two syllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly distinguish by the ear a long syllable from a short. Thus *le* in *lēgo* and *lēgt* seem to be sounded equally long; but when we pronounce them in composition, the difference is obvious; thus, *perlēgo*, *perlēgi*; *relēgo*, *-ere*; *relēgo*, *-āra*, &c.

The rules of quantity are either *General* or *Special*. The former apply to all syllables, the latter only to some certain syllables.

## GENERAL RULES.

I. A vowel before another vowel is short; as, *Mēus*, *alius*: so *nihil*; *h* in verse being considered only as a breathing. In like manner in English, *crēate*, *bēhave*.

Exc. 1. *I* is long in *fīo*, *fīebam*, &c. unless when followed by *r*; as, *fīeri*, *fīerem*; thus,

*Omnia jam stent, fīeri quæ posse negabam.* Ovid.

Exc. 2. *E* having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declension, is long; as, *speciēi*. So is the first syllable in *āer*, *dīus*, *ēheu*, and the penultima in *aulāi*, *terrāi*, &c. in *Pompēi*, *Cūi*, and such like words; but we sometimes find *Pompēi* in two syllables, *Horat. Od. II. 7.*

Exc. 3. The first syllable in *ohe* and *Diana* is common; so likewise is the penult of genitives in *ius*; as, *illius*, *untus*, &c. to be read long in prose. *Alius*, in the genit. is always long, as being contracted for *alīius*; *alterius*, short.

In Greek words, when a vowel comes before another, no certain rule concerning its quantity can be given.

*Sometimes it is short*: as, *Danaë*, *Idæa*, *Sophia*, *Symphonia*, *Simōia*, *Hýades*, *Pháon*, *Deucallon*, *Pygmalion*, *Thebáia*, &c.

*Often it is long*: as, *Lycáon*, *Macháon*, *Didymáon*; *Amphion*, *Arion*, *Ixion*, *Pau-*

dion; Nāis, Lāis, Achāia; Brisēis, Cadmōis; Latōos, & Latōia, Myrtōus, Nerēius, Priamēius; Achelōius, Minōius; Arcebiāus, Menelāus, Amphiarāus; Eneās, Penēus, Epēus, Acrisioēus, Adamantēus, Phœbēus, Giganēus; Darius, Basirius, Eugeniaus, Bacchius; Cassiopēa, Caesarēa, Chironēa, Cytherēa, Galatēa, Laodicea, Medea, Panthēa, Penelopēa; Clio, Eury, Elegia, Iphigenia, Alexandria, Thalia, Antiochia, Idolostrā, Iliantia, palatia, &c. Lærtēs, Dēiphobus, Dējanira, Trōēs, hērēs, &c.

Sometimes it is common; as, Chocra platea, Malra, Nerēides, canopum, Oriam, Geryon, Eos, ebus &c. So in foreign words, Michael, Israel, Raphael, Abraham, &c.

The accusative of nouns in *eus* is usually short; as, *Orphēa, Salmonēa, Capharēa*, &c. but sometimes long; as, *Idomēnta, Ilionēa*, Virg. Instead of *Elegia, Cytherēa*, we find *Elegia, Cythērēa* Ovid. But the quantity of Greek words cannot be properly understood without the knowledge of Greek.

In English, a vowel before another is also sometimes lengthened; as, *science, idēa*.

II. A vowel before two consonants, or before a double consonant is long (*by position, as it is called*;) as,

*ārma, fāllō, āxis, gūza, mājor*; the compounds of *jugum* excepted; as, *bijūgus, quadriūgus, &c.*

When the foregoing word ends in a short vowel, and the following begins with two consonants or a double one, that vowel is sometimes lengthened by position; as,

*Ferte citi flammās, date velli, scandite muros.* Virg.

But this rarely occurs.

¶ A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common;

as the middle syllable in *volucris, tenebra*, thus,

*Et primū similis volūeri, mox vera volūeris.* Ovid.

*Nex tenēbras, profert, Phœbus fugat inde tenēbras.* Id.

But in prose these words are pronounced short. So *peragro, pharetra, podagra, phiragra, celebris, lacerat*, &c.

To make this rule hold, three things are requisite. The vowel must be naturally short, the mute must go before the liquid, and be in the same syllable with it. Thus *a* in *pateris* is made common in verse, because *a* in *pater* is naturally short, or always so by custom: but *a* in *matris, acris*, is always long, because long by nature or custom in *mater* and *acer*. In like manner the penult in *salūbris, ambulācrum*, is always long; because they are derived from *salus, salūtia*, and *ambulātum*. So *a* in *arte, abluo*, &c. is long by position, because the mute and the liquid are in different syllables.

*L* and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words; *m* and *n* do not take place except in Greek words.

III. A contracted syllable is long; as,

*Nūl* for *nihil*; *mī*, for *mihi*; *cōgo*, for *coāgo*; *alius*, for *altius*; *tibicen*, for *tibūcen*; *ūt*, for *ūt*; *sōdes*, for *si audes*; *nōlo*, for *non volo*; *bīgæ*, for *bijūgæ*; *scilicet*, for *scire licet*, &c.

IV. A diphthong is always long; as,

*Aurum, Cæsar, Eubœa, &c.* Only *præ* in composition before a vowel is commonly short; as, *hræire, hræustus*; thus,

*Nec totā tamen ille prior præeunte carinā.* Virg.

*Stipitibus duris agitur sudibusque præustis.* Id.

But it is sometimes lengthened; as,

*— cum vacuus domino præiret Arion.* Statius.

In English we pronounce several of the diphthongs short, by sinking the sound of one vowel; but then there is properly no diphthong.

## SPECIAL RULES.

## I. CONCERNING THE FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

*Preterites and Supines of Two Syllables.*

V. Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Veni. vidi, vici.*

Except *bibi, scidi* from *scindo*, *scidi* from *scido*, *tūli, dēdi*, and *stēti*, which are shortened.

VI. Supines of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Visum, casum, motum.*

Except *satum*, from *sēro*; *ctum*, from *cico*; *litum*, from *lino*; *situm* from *sino*; *statum*, from *sisto*; *itum*, from *eo*; *datum*, from *do*; *rutum*, from the compounds of *ruo*; *quatum*, from *queo*; *ratus*, from *reor*.

*Preterites which double the first syllable.*

VII. Preterites which double the first syllable, have both the first syllables short; as, *Cecidi, tetigi, pepuli, pepēri, didici, tūtūdi*: except *cēcidi*, from *cædo*; *pepēchi*, from *pædo*; and when two consonants intervene; as, *fēfelli, tētēdi, &c.*

## INCREASE OF NOUNS.

A noun is said to increase, when it has more syllables in any of the oblique cases than in the nominative; as, *rex, régis*. Here *re* is called the *increase* or *crement*, and so through all the other cases. The last syllable is never esteemed a ccrement.

Some nouns have a double increase, that is, increase by more syllables than one; as, *iter, itinēris*.

A noun in the plural is said to increase, when in any case it has more syllables than the genitive singular; as, *gener, genēri, genērōrum*.

Nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions, do not increase in the singular number, unless where one vowel comes before another; as, *fructus, fructūi; res, rei*; which fall under Rule I.

*Third Declension.*

VIII. Nouns of the third declension which increase, make *a* and *o* long; *e, i, and u* short; as,

*Pietātis, honōris; muliēris, lapīdia, murmuris,*

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive in the third declension. But here perhaps it may be proper to be more particular.

## A.

A noun in A shortens *atis* in the genitive; as, *dogma, -atis*; *poema, -atis*.

## O.

O shortens *inis*, but lengthens *enis* and *enis*; as, *Caro, -inis*; *Virgo, -inis*; *Arto, -inis*; *Cicero, -inis*. Geminate or partial nouns vary their quantity. Most of them shorten the genitive; as, *Macedo, -inis*; *Saxo, -inis*. Some are long; as, *Succubus, -inis*. *Britannus* is common.

## I. C. D.

I shortens *itis*; as, *Hydromeli, -itis*. Ec lengthens *-cis*; as, *Halec, -ecis*.

A noun in D shortens the crement; as, *David, -idis*.

## L.

Masculines in AL shorten *ilis*; as, *Sal, -ilis*; *Hannibal, -ilis*; *Hasdrubal, -ilis*; but neuter lengthen it; as, *animal, -ilis*.

*Solis* from *sol* is long; also Hebrew words in *el*; as, *Michael, -elis*. Other nouns in L shorten the crement; as, *Vigil, -ilis*; *consul, -ulis*.

## N.

Nouns in ON vary their crement. Some lengthen it; as, *Helicon, -onis*; *Chiron, -onis*. Some shorten it; as, *Mecynus, -onis*; *Actaeon, -onis*.

EN shortens *inis*; as, *flumen, -inis*; *tibicen, -inis*. Other nouns in N lengthen the penult. AN *enis*; as, *Titan, -enis*; EN *enis*; as, *Suen, -enis*; IN *inis*; as, *delphinus, -inis*; YN *inis*; as, *Phorcyn, -inis*.

## R.

1. Neuters in AR lengthen *aris*; as, *calcar, -aris*. Except the following, *bacchar, -aris*; *jubar, -aris*; *vector, -aris*. Also the adjective *par, -aris*, and its compounds, *impar, -aris*; *dupar, -aris*, &c.

2. The following nouns in R lengthen the genitive: *Nar naris*, the name of a river; *fur furis*; *ver veris*: Also *Rectimer, -aris*; *Byxer, -aris*; *Ser, -aris*; *Iber, -aris*, proper names.

3. Greek nouns in TER lengthen *teris*; as, *crater, -eris*; *character, -eris*. Except *aether, -eris*.

4. OR lengthens *oris*; as, *amor, -oris*. Except neuter nouns; as, *marmor, -oris*; *aequer, -oris*; Greek nouns in *tor*; as, *Hector, -oris*; *Actor, -oris*; *thctor, -oris*: Also *ardor, -oris*, and *memor, -oris*.

5. Other nouns in R shorten the genitive; AR *aris*, masc.; as, *Caesar, -aris*; *Hamilcar, -aris*; *lar, -aris*. ER *eris* of any gender; as, *uer, -eris*; *mulier, -eris*; *cadaver, -eris*; *iter, -eris*, anciently *itiner, -eris*; *verberis*, from the obsolete *verber*. UR *uris*; as, *vultur, -uris*; *murmur, -uris*. YR *uris*; as, *Martyr, -uris*.

## AS.

1. Nouns in AS, which have *atis*, lengthen the crement; as, *pietas, -atis*; *Macednes, -atis*. Except *anas, -atis*.

2. Other nouns in AS shorten the crement; as, Greek nouns having the genitive in *itis*, *atis*, and *enis*; thus, *Palas, -adis*; *artocreas, -adis*; *Melas, -enis*, the name of a river. So *vas, -adis*; *mas, -adis*: But *vas, -adis*, is long.

## ES.

ES shortens the crement; as, *miles, -is*; *Ceres, -eris*; *pes, -edis*.

Except *locuples, -etis*; *quies, -etis*; *mansues, -etis*; *haeres, -etis*; *merces, -etis*.

## IS.

Nouns in IS shorten the crement; as, *lapis, -idis*; *Sanguis, -inis*; *Phyllis, -idis*.

Except *Glis, -idis*; and Latin nouns which have *itis*; as, *lis, -etis*; *dis, -idis*; *Quis, -is*; *Sannio, -itis*: But *Charis*, a Greek noun, has *Charitis*.

The following also lengthen the crement; *Crenis, -idis*; *Prophis, -idis*; *Neris, -idis*, proper names. And Greek nouns in *is*, which have also *in*; as, *Salamis, -idis*, or *in, -idis*.

## OS.

Nouns in OS lengthen the crement; as, *nepos, -osis*; *flor, -oris*.

Except *Boo, -osis*; *compoo, -osis*; and *impoo, -osis*.

## US.

US shortens the crement; as, *tempus, -us*; *tripus, -us*.

Except nouns which have *udis, -us*, and *utis*; as, *instus, -udis*; *Jus, -uris*; *satus, -us*. But *Ligus* has *Liguris*; the obsolete *pecus, -ecudis*; and *intercus, -us*.

The neuter of the comparative has *uris*; as, *melius, -uris*.

## YS.

YS shortens *ylis* or *ylas*; as, *chlamys, -ylis*, or *ylas*; and lengthens *ynis*; as, *Brachys, -ynis*.

## BS. PS. MS.

Nouns in S, with a consonant going before, shorten the penult of the genitive; as, *caelebs, -ibis*; *inops, -opis*; *herms, -hemis*.

Except *Cyclops, -opis*; *seps, -epts*; *gryps, -gryphis*; *Cercops, -epts*; *plebs, -plebis*; *hydraps, -epts*.

T.  
 T shortens the crement; as, *caput, -itis*.  
 X.

1. Nouns in X which have the genitive in *gis*, shorten the crement; as, *conjux, -ūgis*; *remex, -ūgis*; *Allobrox, -ūgis*; *Phryx, Phrūgis*. But *lex, lēgis*, and *ex, rēgis*, are long; and likewise *frūgis*.

2. EX shortens *icis*; as, *verticx, -icis*: except *vibcx, -icis*.

3. Other nouns in X lengthen the crement; as, *paax, pācis*; *raax, -icis*; *vox, vōcis*; *lux, lūcis*; *Pollux, -ūcis*, &c.

Except *ſūcia, nēcia, vūcia, pūcia, callicis, cōllicis, pūcia, fornūcia, nūcia, Cappadūcia, dūcia, nūcia, crūcia, trūcia, onychūcia, Erycūcia, mastyx, -ychūcia*, the resin of the *lentiscus*, or *mastich-tree*, and many others whose quantity can only be ascertained by authority.

4. Some nouns vary the crement; as, *Gyphax, -ūcis, or -icis*; *Sondayx, -icis, or -icis*; *Bebryx, -ūcis, or -icis*.

*Increase of the Plural Number.*

IX. Nouns of the plural number which increase, make *A, E, and O* long; but shorten *I and U*; as,

*musārum, rērum, dominōrum*; *rēgibus, portūbus*: except *bōbus* or *būbus*, contracted for *bōvibus*.

INCREASE OF VERBS.

A verb is said to increase, when any part has more syllables than the second person singular of the present of the indicative active; as, *amas, amāmus*, where the second syllable *ma* is the increase or crement; for the last syllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increases by several syllables; as, *amās, amābāmini*; in which case it is said to have a *first, second, or third increase*.

X. In the increase of verbs, *a, e, and o*, are long; *i and u*, short; as,

*Amāre, docēre, amātōte*; *legimus, sūmus, volūmus*.

The poets sometimes shorten *dēdrunt* and *sēdrunt*; and lengthen *rīmus* and *rītis*, in the future of the subjunctive; as—*transieritis aquas*, Ovid. All the other exceptions from this rule are marked in the formation of the verb.

The first or middle syllables of words which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are said to be long or short by *authority*; and their quantity can only be discovered from the usage of the poets, which is the most certain of all rules.

REMARKS on the Quantity of the PENULT of Words.

1. Patronymics in *IDES* or *ADES* usually shorten the penult; as, *Priamīdes, Atlantiādes, &c.* Unless they come from nouns in *eus*; as, *Pelīdes, Tydīdes, &c.*

2. Patronymics, and similar words, in *AIS, EIS, ITIS, OIS, OTIS, INE, and ONE*, commonly lengthen the penult as, *Achāis, Ptolemāis, Chrysēis, Ænēis, Memphūtis, Latōis, Icarīōtis, Nerine, Arisiōne*. Except *Thebāis*, and *Phocās*; and *Nereis*, which is common.

3. Adjectives in *ACUS*, *ICUS*, *IDUS*, and *IMUS*, for the most part shorten the penult; as, *Ægyptiācus*, *academicus*, *lepidus*, *legitimus*; also superlatives; as, *fortissimus*, &c. Except *opācus*, *amicus*, *apricus*, *pudicus*, *mendicus*, *posticus*, *fidus*, *infidus*, (but *perfidus* of *per* and *fides*, is short) *bimus*, *quadrimus*, *patrimus*, *matrimus*, *opāmus*; and two superlatives, *imus*, *primus*.

4. Adjectives in *ALIS*, *ANUS*, *ARUS*, *IVUS*, *ORUS*, *OSUS*, lengthen the penult; as, *dotālis*, *urbānus*, *avārus*, *æstivus*, *decōrus*, *arenōsus*. Except *barbārus*, *opipārus*.

5. Verbal adjectives in *ILIS*, shorten the penult; as, *agilis*, *facilis*, &c. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as, *anilis*, *civilis*, *herilis*, &c. To these add *exilis*, *subtilis*; and names of months, *Aprilis*, *Quincilis*, *Sextilis*: Except *humilis*, *parilis*; and also *similis*. But all adjectives in *atilis*, are short; as, *versātilis*, *volatilis*, *umbra-tilis*, &c.

6. Adjectives in *INUS* derived from inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c. also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult; as, *amaractinus*, *crocinus*, *cedrinus*, *faginus*, *oleaginus*; *adamantinus*, *cristallinus*, *crastinus*, *pristinus*, *perendinus*, &c.

Other adjectives in *INUS* are long; as, *agninus*, *austri- nus*, *binus*, *clandestinus*, *Latinus*, *marinus*, *supinus*, *vesper- tinus*, &c.

7. Diminutives in *OLUS*, *OLA*, *OLUM*; and *ULUS*, *ULA*, *ULUM*, always shorten the penult; as, *urceolus*, *filiola*, *musæolem*; *lectulus*, *ratiuncula*, *corculum*, &c.

8. Adverbs in *TIM* lengthen the penult; as, *oppidatim*, *viritim*, *tribulim*. Except *affatim*, *perpetim*, and *statim*.

9. Desideratives in *URIO* shorten the antepenultima, which in the second or third person is the penult; as, *esurio*, *esuris*, *esurit*. But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable; as, *ligurio*, *liguris*; *scaturio*, *scatūris*, &c.

#### PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

*The following proper names lengthen the penult.* Abdera, Abydos, Adonis, Æolus, Ætlius, Ahala, Alaricus, Alcides, Amyclæ, Andronicus Anubis, Archimædis, Ariarthes, Ariobarzanes, Aristides, Aristobulus, Aristogiton, Arpinum, Arabanus; Brachmanes, Busiris, Butrotus & Cethægus, Chalcedon, Cleobulus, Cyrene, Cythæra, Curtes; Darci, Demoneus, Diomædes, Diæres, Dioscûri; Ebulæ, Eriphyle, Eubulus, Euclides, Euphrates, Eumæda, Euripus, Euxinus; Garganus, Gædulus, Granicus; Hellogabalus, Henricus, Heraclides, Heraclitus, Hippodax, Hippæus; Irene; Laeydas, Latona, Leucata, Lugdunum, Lycoras; Mandane, Mausolus, Maximinus, Melesæger, Messala, Messana, Milæus; Nastica, Nicænor, Nicetas; Pachynus, Pandora, Peloris, & -us, Pharsalus, Phœnice, Polites, Polyæctus, Polynices, Priæpus; Sarpædon, Serapæ, Sinope, Stratonice, Suffetes; Tigræna, Thessalonica; Verona, Verouica.

*The following are short:* Amathus, Amphipolis, Anabasis, Anticyra, Antigonus, & -ne, Antiochus; Antiochus, Antiope, Antipas, Antipater, Antiphænes, Antiphæ-

tes, Antiphyla, Antiphon, Anſtus, Apſulus, Areopagus, Arim'num, Arménus; Athénis, Attalus, Attica; Bírrix, Bruetéri; Caliber, Callierates, Callistratus, Candace, Cantaber, Carneades, Chertus, Chrysostomus, Cleombrotus, Cleomenes, Corſeus, Constantinopólis, Crat'us, Cratylus, Creméra, Crustuméri, Cybèle, Cy-cládes, Cyzius; Dalmáta, Damocles, Dardanus, Dejoces, Deiotarus, Democritus, Demipho, Didymus, Diogenes, Drepanum, Dumiorix; Empedocles, Ephesus, Evergetes, Eumenes, Eurymedon, Euripylus; Fucinus; Geryónes, Gyarus; He-cyra, Heliopólis, Hermíone, Herodotus, Hesiodus, Hesíone, Hippocrates, Hippo-tamus, Hypata, Hypanis; Ictus, Ictas, Illýris, Iphitus, Ismarus, Ithaca; Lao-dice, Laomedon, Lampsacus, Lamyrus, Lapithæ, Leucetia, Libanus, Lipare, v. -a, Lyimachus, Longimanus; Maráthon, Manatus, Marmarica, Massagete, Matróna, Megara, Mellus, & -ta, Metropólis, Mutina, Myconus; Neceles, Neris, tos, Noricum; Omphale; Patara, Pegusus, Pharnaces, Pisistratus, Polydamas, Polyxenna, Porsena, or Porsenna, Praxiteles, Puteoli, Pylades, Pythagoras; Sarmata, Sarsina, Semela, Semiramis, Sequani, & -a, Seriphos, Sicúris, Soerates, Soldoma, Sotades, Spartacus, Sporades, Strongylis, Stymphalus, Sybaris; Targotus, Telegonus, Telemachus, Tenedos, Tarraco, Theophanes, Theophilus, Tomyrus; Urbicus; Veneti, Vologesus, Volusus; Xenocrates; Zoilus, Zopyrus.

The result of several words is doubtful; thus, *Batavi*, Lucan, *Batavi*, Juv. & Mart. *Fortuitus*, Horat. *Fortuitus*, Mart. Some make *fortuitus* of three syllables; but it may be shortened like *gratuitus*. Stat. *Patrinus*, *matrinus*, *praetolor*, &c. are by some lengthened, and by some shortened; but for their quantity there is no certain authority.

## II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

### A.

XI. *A* in the end of a word declined by cases is short; as, *Musá, templá, Tydeá, lampadá*.

Exc. The ablative of the first declension is long; as, *Musá, Aenéá*; and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as*; as, *O Aenéá, O Pallá*.

*A* in the end of a word not declined by cases is long; as, *Amá, frustrá, prætereá, ergá, intrá*.

Exc. *Itá, quá, eá, postea, pútá*, (adv.) are short; and sometimes, though more rarely, the prepositions *contra, ultra*, and the compounds of *ginta*; as, *trigintá, &c.* *Contra*, and *ultra*, when adverbs, are always long.

### E.

XII. *E* in the end of a word is short; as,

*Natē, sedilē, patrē, currē, nempē, antē*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables are long; as, *mē, tē, sē*; except these enclitic conjunctions *quē, vē, nē*; and these syllabical adjectives, *ptē, cē, tē*; as, *suaptē, hujuscē, tutē*; but these may be comprehended under the general rule, as they never stand by themselves.

Exc. 2. Nouns of the first and fifth declension are long; as, *Calliōpē, Anchisē, fidē*. So *rē*, and *diē*, with their compounds, *quarē, hodiē, pridē, postridiē, quotidiē*: Also Greek nouns which want the singular, *Cetē, melē, Tempē*; and the second person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation; as, *Dorē, manē*; but *cave, vale*, and *vide*, are sometimes short.



Exc. 3. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declension are long; as, *placidē, pulchrē, valdē*, contracted for *validē*: to these add *fermē, ferē, and ohē*; also all adverbs of the superlative degree; as, *doctissimē, fortissimē*: but *benē* and *malē* are short.

## I.

XIII. *I* final is long; as, *Dōmini, patri, deceri*.

Exc. 1. Greek vocatives are short; as, *Alexi, Amarylli*.

Exc. 2. The dative of Greek nouns of the third declension which increase, is common; as, *Palladi, Minotidi*.

*Mihi, tibi, sibi*, are also common; so likewise are *ibi, nisi, ubi, quasi*; and *cui*, when a dissyllable, which in poetry is seldom the case. *Sicubi* and *necubi* are always short.

## O.

XIV. *O* final is common; as, *Virgo, Amo, quando*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *o* are long; as, *ō, dō, stō, prō*. The dative and ablative sing. of the second declension is long; as, *librō, dominō*: also Greek nouns, as, *Didō*, and *Athō*, the genit. of *Athos*, and adverbs derived from nouns; as, *certō, falsō, paulō*. To these add *quō, eō*, and their compounds, *quōvis, quōcunque, adeō, ideō*; likewise, *illō, idcircō, citrō, intrō, retrō, ultrō*.

Exc. 2. The following words are short; *Egō, sciō, cedō*, a defective verb, *homō, citō, illicō, immō, duō, ambō, modō*, with its compounds, *quomodō, dummodō, postmodō*: but some of these are also found long.

Exc. 3. The gerund in *DO* in Virgil is long; in other poets it is short. *Ergō*, on account of, is long; *ergo*, therefore, is doubtful.

## U and Y.

XV. *U* final is long; *Y* final is short; as, *Vultū: Molŷ*.

## B, D, L, M, R, T.

XVI. *B, D, L, R, and T*, in the end of a word, are short; as,

*Ab, apūd, semēl, precōr, capūt*.

The following words are long, *sāl, sōl, nīl*; *pār*, and its compounds, *impar, dispar, &c.*; *fār, lār, Nār, cūr, fūr*; also nouns in *er* which have *ēris* in the genitive; as, *Cratēr*,

*vēr*, *Ibēr*; likewise *aēr*, *æthēr*; to which add Hebrew names; as, *Jōb*, *Daniēl*, *David*.

*M* final anciently made the foregoing vowel short; as, *Militūm octo*, Ennius. But by later poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel; thus, *Milit' octo*; except in compound words; as, *circūmāgō*, *circūmeo*.

## C, N.

XVII. *C* and *N* in the end of a word, are long; as,

*Ac*, *sic*, *nōn*. So Greek nouns in *n*; as, *Tilān*, *Sirēn*, *Salamīn*; *Æneān*, *Anchisēn*, *Circēn*; *Lacedæmōn*, &c.

The following words are short, *nēc* and *donēc*; *forsitān*, *in*, *forsūn*, *tamēn*, *ān*, *vidēn*; likewise nouns in *en* which have *inis* in the genitive; as, *qarmēn*, *crimēn*; together with several Greek nouns; as, *Iliōn*, *Pylōn*, *Alexīn*.

The pronoun *hic*, and the verb *fac*, are common.

## AS, ES, OS.

XVIII. *AS*, *ES*, and *OS*, in the end of a word, are long; as, *Mās*, *quīs*, *bonōs*.

The following words are short, *anās*, *ēs*, from *sum* and *penēs*; *ōs*, having *ossis* in the genitive, *compūs*, and *impūs*; also a great many Greek nouns of all these three terminations; as, *Arcās* and *Arcādās*, *herōās*, *Phrygēs*, *Arcadōs*, *Tenedōs*, *Melōs*, &c. and Latin nouns in *es*, having the penult. of the genitive increasing short; as, *Alēs*, *hebēs*, *obsēs*. But *Cerēs*, *pariēs*, *ariēs*, *abiēs*, and *pēs*, with its compounds are long.

## IS, US, YS.

XIX. *IS*, *US*, and *YS*, in the end of a word, are short; as,

*Turrīs*, *legīs*, *legimūs*, *annūs*, *Capys*.

Exc. 1. Plural cases in *is* and *us* are long; as, *Pennis*, *libris*, *nohis*, *omnis*, for *omnes*, *fructūs*, *manūs*: also the genitive singular of the fourth declension; as, *portūs*. But *bus* in the dat. and abl. plural is short; as, *floribūs*, *fructibūs*, *rebūs*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive in *ilis*, *inis*, or *entis*; as, *lis*, *Samnīs*, *Salamīs*, *Simōis*. To these add the adverbs *grātis* and *foris*; the noun *glīs*, and *vīs*, whether it be a noun or a verb; also *is* in the second person singular, when the plural has *itis*; as, *audīs*, *abīs*, *possēs*. *Ris* in the future of the subjunctive is common.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *us* are long; as, *grūs*, *sūs*: also nouns which in the genitive have *ūris*, *ūdis*, *ūtis*, *untis*, or *ūdis*; as, *tellūs*, *incūs*, *virtūs*, *amāthūs*, *tripūs*. To these add

the genitive of Greek nouns of the third declension; as, *Clīūs, Sapphūs, Mantūs*; also nouns which have *u* in the vocative; as, *Panthūs*.

Exc. 4. *Tethys* is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys*, which have likewise *yn* in the nominative; as, *Phorcys, Trachys*.

¶ The last syllable of every verse is common;

Or, as some think, necessarily long on account of the pause or suspension of the voice, which usually follows it in pronunciation.

## THE QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE AND COMPOUND WORDS.

### 1. DERIVATIVES.

XX. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives; as,

<i>Xmīcus,</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>ama,</i>	<i>Decūro,</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>decus, -ūris.</i>
<i>Auctōnor,</i>		<i>auctio, -ōnis.</i>	<i>Exūlo,</i>		<i>exul, -ūlis.</i>
<i>Auctōro,</i>		<i>auctor, -ōris.</i>	<i>Pāvidus,</i>		<i>pāveo.</i>
<i>Audītor,</i>		<i>audītum.</i>	<i>Quīrīto,</i>		<i>quīris, -ītis.</i>
<i>Auspīcor,</i>		<i>auspex, -īcis.</i>	<i>Radicītus,</i>		<i>radix, -īcis.</i>
<i>Caupōnor,</i>		<i>caupo, -ōnis.</i>	<i>Sospīto,</i>		<i>Sospes, -ītis.</i>
<i>Compētitor,</i>		<i>compētītum.</i>	<i>Nātūrā,</i>		<i>nātus.</i>
<i>Cornīor,</i>		<i>cornix, -īcis.</i>	<i>Māternus,</i>		<i>māter.</i>
<i>Custōdio,</i>		<i>custos, -ōdis.</i>	<i>Lēgeram, &amp;c.</i>		<i>lēgo.</i>
<i>Decōrus,</i>		<i>decor, -ōris.</i>	<i>Lēgeram, &amp;c.</i>		<i>lēgi.</i>

### EXCEPTIONS.

<i>Dēni, from dēcem.</i>		<i>1. Long from Short.</i>		<i>Mōbīlis from mōveo.</i>
<i>Fōnce, fōveo.</i>		<i>Suspīcio, from suspīcor.</i>		<i>Hūmor, hūmus.</i>
<i>Hūmanus, hūmo.</i>		<i>Sēdes, sēden.</i>		<i>Jūmentum, jūvo.</i>
<i>Rēgula, rēgo.</i>		<i>Sēcus, sēcus.</i>		<i>Vox, vōcis, vōco, &amp;c.</i>
		<i>Pēnuria, pēnus.</i>		
		<i>2. Short from Long.</i>		
<i>Arēna and Arīsta, fram</i>		<i>Arēo, Lūcerna, fram</i>		<i>lūceo.</i>
<i>Nōta and nōto,</i>		<i>nōtus, Dux, ūcis,</i>		<i>dūco.</i>
<i>Vādum,</i>		<i>vādo, Stābīlis,</i>		<i>stāham.</i>
<i>Fīdes,</i>		<i>fīdo, Dīctio,</i>		<i>dīs, dīctis.</i>
<i>Sōpor,</i>		<i>sōpio, Quāsilus,</i>		<i>quātilus, &amp;c.</i>

### 2. COMPOUNDS.

XXI. Compounds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them; as,

*Dēdūco,* of *dē* and *dūco*. So, *prōfēro, antēfēro, consōlor, dēnōto, dēpecūlor, deprāvo, despēro, despūmo, desquāmo, enōdo, trūūio, exūdo, exāro, expāveo, incēro, inhūmo, investigo, præg-rāvo, prænāto, rēgelo, appāro, appāreo, concāvus, præg-rāvis, desōlo, suffōco & suffōco, diffīdit* from *diffīdo*, and *diffīdit* from *diffīdo*, *indīco* and *indīco*, *permānet* from *permāneo*, and *permānet* from *permāneo*, *effōdit*, in the present, and *effōdit* in the perfect; so *exēdit* and *exēdit*; *devēnit* and *devēnit*; *devēnīmus* and *devēnīmus*; *reperīmus* and *reperīmus*; *effūgit* and *effūgit*, &c.

The change of a vowel or diphthong in the compound does not alter the quantity; as, *incido* from *in* and *cado*; *incido*, from *in* and *cædo*; *suffoco*, from *sub* and *faux*, *faucis*. Unless the letter following make it fall under some general rule; as, *admitto*, *përcello*, *dëosculator*, *pröhibeo*.

Exc. 1. *Agnitum*, *cognitum*, *dëjëro*, *pëjëro*, *innüba*, *pronüba*, *maledicus*, *veridicus*, *nihilum*, *semisöpitus*; from *nötus*, *jüro*, *nübo*, *dico*, *hilum*, and *söpio*: *ambitus*, a participle from *ambio*, is long; but the substantives *ambitus* and *ambitio* are short. *Connubium* has the second syllable common.

Exc. 2. The preposition *PRO* is short in the following words: *pröfundus*, *pröfugio*, *pröfugus*, *prönëpos*, *prönëptis*, *pröfestus*, *pröfari*, *pröfiteor*, *pröfanus*, *pröfecto*, *pröcella*, *prötervus*, and *pröpägo*, a lineage; *pro* in *pröpägo*, a vine stock, or shoot, is long. *Pro* in the following words is doubtful; *propago*, to propagate; *propino*, *profundo*, *propello*, *propulso*, *procuro*, and *Proserpina*.

Exc. 3. The inseparable prepositions *SE* and *DI* are long; as, *sëpäro*, *divello*: except *dirtimo*, *disertus*. *Re* is short; as, *rëmätto*, *rëfëro*: except in the impersonal verb *rëfert*, compounded of *res* and *fero*.

Exc. 4. *E*, *I*, *O*, in the end of the former compounding word are usually shortened; as, *trëcenti*, *nëfas*, *nëque*, *patëfacio*, &c. *Capricornus*, *omnipotens*, *agricöla*, *significo*, *biformis*, *aliger*, *Trivia*, *tubicön*, &c. *duödëcim*, *hödie*, *sacrösanctus*, &c. But from each of these there are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long when it is varied by cases; as, *quidam*, *quivis*, *tantidem*, *eidem*, &c. And when the compounding words may be taken separately; as, *ludimagister*, *lucrifacio*, *siquis*, &c. *Idem* in the masc. is long, in the neuter, short; also, *ubique*, *ibidem*. But in *ubivis* and *ubicunque*, the *i* is doubtful.

## ACCENT.

*Accent* is the tone of the voice with which a syllable is pronounced:

In every word of two or more syllables, one syllable is sounded higher than the rest, to prevent monotony, or an uniformity of sound, which is disagreeable to the ear.

When accent is considered with respect to the sense, or when a particular stress is laid upon any word, on account of the meaning, it is called *Emphäsis*.

There are three accents, distinguished by their different sounds; *acute*, *grave*, and *circumflex*.

1. The *acute* or *sharp* accent raises the voice in pronunciation, and is thus marked [ ' ]; as, *prófero*, *prófer*.

2. The *grave* or *base* accent depresses the voice, or keeps it in its natural tone; and is thus marked [ ` ]; as, *doctè*. This accent properly belongs to all syllables which have no other.

The *circumflex* accent first raises and then sinks the voice in some degree on the same syllable; and is therefore placed only upon long syllables. When written, it has this mark, made up of the two former [ ^ ]; as, *amáre*.

The accents are hardly ever marked in English books, except in dictionaries, grammars, spelling-books, or the like, where the acute accent only is used.

The accents are likewise seldom marked in Latin books, unless for the sake of distinction; as in these adverbs *aliquid*, *continuo*, *doctè*, *unde*, &c. to distinguish them from certain cases of adjectives, which are spelt in the same way. So *poétâ*, *gloriâ* in the ablative: *fructûs*, *tumultûs* in the genitive: *nostrâ*, *vestrâ*, the genitive of *nos* and *vos*: *ergâ*, on account of; *socidit*, he slew; *Pompiîl*, for *Pompiîli*; *amâritâ*, for *amaveris*, &c.

## VERSE.

A Verse is a certain number of long and short syllables, disposed according to rule.

It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always *turn* back to the beginning of a new line.

The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it have its just number of syllables, are called *Feet*.

A verse is divided into different feet, rather to ascertain its measure or number of syllables, than to regulate its pronunciation.

### FEET.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables. When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *Cæsura*, which is commonly a long syllable.

#### 1. Feet of two syllables.

*Spondæus*, consists of two long; as *omnes*.  
*Pij rhichius*, two short; as, *dèus*.  
*Iambus*, a short and a long; as, *amans*.  
*Trochæus*, a long and a short; as, *servus*.

#### 2. Feet of three syllables.

*Dactylus* a long and two short; as, *scribèrè*.  
*Anapæstus*, two short and a long; as, *plèidâ*.  
*Amphimæcer*, a long, a short, and a long; as, *chærtâs*.  
*Tribræchys*, three short; as, *dòminûs*.

The following are not so much used :

*Molossus*,  
*Amphibrachys*,  
*Bacchius*,  
*Antibacchius*,

*dèlèctân.*  
*hònòrè.*  
*dèlèrè.*  
*pèllèntûr.*

*Antispastus*,  
*Ionicus major*,  
*Ionicus minor*,  
*Pæon primus*,  
*Pæon secundus*,  
*Pæon tertius*,  
*Pæon quartus*,  
*Epitritus primus*,  
*Epitritus secundus*,  
*Epitritus tertius*,  
*Epitritus quartus*,

*Klèkândèr.*  
*càlcàribûs.*  
*prèpèrâdân.*  
*tèmpèribûs.*  
*pâcèntiâ.*  
*ânimâritûs.*  
*cèlèritûs.*  
*vèlûpèntè.*  
*pænitèntè.*  
*disebrâtiâ.*  
*fòrtlîqûtiâ.*

#### 3. Feet of four syllables.

*Proceleusmaticus*,  
*Dispondeus*,  
*Dijambus*,  
*Choriambus*,  
*Ditrochæus*,

*hòminûblis.*  
*brâbrè.*  
*âmcentiâs.*  
*pônificè.*  
*Cântilèntâ.*

## SCANNING.

The measuring of verse, or the resolving of it into the several feet of which it is composed, is called *Scanning*.

When a verse has just the number of feet requisite, it is called *Versus Acatalectus*, or *Acatalecticus*, an *Acatalectic* verse: if a syllable be wanting, it is called *Catalectic*: if there be a syllable too much, *Hypercatalectic*, or *Hypermetr*.

The ascertaining whether the verse be complete, defective, or redundant, is called *Depositio*, or *Clausula*.

## DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE.

## I. HEXAMETER.

The Hexameter or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee; all the rest may be either dactyles or spondees; as,

Ludere | que xer- | lem calla- | mo per- | misit a- | gressi. *Virg.*  
Infan- | dum re- | gina, ju- | bes renu- | vare do- | lorum. *Id.*

A regular Hexameter-line cannot have more than seventeen syllables, or fewer than thirteen.

Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verse is called *Spondaic*; as,

Cera de- | tum abbo- | les ma- | gnus Jovis | incru- | mentum. *Virg.*

This verse is used when any thing grave, slow, large, sad, or the like, is expressed. It commonly has a dactyle in the fourth place, and a word of four syllables in the end.

Sometimes there remains a superfluous syllable at the end. But this syllable must either terminate in a vowel, or in the consonant *m*, with a vowel before it: so as to be joined with the following verse, which in the present case must always begin with a vowel; as,

Omnia | Meretur- | o simi- | lis vo- | cemque co- | lorumque  
Et flavos crines — *Virg.*

Those Hexameter verses sound best, which have dactyles and spondees alternately; as,

Ludere que vellem calamo permisit agresti. *Virg.*  
Pinguis et ingrata premeretur casus urbi. *Id.*

Or which have more dactyles than spondees; as,

Tityre tu patula recubans sub tegmine fagi.

It is esteemed a great beauty in an Hexameter verse, when by the use of dactyles and spondees, the sound is adapted to the sense; as,

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum. *Virg.*

Illi inter sese magna vi brachia tollunt. *Id.*

Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.

Accipiant inimicum, imbrem, rimisque fatiscunt. *Id.*

But what deserves particular attention in scanning Hexameter verse, is the *CÆSURA*.

*Cæsura* is when, after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot; as,

At re-gina gra-vi jam-dudum, &c.

The *Cæsura* is variously named, according to the different parts of the hexameter verse in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Triemimeris*: when on the fifth half-foot, or the syllable after the second foot, it is called *Penthemimeris*: when it happens on the first syllable of the fourth foot, or the seventh half-foot, it is called *Hepthemimeris*: and when on the ninth half-foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Eymemimeris*.

All these different species of the *Cæsura* sometimes occur in the same verse; as,

Et hinc nunciam moli-II sui-que hinc-est thos. *Virg.*

But the most common and beautiful *Cæsura* is the penthemim; on which some lay a particular accent or stress of the voice in reading an hexameter verse thus composed, whence they call it the *Cæsural pause*: as,

Tityre dum rede- O, brevis est via, pauce capellas. *Virg.*

When the *Cæsura* falls on a syllable naturally short, it renders it long; as, the last syllable of *fultus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of an hexameter verse in a great measure depends on the proper disposition of the *Cæsura*. Without this, a line consisting of the number of feet requisite will be little else than mere prose; as,

Rōmæ mentē tērrāte impigēr hānātibāl ārmā. *Ænēid.*

The ancient Romans, in pronouncing verse, paid a particular attention to its melody. They not only observed the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse, therefore, we are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by the sense. All the words should be pronounced fully; and the cadence of the verse ought only to be observed, so far as it corresponds with the natural expression of the words. At the end of each line there should be no fall of the voice, unless the sense requires it; but a small pause, half of that which we usually make at a comma.

## 2. PENTAMETER.

The Pentameter verse consists of five feet. Of these the two first are either dactyles or spondees; the third always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth an anapaustus; as,

Nātū | rē sēquē | tūrāē | mīnā quē- | quē sūc. *Propert.*  
Cārminē- | bū vī- | vētātē- | pū in ōm- | nē mētū. *Ovid.*

But this verse is more properly divided into two hemisticks or halves; the former of which consists of two feet, either dactyles or spondees, and a *cæsura*; the latter, always of two dactyles and another *cæsura*; thus,

Nātū | rē sēquē- | tūr | sēmīnā | quēquē sū- | ē.  
Cārminē- | bū vī- | vēs | tēmpū in | ōmnē mē- | ts.

The Pentameter usually ends with a dissyllable, but sometimes also with a polysyllable.

## 3. ASCLEPIADEAN.

The Asclepiadēan verse consists of four feet; namely, a spondee, twice a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Mēcō- | nās hēvīs | cātē rē- | gībūs. *Hor.*

But this verse may be more properly measured thus; in the first place, a spondee; in the second, a dactyle; then a *cæsura*; and after that two dactyles; thus,

Mēcō- | nas ata- | vis | editē | regibus.

## 4. GLYCONIAN.

The Glyconian verse has three feet, a spondee, choriambus, and pyrrhichius; as,

Nāvīs | quē tībī crē- | dītūm. *Horat.*

Or, it may be divided into a spondee and two dactyles; thus,

Nāvīs | quē tībī | creditum.

## 5. SAPPHIC and ADONIAN.

The Sapphic verse has five feet; viz. a trochee, spondee, dactyle, and two trochees; thus,

Intē- | gēr vī- | tē, sēmē- | rīquē | pūrās. *Horat.*

An Adonian verse consists only of a dactyle and spondee; as,

Jupitēr | argēt. *Horat.*

6. PHERECRATIAN.

The Pherecratian verse consists of three feet, a spondee, dactyle, and spondee; thus,

Nīgrīs | æquorā | vēntīs. *Horat.*

7. PHALEUCIAN.

The Phaleucian verse consists of five feet; namely, a spondee, a dactyle, and three trochees; as,

Sūmmām | nēc.mētū- | ūs dī- | ōm, nēc | optēs. *Martial.*

8. THE GREATER ALCAIC.

The Greater Alcaic, called likewise *Dactylic*, consists of four feet, a spondee or iambus, iambus and cæsura, then two dactyles; as,

Virtūs | rēpūl- | ō | nēcēfā | sordīdæ. *Horat.*

9. ARCHILOCHIAN.

The Archilochian iambic verse consists of four feet. In the first and third place, it has either a spondee or iambus; in the second and fourth, always an iambus; and in the end, a cæsura; as,

Nēc sū- | mīt, aut | pōnīt | sēcū- | rēs. *Horat.*

10. THE LESSER ALCAIC.

The Lesser Dactylic Alcaic consists of four feet; namely, two dactyles and two trochees; as,

Arbitrī- | ō pōpū- | lāris | aūræ. *Horat.*

Of the above kinds of verse, the first two take their names from the number of feet of which they consist. All the rest derive their names from those by whom they were either first invented, or frequently used.

There are several other kinds of verse, which are named from the feet by which they are most commonly measured such as the dactylic, trochiac anapestic, and iambic. The last of these is most frequently used.

11. IAMBIC.

Of iambic verse there are two kinds. The one consists of four feet, and is called by a Greek name *Dimeter*; the other consists of six feet, and is called *Trimeter*. The reason of these names is, that among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in iambic verse; whereas the Latins measured it by single feet, and therefore called the dimeter *quaternarius*, and the trimeter *senarius*. Originally this kind of verse was purely iambic, i. e. admitted of no other feet but the iambus; thus,

*Dimeter*, Inār- | sīt æ- | stū- | sūt. *Horat.*

*Trimeter*, Sūs | ēt ī- | psā Rō- | mā vī | rībūs | rūt. *Id.*

But afterwards, both for the sake of ease and variety, different feet were admitted into the uneven or odd places; that is, in the first, third, and fifth places, instead of an iambus, they used a spondee, a dactyle, or an anapestus, and sometimes a tribrachys. We also find a tribrachys in the even places, i. e. in the second place, and in the fourth; for the last foot must always be an iambus; thus,

*Dimeter*, Cāndī | ā trā- | ctāvīt | dāpēs. *Horat.*

Vīdē- | rē prōpē- | rāntēs | dōmūm. *Id.*

*Trimeter*, Quōquō | scēlō- | stī rūl- | tīs aut | cūr dēx | tēris. *Id.*

Pāvīdūm- | quē lēpō- | r' aut ad | vēnām | lāqūō | grūem. *Id.*

Alitī- | hūs āt- | quē cānī | hūs hōmī- | cid' Hēctōrēm.

In comic writers we sometimes find an iambic verse consisting of eight feet, therefore called *Tetrameter* or *Octonarius*.

FIGURES IN SCANNING.

The several changes made upon words to adapt them to the verse are



called *Figures in Scanning*. The chief of these are the *Synalæpha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Diæresis*; *Systôle*, and *Diastôle*.

1. **SYNALÆPHA** is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant. *Virg.*

to be scanned thus,

Conticū- | ēr' om- | nēs in- | tēnti | qu' ōrā tē- | nēbant.

The *Synalæpha* is sometimes neglected; and seldom takes place in the interjections, *ô*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *væ*, *vah*, *heï*; as,

O pater, ô hominum, Divûmque æterna potestas. *Virg.*

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

Insule Ionio in magno, quas dira Celæno. *Virg.*  
Credimus? an, qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt. *Id.*  
Victor apud rapidum Simoënta sub Illo alto.  
Ter sunt ornati imponere Pelio Ossam.  
Glaucō et Panopæ, et Inoo Melicertæ.

2. **ECTHLIPSIS** is when *vis* is cut off, with the vowel before it in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel; as,

O curas hominum! O quantan, est in rebus inane! *Pers.*

thus,

O cū- | rās hōmī- | nū, ō quān- | t' est in | rēbūs in- | ānē.

Sometimes the *Synalæpha*, and *Ecthlipsis* are found at the end of a verse; as,

Sternitur infelix alieno vulnere, cœlumque  
Adspicit, et dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos. *Virg.*  
Jamque iter æmense, turres ac tecta Latinoꝝ  
Ardua cernebant juvenes, murosque subibant. *Id.*

These verses are called *Hypermetri*, because a syllable remains to be carried to the beginning of the next line; thus, *qu' Adspicit*; *r' Ardua*.

3. **SYNÆRESIS** is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Crasis*; as, *Phæthon*, for *Phæthom*. So, *ëi* in *Thesi*, *Urphes*, *deinde*, *Pompei*; *ii*, in *hulle*, *cui*; *vi*, in *proinde*; *ëä*, in *aurëä*; thus,

Notus amor Phædræ, nota est injuria Thesi. *Ovid.*  
Proinde tota eloquio, solitum uli. *Virg.*  
Filius huic contrâ, torquet qui sidera mundi. *Id.*  
Aurëä percussum virgâ, verumque venenis. *Id.*

So in *antehac*, *eadem*, *alvearia*, *deest*, *deerit*, *vehemens*, *anteit*, *eodem*, *alveo*, *graveolentis*, *omnia*, *semianimis*, *semihomo*, *fluviorum*, *totius*, *promontorium*, &c.; as,

Unde eddemque vid sanguisque animusque ferentur. *Virg.*  
Seu læsto fuerint alvearia vimine texta. *Id.*  
Villis amicorum est annona, bonis ubi quid deest. *Hor.*  
Divitis uber agri, Troieque opulenta deerit. *Virg.*  
Vehemens et liquidus puroque simillimus axini. *Hor.*  
Te semper ante it dira necessitas. *Alcaic. Hor.*  
Uno eodemque igni, sic nostro Daphnis amore. *Virg.*  
Cum refluit campis, & jam se condidit alveo. *Id.*  
Inde ubi venere ad fauces graveolentis Averni. *Id.*  
His patriæ ceciderunt manus: quia protinus omnia. *Id.*  
Cædit semianimis Rutulorum calcibus arva. *Id.*  
Semihominis Cæci facies quam dira tenebat. *Id.*  
Fluviorum rex Erânanus, camposque per omnes. *Id.*  
Magnanimosque duces, totiusque ex ordine gentis. *Id.*  
Inde legit Capreas, promontoriumque Minervæ. *Ovid.*

To this figure may be referred the changing of *i* and *u* into *j* and *v*, or pronouncing them in the same syllable with the following vowel; as in *genia*, *tenuis*; *arjetat*, *tenuia*, *abjete*, *pitvita*; *parjetbas*, *Nasidjenus*; for *nua*, *tenuis*, &c.; as,

Propterea qui corpus aquæ naturaque tenuis. *Lucr.*  
 Geniva labant, gelido concrevit frigore sanguis. *Virg.*  
 Aſſetat in portas & duros objice portas. *Id.*  
 Velleraque ut foliis depectant tenuia Seres. *Id.*  
 Edificant, fectâque intexunt abjete costas. *Id.*  
 Præcipue sanus, nisi cum pituita molesta est. *Hor.*  
 Parquetibusque premunt arctis, & quatuor addunt. *Virg.*  
 Ut Nauidjenti juvix te cœna beati. *Hor.*

4. **DIÆRESIS** divides one syllable into two; as, *aulâi*, for *aulæ*; *Tröice*, for *Trojæ*; *Persëus*, for *Perseus*; *miliûs*, for *milvius*; *soliuit*, for *solvit*; *voliuit*, for *rolvit*; *aquæ*, *suetus*, *silasit*, *suesos*, *relanguit*, *reliquas*, for *aquæ*, *suetus*, &c.; as,

*Aulâi in medio libabant pocula Bacchi.* *Virg.*  
*Stamina non ulli dissolvienda Deo.* *Pentam. Tibullus.*  
*Debuant fusos evoluisse suos.* *Id. Ovid.*  
*Quæ calidum faciunt aquæ tactum atque vaporem.* *Lucr.*  
*Cum mihi non tantum furesque fereque suctæ.* *Horat.*  
*Atque alios alii invidant, Venereque sudent.* *Lucr.*  
*Fundat ab extremo flavos Aquilone Sævos.* *Lucan.*  
*Imposito fratri moribunda relanguit ore.* *Ovid.*  
*Reliquas tamen esse vias in mente patentes.* *Lucr.*

5. **SYSTÖLE** is when a long syllable is made short; as the penult in *tulerunt*; thus,

*Matri longa decem tulerunt, fastidia menses.* *Virg.*

6. **DIASTÖLE** is when a syllable usually short is made long; as the last syllable in *amor*, in the following verse;

*Considant, si tantus amor, et mœnia condant.* *Virg.*

To these may be subjoined the *Figures of Diction*, as they are called, which are chiefly used by the poets, though some of them likewise frequently occur in prose.

1. When a letter or syllable is added to the beginning of a word, it is called **PROTHËSIS**; as, *gnatus* for *natus*; *tetili* for *tuli*. When a letter or syllable is interposed in the middle of a word, it is called **EPENTHËSIS**; as, *religio*, for *religio*; *induperator*, for *imperator*. When a letter or syllable is added to the end; it is called **PARAGÖGE**; as, *dicier* for *dici*.

2. If a letter or syllable be taken from the beginning of a word, it is called **APHERËSIS**; as, *natus* for *gnatus*; *tenderant* for *tetenderant*. If from the middle of a word, it is called **SYNCOPE**; as, *dixti*, for *dixisti*; *deum*, for *deorum*. If from the end, **APOCOPE**; as, *viden*, for *videsne*; *Anton*, for *Antonii*.

3. When a letter or syllable is transposed, it is called **METATHËSIS**; as, *pistris*, for *pristis*; *Lybia*, for *Libyæ*. When one letter is put for another, it is called **ANTITHËSIS**; as, *faciuntum*, for *faciendum*; *olli*, for *illi*; *voltis*, for *vultis*.

## DIFFERENT KINDS OF POEMS.

Any work composed in verse is called a *Poem*, (*Pœma*, or *Carmen*.)

Poems are called by various names, from their subject, their form, the manner of treating the subject, and their style.

1. A poem on the celebration of a marriage is called an **EPITHALAMIUM**; on a mournful subject, an **ELEGY** or **LAMENTATION**; in praise of the Supreme Being, a **HYMN**; in praise of any person or thing, a **PANEGYRIC** or **ENCOMIUM**; on the vices of any one, a **SATIRE** or **INVECTIVE**; a poem to be inscribed on a tomb, an **EPITAPH**, &c.

2. A short poem adapted to the lyre or harp, is called an **ODE**, whence such compositions are called *Lyric Poems*: a poem in the form of a letter is called an **EPISTLE**; a short witty poem, playing on the fancies or conceits which arise from any subject, is called an **EPIGRAM**; as those of Catullus and Martial. A sharp unexpected lively turn of wit in the end of an epigram, is called its *Point*. A poem expressing the moral of any device or picture, is called an **EMBLEM**. A poem containing an obscure question to be explained, is called an **ENIGMA** or **RIDDLE**.

When a character is described so that the first letters of each verse, and sometimes the middle and final letters express the name of the person or thing described, it is called an **ACROSTIC**; as the following on our Saviour:

I nter cuncta micans I gniti sidera cœli I,  
 E xpellit tenebras E toto Phœbus ut orb E ;  
 S ic coccus remouet JEBVS caliginis umbra S,  
 V iuificansque simul V ero præco dia mot V  
 S olcm iustitia, S ecce probat esse beati S.

3. From the manner of treating a subject, a poem is either *Exergetic*, *Dramatic*, or *Mixt*.

The *Exergetic*, where the poet always speaks himself, is of three kinds, Historical, Didactic, or Instructive, (as the Satire or Epistle;) and Descriptive.

Of the *Dramatic*, the chief kinds are COMEDY, representing the actions of ordinary life, generally with a happy issue; and TRAGEDY, representing the actions and distresses of illustrious personages, commonly with an unhappy issue. To which may be added *Pastoral Poems*, or BUCOLICS, representing the actions and conversations of shepherds; as most of the eclogues of Virgil.

The *Mixt* kind is where the poet sometimes speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes other characters to speak. Of this kind is chiefly the EPIC or HEROIC poem, which treats of some one great transaction of some great illustrious person, with its various circumstances; as the wrath of Achilles in the *Iliad* of Homer; the settlement of Æneas in Italy in the *Æneid* of Virgil; the fall of man in the *Paradise Lost* of Milton, &c.

4. The style of poetry, as of prose, is of three kinds, the simple, ornate, and sublime.

### COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

In long Poems there is commonly but one kind of verse used. Thus Virgil, Lucretius, Horace in his Satires and Epistles, Ovid in his *Metamorphoses*, Lucan, Silius, Italicus, Valerius Flaccus, Javenal, &c. always use Hexameter verse; Plautus, Terence, and other writers of Comedy, generally use the Iambic, and sometimes the Trochaic. It is chiefly in shorter poems, particularly those which are called Lyric poems, as the odes of Horace and the Psalms of Buchanan, that various kinds of verse are combined.

A poem which has only one kind of verse, is called by a Greek name, MONOCOLON, sc. *poema*, v. *carmen*; or MONOCŒLOS, sc. *ode*: that which has two kinds, DICOLON; and that which has three kinds of verse, TRICOLON.

If the same sort of verse return after the second line, it is called DICOLON DISTROPHON; as when a single Pentameter is alternately placed after an HEXAMETER, which is named *Elegiac verse*, (*carmen Elegiacum*;) because it was first applied to mournful subjects: thus,

Flebilis indignos, Elegia solve capillos;  
 Ah! nimis ex vero, nunc tibi nomen erit. Ovid.

This kind of verse is used by Ovid in all his other works except the *Metamorphoses*; and also for the most part by Tibullus, Propertius, &c.

When a poem consists of two kinds of verse and after three lines returns to the first, it is called DICOLON TRISTROPHON: when after four lines DICOLON TETRASTROPHON: as,

Auream quisquis mediocritatem  
 Diligit, tunc caret phœlesti  
 Sordibus tecti: caret invidiâ  
 Sobrius autâ.

Horat.

When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines always returns to the first, it is called TRICOLON TRISTROPHON: but if it returns after four lines, it is called TRICOLON TETRASTROPHON: as when after two greater dactylic alcaic verses are subjoined an archilochian iambic and a lesser dactylic alcaic which is named *Carmen Horatianum*, or Horatian verse, because it is frequently used by Horace; thus,

Virtus recludens immeritis mori  
 Cœlum, negatâ tentat iter viâ;  
 Cœtusque vulgares, et adam  
 Spernit humum fugiente pennâ.

Any one of these parts of a poem, in which the different kinds of verse are comprehended, when taken by itself, is called a *Strophe*, *Stanza*, or *Stagf.*

## DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE IN HORACE AND BUCHANAN.

## I. ODES and PSALMS of one kind of verse.

1. *Asclepiadæan*, See No 3. p. 270. Hor. l. 1. IV, 8. III. 30.—Buch. Ps. 28, 40, 30.

2. *Choriambic Alcaic Pentameter*, consisting of a spondee, three choriambuses, and a pyrrhichius or iambus : Hor. l. 11, 18. IV. 10.

3. *Iambic trimeter*, No 11.—Hor. Epod. 17.—Buch. Ps. 25, 94, 106.

4. *Hexameter*, No 1. Hor. Satires and Epistles.—Buch. Ps. 1, 18, 45, 78, 85, 89, 104, 107, 132, 135.

5. *Iambic Dimeter*, No 12.—Buch. Ps. 13, 31, 37, 47, 52, 54, 59, 86, 96, 98, 117, 143, 149, 150.

6. The *Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, No 8.—Buch. Ps. 26, 29, 32, 49, 61, 71, 73, 143.

7. *Trochaic*, consisting of seven trochees and a syllable ; admitting also a tribrachys in the uneven places, i. e. in the first, third, fifth, and seventh foot ; and in the even places, a tribrachys, spondee, dactyl, and anapestus.—Buch. Ps. 105, 119, 124, 129.

8. *Anapestic*, consisting of four anapestuses, admitting also a spondee or dactyl ; and in the last place, sometimes a tribrachys, amphimacer, or trochee.—Ps. 113.

9. *Anacreontic Iambic*, consisting of three iambuses and a syllable ; in the first foot it has sometimes a spondee or anapestus, and also a tribrachys.—Ps. 131.

## II. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse following one another alternately.

1. *Glyconian* and *Asclepiadæan*, No 4. and 3.—Hor. l. 3, 13, 19, 36. III. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28. IV 1, 3.—Buch. Ps. 14, 35, 43.

2. Every first line, (*Dactylico-Trochaic*), consisting of the first four feet of an hexameter verse, then three trochees or a spondee for the last ; every second verse (*Iambic Archilochian*) consisting of an iambus or spondee, an iambus, a cæsura, and then three trochees.—Hor. l. 4.

3. The first line *Hexameter* ; and the second, *Alcmanian Dactylic*, consisting of the four last feet of an hexameter. Hor. l. 7. 28. Epod. 12.—Buch. Ps. 4, 111.

4. Every first line, *Aristophanic*, consisting of a choriambus, and bacchius or amphimacer : every second line, *Choriambic Alcaic*, consisting of spiritus secundus, two choriambuses, and a bacchius. Hor. l. 8.

5. The first line, (*Trochaic*), consisting of three trochees, and a cæsura ; or of an amphimacer and two iambuses. The second line, *Archilochian Iambic*, No 9. Hor. II 18.

6. The first line, *Hexameter* ; the second (*Dactylic Archilochian*), two dactyls and a cæsura, Hor. IV 7.—Buch. Ps. 12

7. The first line, *Iambic Trimeter* ; and the second, *Iambic Dimeter*, No 11.—Hor. Epod. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10.—Buch. Ps. 3, 6, 10, 21, 22, 27, 34, 38, 39, 41, 44, 48, 53, 62, 74, 76, 79, 87, 92, 110, 112, 115, 120, 127, 133, 134, 139, 141.

8. The first line, *Iambic Dimeter* ; the second (*Sapphic*), consists of two dactyls, a cæsura, and four iambuses, admitting also a spondee, &c. But this verse is commonly divided into two parts ; the first, the latter part of a pentameter, No 2. and the second, iambic dimeter, No 11. Hor. Epod. 11.

9. The first line, *Hexameter* ; the second, *Iambic Dimeter*. Hor. Epod. 14, 15.—Buch. Ps. 81

10. *Hexameter* and *Iambic Trimeter*. Hor. Epod. 16. Buch. Ps. 2, 20, 21, 57, 60, 69, 83, 93, 95, 97, 103, 109, 118, 126, 136, 147.

11. The first line *Sapphic*, No 5. and the second, *Iambic Dimeter*, No 11. Buch Ps. 8.

12. *Sapphic* and *Glyconian*. Buch. Ps. 33, 70, 121, 142.

13. *Iambic Trimeter* and *Pentameter*. Buch. Ps. 36, 63.

14. The first line, *Hexameter*; and the second line, the three last feet of an hexameter, with a long syllable or two short syllables before. Buch. Ps. 68.

15. *Hexameter* and *Pentameter*, or *Elegiac* verse. Buch. Ps. 88, 114, 137.

16. The first line, (*Trochaic*), three trochees and a syllable, admitting sometimes a spondee, tribrachys, &c. The second line, *Iambic Dimeter*. No 11. Buch. Ps. 100.

III. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The three first lines, *Sapphic*, and the fourth *Adonian*, No 5. Horat. Carm. I. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38. II. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16. III. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27. IV. 2, 6, 11, *Carmen Secul.*—Buch. Ps. 5, 17, 51, 55, 65, 67, 72, 80, 101, 103.

2. The three first lines, *Asclepiadæan*, and the fourth, *Glyconian*. Hor. Carm. I. 6, 15, 24, 33. II. 12. III. 10, 16. IV. 5, 12.—Buch. Ps. 23, 42, 75, 99, 102, 144.

3. The two first lines, *Ionic Trimeter*, consisting of three *Ionici minores*; the third line, *Ionic Tetrameter*, having one *Ionicus minor* more. Hor. III. 12.

4. The two first lines have four trochees, admitting, in the second foot, a spondee, dactyl, &c. The third line, the same; only wanting a syllable at the end. Buch. Ps. 66.

5. The three first lines, *Glyconian*, No 4. admitting also a spondee, or iambus, in the first foot; the fourth line, *Pherecratian*, No 6. Buch. Ps. 116, 122, 128.

IV ODES and PSALMS of three kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The two first lines, *Asclepiadæan*, No 3. the third line, *Pherecratian*, No 6. and the fourth, *Glyconian*, No 4. Hor. Carm. I. 5, 14, 21, 23. III. 7, 13. IV. 13.—Buch. Ps. 9, 64, 84, 130.

2. The two lines, the *Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, No 8. The third, *Archilachian Iambic*, No 9. The fourth, the *Lesser Alcaic*, No 10. Hor. Carm. I. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37. II. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20. III. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29. IV. 4, 9, 14, 15.—Buch. Ps. 7, 11, 15, 19, 30, 46, 50, 56, 58, 77, 82, 91, 123, 125, 140, 146.

3. The first line, *Glyconian*; the second, *Asclepiadæan*; the third a spondee, three choriambuses and an iambus or pyrrhichius. Buch. Ps. 16.

4. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second, *Iambic Dimeter*; and the third, two dactyls and a syllable; Hor. Epod. 13.—Buch. Ps. 138. Sometimes the two last verses are joined in one or inverted; as, Buch. Ps. 145.

## ENGLISH VERSE.

The quantity of syllables in English verse is not precisely ascertained. With regard to this we are chiefly directed by the ear. Our monosyllables are generally either long or short, as occasion requires. And in words of two or more syllables, the accented syllable is always long.

Of English verse there are two kinds, one named *Rhyme*, and the other *Blank verse*.

In rhyme the lines are usually connected two and two, sometimes three and three, in the final syllables. Two lines following one another thus connected, are called a *Couplet*, three lines, a *Triplet*.

In blank verse similarity of sound in the final syllables is carefully avoided.

In measuring most kinds of English verse we find long and short syllables succeeding one another alternately; and therefore the accents should rest on every second syllable.

The feet by which English verse is commonly measured, are either *Iambic*, i. e. consisting of a short and a long syllable; as, *ū:ōft, crēūte*: or *Trochaic*, i. e. consisting of a long and a short syllable; *hō'y, lōft'y*. In verses of the former kind the accents are to be placed on the even syllables; in the latter, on the odd syllables. But the measure of a verse in English is most frequently determined by its number of syllables only, without dividing them into particular feet.

### I. IAMBIC MEASURE comprises verses,

#### 1. Of four syllables, or of two feet; as,

With ravish'd ears,  
The monarch hears. *Dryden.*

#### 2. Of six syllables, or of three feet; as,

Aloft in awful state,  
The godlike hero sat. *Dryden.*

#### 3. Of eight syllables, or of four feet; as,

While dangers hourly round us rise,  
No caution guards us from surprise. *Francis' Haracc.*

#### 4. Of ten syllables, or of five feet, which is the common measure of heroic and tragic poetry; as,

Poetic fields encompass me around,  
And still I seem to tread on Classic ground;  
For here the Muse so oft her harp has strung,  
That not a mountain rears its head unsung. *Addison.*

Obs. 1. In measures of this last sort, we sometimes find the last line of a couplet or triplet stretched out to twelve syllables, or six feet, which is termed an *Alexandrine* verse: thus,

A needless Alexandrine ends the song,  
Which, like a wounded snake, drags its slow length along. *Pope.*

Waller was smooth: but Dryden taught to join  
The varying verse, the full resounding line,  
The long majestic march, and energy divine. *Pope.*

We also find the last verse of a triplet stretched out to fourteen syllables, or seven feet, but then it has commonly an Alexandrine verse before it; thus,

For thee the land in fragrant flow'rs is drest;  
For thee the ocean smiles, and smooths her wavy breast,  
And heav'n itself with more serene and purer light is blest. *Dryden.*

Sometimes also when there is no Alexandrine before it; thus,

At length by fate to pow'r divine restor'd,  
His thunder taught the world to know its lord,  
The god grew terrible again, and was again ador'd. *Rowe.*

Obs. 2. The more strictly iambic these verses are, the more harmonious. In several of them, however, particularly in those of ten syllables we often meet with a trochee, and likewise a spondee, instead of an iambus. Verses of heroic measure sometimes also admit a dactyle, or an anapestus, in place of the iambus; in which case a verse of five feet may comprehend eleven, twelve, thirteen, and even fourteen syllables; thus,

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14  
And many an humorous, many an amorous lay,

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12.  
Was sung by many a bard, on many a day.

This manner of writing every syllable fully is now generally used by the best poets, and seems much more proper than the ancient custom of cutting off vowels by an apostrophe. Our language abounds too much in consonants of itself; the elision of vowels therefore should be avoided as much as possible, and ought only to be admitted where it is absolutely necessary; as, *e'er* for *over*; *ē'er* for *ever*, &c. The same observation may be applied to every kind of measure.

## II. TROCHAIC MEASURE comprises verses,

## 1. Of three syllables ; as,

Dreadful gleams,  
Dismal screams, &c. *Pope.*

## 2. Of five syllables ; as,

In the days of old,  
Stories plainly told,  
Lovers felt annoy.

## 3. Of seven syllables ; as,

Fairest piece of well form'd earth,  
Urge not thus your haughty birth. *Walker.*

These are the measures which are most commonly used in English poetry, especially those of seven, eight, and ten syllables.

We have another measure very quick and lively, and therefore much used in songs, which may be called *Anapestic* measure, *i. e.* a verse consisting of feet of three syllables, two short and one long, in which the accent rests upon every third syllable. Verses of anapestic measure consist of two, three, or four feet ; that is, of six, nine, or twelve syllables ; thus,

Let the loud trumpets sound,  
Till the roofs all aróund,  
The shrill echoes rebound. *Pope.*

From the plains, from the woodlands, and groves,  
How the nightingales warble their loves ! *Shenstone.*

May I govern my passions, with absolute sway,  
And grow wiser and better as life wears away. *Id.*

In this measure a syllable is often retrenched from the first foot ; as,

The sword or the dart  
Shall pierce my sad heart. *Addison.*

Ye shepherds so cheerful and gay,  
Whose flocks never carelessly roam, &c.

I wó'd to the muses my time and my care,  
Since neither could win me the smiles of the fair. *Shenstone.*

These measures are variously combined together in *Stanzas*, particularly in short poems ; for generally in longer works, the same measure is always observed.

*Stanzas* are composed of more or fewer verses, and these variously diversified, according to the nature of the subject, and the taste of the poet. But when they are stretched out to a great length, and consist of verses of many different measures, they are seldom agreeable.

Such poems as consist of *Stanzas*, which are not confined to a certain number of verses, nor the verses to a certain number of syllables, nor the rhymes to a certain distance, are called *Irregular* or *Pindaric odes*.—Of this kind are several of the poems of Cowley. But in the odes of later authors, the numbers are exact, and the strophes regular.

*Stanzas* of four lines are the most frequent, in which the first verse answers to the third, and the second to the fourth. There is a stanza of this kind, consisting of verses of eight and of six syllables alternately, which is very often used, particularly in sacred poetry. Here for the most part the second and fourth lines only rhyme together ; as,

When all thy mercies, O my God,  
My rising soul surveys,  
Transported with the view, I'm lost  
In wonder, love, and praise. *Addison.*

Sometimes also the first and third lines answer to one another ; as,

Keep silence, all created things,  
And wait your Maker's nod :  
The muse stands trembling, while she sings  
The honours of her God. *Hutton.*

This stanza is used in place of what anciently was comprehended in two verses, each consisting of fourteen syllables, having a pause after the eighth syllable.

Several of these measures are often varied by double endings, that is, by putting an additional short syllable at the end of the verse ; as,

1. *In heroic measure, or verses of ten syllables, both in blank verse and rhyme.*

*In Blank verse.*

'Tis heaven itself that points out an hereafter. Addison.

*In Rhyme, where it is called Double Rhyme.*

The piece, you think, is incorrect ? Why, take it ;  
I'm all submission ; what you'd have it, make it. Pope.

2. *In verses of eight syllables.*

They neither added nor confounded.

They neither wanted nor abounded.

3. *In verses of six syllables.*

'Twas when the seas were roaring,  
With hollow blasts of wind,  
A damsel lay deploring,  
All on a rock reclin'd. Gay.

4. *In verses of seven syllables.*

As Palemon, unsuspecting,  
Prais'd the sly musician's art ;  
Love, his light disguise rejecting,  
Lodg'd an arrow in his heart. Shenstone.

5. *In verses of three syllables.*

Glooms inviting,  
Birds delighting. Addison.

6. *In the Anapestic measure.*

Ah ! friend, 'tis but idle to make such a pother,  
Fate, fate has ordain'd us to plague one another. Shenstone.

Now with furies surrounded,  
Despairing, confounded. Pope.

Double rhyme is used chiefly in poems of wit and humour, or in burlesque compositions.

Verses with double endings, in blank verse, most frequently occur in tragic poetry, where they often have a fine effect ; thus,

I here devote me for my prince and country ;  
Let them be safe, and let me nobly perish. Thomson.

The dropping dews fell cold upon my head,  
Darkness inclin'd and the winds whistled round me. Gray.



## APPENDIX I.

### Of Punctuation, Capitals, Abbreviations, Numerical Characters, and the Division of the Roman Months.

The different divisions of discourse are marked by certain characters called *Points*.

The points employed for this purpose are the *Comma* (,) , *Semicolon* (;) , *Colon* (:) , *Period*, *Punctum*, or full stop (.) .

Their names are taken from the different parts of the sentence which they are employed to distinguish.

The *Period* is a whole sentence complete by itself. The *Colon*, or member, is a chief constructive part, or greater division of a sentence. The *Semicolon*, or half member, is a less constructive part or subdivision, of a sentence or member. The *Comma*, or segment, is the least constructive part of a sentence in this way of considering it; for the next subdivision of a sentence would be the resolution of it into *Phrases* and *Words*.

To these points may be added the *Semiperiod*, or less point, followed by a small letter.

But this is of much the same use with the *Colon*, and occurs only in Latin books. A simple sentence admits only of a full point at the end; because its general meaning cannot be distinguished into parts. It is only in compound sentences that all the different points are to be found.

Points likewise express the different pauses which should be observed in a just pronunciation of discourse. The precise duration of each pause, or note, cannot be defined. It varies according to the different subjects of discourse, and the different turns of human passion and thought. The period requires a pause in duration double of the colon; the colon double of the semicolon; and the semicolon double of the comma.

There are other points which, together with a certain pause, also denote a different modulation of the voice, in correspondence with the sense. These are the *Interrogation* point (?), the *Exclamation* or *Admiration* point (!), and the *Parenthesis* ( ) . The first two generally mark an elevation of the voice, and a pause equal to that of a semicolon, colon, or a period, as the sense requires. The *Parenthesis* usually requires a moderate depression of the voice, with a pause somewhat greater than a comma. But these rules are liable to many exceptions. The modulation of the voice in reading, and the various pauses, must always be regulated by the sense.

Besides the points, there are several other marks made use of in books, to denote references and different distinctions, or to point out something remarkable or defective, &c. These are, the *Apostrophe* (') ; *Asterisk* (\*) ; *Hyphen* (-) ; *Obelisk* (†) ; *Double Obelisk* (‡) ; *Parallel Lines* (||) ; *Paragraph* (§) ; *Section* (¶) ; *Quotation* (" ") ; *Crotchets* [ ] ; *Braze* ( } ) ; *Ellipsis* (... or —) ; *Caret* (∧) ; which last is only used in writing.

References are often marked by letters and figures.

Capitals or large letters, are used at the beginning of sentences, of verses, and of proper names. Some use them at the beginning of every substantive noun. Adjectives, verbs, and other parts of speech, unless they be emphatical, commonly begin with a small letter.

Capitals, with a point after them, are often put for whole words; thus, A. marks *Aulus*, C. *Caius*, D. *Decimus*, L. *Lucius*, M. *Marcus*, P. *Publius*, Q. *Quinctius*, T. *Titus*. So F. stands for *Filius*, and N. for *Nepos*; as, M. F. *Marci Filius*, M. N. *Marci Nepos*. In like manner, P. C. marks *Patres Conscripti*; S. C. *Senatus Consultum*; P. R. *Populus Romanus*; S. P. Q. R. *Senatus Populusque Romanus*; U. C. *Urbs Condita*; S. P. D. *Salutem Plurimam dicit*; D. D. D. *Dat, dicat, dedicat*; D. D. C. Q. *Dat, dicat, consecratque*; H. S. written corruptly for L. L. S. *Sestertius*, equal in value to two pounds of brass and a half; the two pounds being marked by L. L. *Libra, Libra*, and the half by S. *Semis*. So in modern books A. D. marks *Anno Domini*, A. M. *Artium Magister*, Master of Arts; M. D. *Medicinus Doctor*; L. L. D. *Legum Doctor*; N. B. *Nota Bene*, &c.

Sometimes a small letter or two is added to the capital; as, Etc. *Et cœtera*; Ap. *Appius*; Cn. *Cneius*; Op. *Opiter*; Sp. *Spurius*; Ti. *Tiberius*; Sex. *Sextus*; Cos. *Consul*; Coss. *Consules*; Imp. *Imperator*; Imp. *Imperatores*.

In like manner, in English, Esq. *Esquire*; Dr. *Debtor* or *Doctor*; Acct. *Account*; MS. *Manuscript*; MSS. *Manuscripts*; Do. *Ditto*; Rt. Hon. *Right Honourable*, &c

Small letters are likewise often put as abbreviations of a word; as, i. e. *id est*; h. e. *hoc est*; e. g. *exempli gratiâ*; v. g. *verbi gratiâ*.

Capitals were used by the ancient Romans, to mark numbers. The Letters employed for this purpose were C. I. L. V. X. which are therefore called *Numerical Letters*. I denotes *one*. V. *five*, X. *ten*, L. *fifty*, and C. *a hundred*. By the various combinations of these five letters, all the different numbers are expressed.

The repetition of a numerical letter repeats its value. Thus, II. signifies *two*; III. *three*; XX. *twenty*; XXX. *thirty*; CC. *two hundred*, &c. But V. and L. are never repeated.

When a letter of a less value is placed before a letter of a greater, the less takes away what it stands for from the greater; but being placed after, adds what it stands for to the greater; thus,

IV. Four.

V. Five.

VI. Six.

IX. Nine.

X. Ten.

XI. Eleven.

XI. Forty.

L. Fifty.

LX. Sixty

XC. Ninety.

C. A hundred.

CX. A hundred and ten.

A *thousand* is marked thus, *MD* which in later times was contracted into *M*. *Five hundred* is marked thus, *DC* or by contraction, *D*.

The annexing of *D* to *DC* makes its value ten times greater; thus, *MDC* marks *five thousand*; and *MDCC* *fifty thousand*.

The prefixing of *C*, together with the annexing of *D* to the number of *DC*, makes its value ten times greater; thus, *CCDC* denotes *ten thousand*; and *CCCCDC* *a hundred thousand*. The ancient Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no farther in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number they did it by repetition; thus, *CCDCDC*, *CCCCDC* signified *two hundred thousand*, &c.

We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numerical letters. Thus, *m̄* denotes *three thousand*; *x̄* *ten thousand*.

But the modern manner of marking numbers is much more simple, by these ten characters or *figures*, which from the ten fingers of the hands were called *Digits*; 1 *one*, 2 *two*, 3 *three*, 4 *four*, 5 *five*, 6 *six*, 7 *seven*, 8 *eight*, 9 *nine*, 0 *nothing, nothing*. The first nine are called *Significant figures*. The last is called a *Cypher*.

Significant figures placed after one another increase their value ten times at every remove from the right hand to the left; thus,

8 Eight. 85 Eighty-five. 856 Eight hundred and fifty-six. 8566 Eight thousand five hundred and sixty-six.

When cyphers are placed at the right hand of a significant figure, each cypher increases the value of the figure ten times; thus,

1 One. 10 Ten. 100 A hundred. 1000 A thousand. 2 Two. 20 Twenty. 200 Two hundred. 2000 Two thousand.

Cyphers are often intermixed with significant figures, thus, 20202, *Twenty thousand two hundred and two*.

The superiority of the present method of marking numbers over that of the Romans will appear by expressing the present year both in letters and figures, and comparing them together; *MDCCXCVIII*, or *M, DCCXCVIII*. 1798.

As the Roman manner of marking the days of their months was quite different from ours, it may perhaps be of use here to give a short account of it.

*Division of the Roman Months.*

The Romans divided their months in three parts, by *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. The first day of every month was called the *Kalends*; the fifth day was called the *Nones*; and the thirteenth day was called the *Ides*; except in the months of March, May, July, and October, in which the *nones* fell upon the seventh day, and the *ides* on the fifteenth.

In reckoning the days of their months, they counted backwards. Thus, the first day of January was marked *Kalendis Januariis*, or *Januarii*, or by contraction, *Kal. Jan.* The last day of December, *Pridie Kalendas Januarias* or *Januarii*, scil. *ante*. The day before that, or the 30th day of December, *Tertio Kal. Jan.* scil. *die ante*; or *Ante diem tertium Kal. Jan.* The twenty-ninth day of December, *Quarto Kal. Jan.* And so on, till they came back to the thirteenth day of December, or to the *ides*, which were marked *Idibus Decembris*, or *Decembris*: the day before the *ides*, *Pridie Idus Dec.* scil. *ante*: the day before that, *Tertio Id. Dec.* and so back to the *nones*, or the fifth day of the month, which was marked *Nonis Decembris* or *Decembris*: the day before the *nones*, *Pridie Non. Dec.* &c. and thus through all the months of the year.

In *Leap-year*, that is, when February has twenty-nine days, which happens every fourth year, both the 24th and the 25th days of that month were marked, *Sexto Kalendas Martii* or *Martias*; and hence this year is called *Bissextilis*.

JUNIUS, APRILIS, SEPTEMque, NOVEMque tricenae;  
Unum plus reliqui: FEBRUUS tenet octo viginti;  
At si bisextus fuerit, superadditur unus.  
Tu primam mensis lucem die esse kalendas,  
Sex MAIUS, nonas OCTOBER, JULIUS, et MARS,  
Quatuor at reliqui: dabit idus quilibet octo.  
Omnes post idus lucem die esse kalendas,  
Nomen sortiri debent a mense sequenti.

Thus, the 14th day of *April*, *June*, *September*, and *October*, was marked XVIII. Kal. of the following month; the 15th, XVII. Kal. &c. The 14th day of *January*, *August*, and *December*, XIX. Kal. &c. So the 16th day of *March*, *May*, *July*, and *October*, was marked XVII. Kal. &c. And the 14th day of *February*, XVI. Kal. Martii or Martias. The names of all the months are used as Substantives or Adjectives, except *Aprilis*, which is used only as a Substantive.

## APPENDIX II.

*Containing Rules from Ruddiman's Grammar, which will be found explained in the Pages of this Book that are marked before each Rule.*

### I. Concerning the GENDER of NOUNS.

*Names of Trees. See page 10.*

1. Arbor femineis dabitur : sed *mas oleaster*,  
Et *rhamnus* : petit hir potens, *cytisusque robusque* :  
Hic quandoque *larix*, *lotus-violet*, atque *cupressus* ;  
Hoc quod in *um*, *uberque*, *siler* dant, *rober* acerque.

*Nouns in A of the first declension. p. 11. and 11.*

2. Hæc dat A quod primæ est : sed neutrum *Pasola* requirit.  
*Hadria* mas æquor, pariterque *cometa*, *planeta* :  
*Mascula* & interdum *talpam* *damanque* videbis.

*Nouns in US and OS. p. 20. 23. and 35.*

4. Hæc *domus* & *vannus*, pro fractu *ficus* & *alvus* ;  
Sic *humus* atque *manus* poscunt : *acus* addito quartæ,  
*Porticus* atque *tribus*. Caput hoc *virus pelagusque*.  
Nomen in OS Græcum, quod in US mutare Latini  
Sæpè solent, normam sequitur plerumque virilem :  
Femineum sed multa petunt : ut *abyssus*, *eremus*,  
*Antidotusque*, *pharus*, *dialectus*, *carbassus* : adde  
Ex *odous* & *phthongos* genitum, quæque à generali  
Voce genus plantæ & gemmæ capiunt muliebres.  
Hic aut hæc donat *bulanus*, *specus*, atque *phaselus*,  
*Barbitus*, atque *penus*, *grossus* : sed *grus*, *atomusque*  
Femineum potiùs cupiunt ; *colus*. adde, virile  
Quod rarè invenies : muliebres at contra *camelus*  
Est ubi nonnunquam videas. Vult hic dare *vulgus*,  
Sed magis hoc. Ternæ *specus* & *penus* addito neutris.

*Nouns of the third declension in O. p. 23.*

7. Hic Dat O : femineis *halo* cum *caro* dantur & *echo* ;  
Quæque in IO, seu sint verbo, seu nomine nata,  
Rem (numeris demptis) aliquam sine corpore signant.  
Adjice femineis DO, GO : sed *mascula cudo*,  
*Harpago* sic *ordo*, simul *udo*, *tendo*. *ligo*que.  
Rariùs hæc *margo*, vati est, hic sæpe *cupido*,  
*Arrhabo* cum *cardo*, muliebria vix imitanda.

*C and L. p. 24. rule 3.*

8. Quod fit in L, vel T, C, vel M, neutralibus adde :  
*Mascula sol*, *mugil*, seu *sxl*, quod raris hoc vult.

*N. p. 24. rule 4.*

10. Masculinum capit N. Finita in MEN dato neutris,  
Quæque secunda creat, cum *gluten* & *inguen* & *unguen*.  
Addideris *pollen*. *Sindon* petit hæc & *ædon* ;  
*Alcyonem* junges, data postea queis comes *icon*.

*AR and UR. p. 25. rule 5.*

11. Postulat AR neutrum : sed masculinum *salar* optat.  
Hoc dat UR. Hic *furfur* capiet, cum *vulture turtur*.

## ER and OR. p. 25. rule 6.

13. ER capit hic. Neutrum plantæ fructusve requirunt :  
At *tuber* hic fructus ; *tuber* quemcunque tumorem  
Significans neutrale petit ; cumque *ubere spinther*,  
*Perque cadaver, iter*. Dabit hic aut hæc tibi *linter*.  
Hic dat OR. Hæc *arbor* : *cor, adorque hoc, marmor & æquor*.

## AS. p. 26. rule 7.

15. AS petit hæc. Neutrum est *ros, rasis*, queisque P'el'asgi  
Dant *atis* in patrio : quibus *antis* masculino sunt.

## ES. p. 26. rule 3.

16. Hæc dabit ES. Cipient *ales* hic hæcve, *palumbæ*,  
Atque *dies* : sed mas proles : mas *poples & ames*,  
*Fomes, pes, paries, palmes*, cum *limite stipes*,  
Queis addes *trames, termes*, cum *gurgile cespes* ;  
Et quæ fonte fluunt Graio ; sed neutra capessunt  
*Hippomanes, panaces, nepenthes*, sic *cacoethes*.

## IS. p. 27. rule 9.

17. IS dabo femineis. Sunt mascula *piasis & axis*,  
*Glis, callis, vermis, vectis, mensis, cucumisque*,  
*Mugilis & postis* cum *sanguine fascis & orbis*,  
*Fustis* item *collis, cautisque, & follis & ensis*,  
Serpentemque notans *cenchris*, cum *vomere, torris*,  
In NIS finium Latium, *lapis, unguis, aqualis*.  
Hic aut hæc *fnis, clunis*, cum *torque canalis*,  
Dant *scrobis*, ac *anguis* : *corbis* muliebri præoptat ;  
Masculæo potiùs gaudent *pulvis, cinis, annis*.

## OS. p. 28. rule 10.

19. OS maribus detur. Sunt neutra *chaos, melos, os, os*,  
Postulat hæc *arbo, cos, dos, & origine Græcâ*  
Orta *eos, arctos, perimetros* cum *diametro*.

## US. p. 29. rule 11.

20. Postulat US neutrum, quoties id tertia flectit.  
Femineum voluere *palus, subsclusque salusque*,  
Quæque *senex, juvenis*, cum *servio*, nomina formant,  
Et *Virtus, incus*. At mascula sunt *lepus & mus*,  
Et *pus* compositum : petit at muliebri *lagopus*.

## ÆS and AUS. p. 29. rule 13.

21. ÆS neutrale petit : *laus, fraus*, muliebri tanto.

## S with a consonant before it. p. 29. rule 14.

22. S dato femineis, si consona ponitur ante.  
Mascula sed *pons, fons, mons, seps*, dum denotat anguem ;  
Et queis P præit S polysyllaba *forcipe* dempto,  
*Densque, chalybs*, cum *gryphe, rudens*, quod rariùs hæc vult.  
Hic aut hæc *serpens* dat. *scrobs, stirps truncus adepsque*.  
Dans *animans* genus omne, tamen muliebri præoptat.

## X. p. 30. rule 16.

23. Hæc petit X. *Ax, ex* maribus polysyllaba jungit :  
Dic tamen hæc *fornax, smilux, carex*, velut *halax*,  
Et cum prole *panax & forfex* atque *supellex*.  
Mascula sunt *calix phoenix*, pro *vermeque bombyx*,  
Et *coccyx, fornix, & onyx* vas, aut lapis unde  
Vas fit ; *oryx, tradux, grex* his adjungit *calyxque*.  
Femineo interdum data *tradux* cum *grege* cernes.  
Hæc modò femineis, maribus modò juncta videbit ;  
*Calx* pro parte pedis metæve laboris & *hystrix*,

*Inbrex* ; *sardonychem jungas, rumicem silicemque* :  
 Hic magè vult *cortex & obex, cum pumice, vorex* :  
 Hæc potiùs *limax, lynx, & cum sandice perdis* :  
*Atriplici neutrum meliùs dabò quàm muliebree.*

## II. RULES concerning the OBLIQUE CASES.

### *The Accusative Singular of the Third Declension. p. 32.*

Finit in EM quartus. Petit *im* sibi *ravis, amussis,*  
*Vis cucumisque simul, tussis, sitis atque sinapis,*  
*Cannabis & gummis, buris, conjunge mephitim.*  
 Adde urbes, aliosque locos, amnesque, deosque,  
 IS quibus est recto : sed & hæc dant *in* quoque quarto.  
*Sæpiùs im, turris, puppis, cum reste securis :*  
*Em, sed & im* quandoque, volunt sibi *febris aquatis,*  
*Et navis, pelvis, clavis ; sic lens, strigilisque,*  
*Sementisque, cutis. Cumulant his plura vetusti.*  
 Impurè in patrio casu crescentia Græca,  
 Sæpe & *Tros, Minos, heros,* quartum per *a* formant :  
 EUS *ea* vult. Vix *em* dato *Pan,* cumque *æthere delphin.*

### *Ablative Singular. p. 32.*

Sextus *e* vult : quibus at rectus per E clauditur *i* dant,  
 (Propria ni fuerint) AL & AR neutralia iunge.  
*Deme jubar, sal, far, pur* fixum *nectar & hepar,*  
 Sed solet has leges migrare licentia vatun.  
 I quoque dant *ir* & *im* tantum facientia quarto.  
*Cannabis at Rætis, Tigris, voluistis utrumque,*  
*Im* quibus in quarto est, *ye* dant, aut *m* modo demunt.  
 Dant *e* vel *i* sexto, queis quartus in *em* vel in *im* fit.  
 Excipe sed *restis,* quod *e* semper, cum *cute,* donat.  
 I magè *sementis, strigilis* petit atque *securis.*  
 Quod simul *im* vel *idem* format, capit *i* sibi raro.  
 Hæc quoque dant *e* vel *i* : *finis, eum rure supe lex,*  
*Occiput & vectis* : per UBI cum quæritur, urbes,  
 Et *pugil & mugil, jungas.* Per *e* sæpiùs effer,  
 I raro, *civis, classis, sors, anguis & imber,*  
*Unguis, avis, postis, fustis, simul omnis & ignis.*  
 Usus plura tulit priscus, quee respuit ætas  
 Cultior. I tantum sexto, retineto *canalis.*

### *Genitive Plural. p. 33.*

Præbet *ium* patrius, si sextus in *i* fuit antè.  
 Tolle *vigil, vetus, uber, inops, supplexque, memorque,*  
*Mugilis & consors,* quibus & *pugil & cetr* adde ;  
 Atque gradus medios ; (sed *ium plus* poscit.) Adhærent  
 His composita *genus, capio, facioque arputque.*  
 Sextus *e* si tantum dederit, capit *um* genitivus.  
 AS sed *ium* Latiale petit : polysyllaba *deme,*  
 Queis magis *um* placuit. Sed *ium* quærentibus adde  
 Nomen in IS vel in ES non crescens : iungito & NS :  
 Tolle *parens, vates, panis, juvenisque, canisque.*  
 Donat *ium* *Sannus, linter, caro, dos, & os ossis,*  
*Glis, nix, noxque, cohors, mus, faux, utr* : adde *Quiritem,*  
 Atque *larem, litem, colem, cor* ; compositum que

*Uncia*, quod simul *us* genuit : monosyllaba junge  
 Consona quæ duplex claudit. *Bos rind homin* dat.

*Dative Plural of the Fourth Declension.* p. 35.

*Partus* sibps, *specus*, *artus*, *ocus*, *dant* & *lacus*, *arcus*,  
 Atque *tribus* : sed utrumque genu, *portusque*, *veruque*.

### III. RULES concerning ADJECTIVES.

*Adjectives wanting the POSITIVE.* p. 52.

Hæc viduata gradu sunt pauca sequentia primo ;  
*Ultimus*, *ulterior* ; *prior*, & *primus* ; *propiorque* ;  
*Proximus* ; *ocyor* atque *ocysimus*, adjectivus :  
*Deterior* jungi quibus & *deterimus* ambit.

*Adjectives wanting the COMPARATIVE.* p. 53.

*Nuperus*, *orba* gradu medio, *novus* ac *meritus* sunt ;  
*Par*, *sacer*, *inactus*, *persuasus*, & *inclutus* adde.

*Adjectives wanting the SUPERLATIVE.* p. 53.

Hæc superante careat : *satur* & *divitissimus* & *ingens*,  
 Atque *senex*, *juvenis*, *adolescens*, *protus*, *optimus* ;  
 Et finita *BILIS* propè cuncta, vel *ILIS*, & *ALIS* :  
 Cum multis aliis quæ nunc perscribere longam est.

*Adjectives wanting the POSITIVE and SUPERLATIVE.* p. 53.

*Anterior* solum, *sequior*, *satorque* leguntur.

### IV. RULES concerning VERBS.

*VERBS of the FIRST CONJUGATION wanting both PRETERITE and  
 SUPINE.* p. 83.

————— *Labo*, *nexo*, cum *plæa* nil dant.

*VERBS of the SECOND CONJUGATION wanting the SUPINE.* p. 84.

Quod dat *Ul* neutrum, *timeo*, *sileoque*, *supina*  
 Nulla dabunt. *Valeo*, *placeo*, *careo* & *licet* aufer,  
*Paret*, item *jaceo*, *caleo*, *noceo*, *doleo*que ;  
 Quis *coaleo*, *latet* atque *meret* sociis, *met*que.  
*Arceo* quod simplex nescit, dant nata *supinum* :  
 Quod retinent *taceo*, *lateo*, *sobole*que recusant.

————— *Viduata* *supinis*

*Si* capiunt *urget*, cum *fulget*, *urget*, & *alget*.

*VERBS of the SECOND CONJUGATION wanting both PRETERITE and  
 SUPINE.* p. 87.

Nil formant *lactet*, *livet*, *scateo*que *venidet*,  
*Marret*, *avet*, *poliet*, *flavet*, cum *denso* *glabret*.

*VERBS of the THIRD CONJUGATION wanting the SUPINE ; and some  
 also the PRETERITE.* p. 88.

————— *SCO.* p. 90.

————— *Disco*

Vult *didici* primam *geminans* : sic *posco*, *poposci* ;  
*Diapescit*, *compescit* *Ul* dant : cuncta *supinis*  
*Orba*. Nihil *glisco*, nihil *Inceptiva* creantur.

————— *VO.* p. 88.

Nulla, *supina* dabunt *metuo*, *pluo*, *congruo*, sicut  
*agnuo*, cum *sociis* ; quibus *ingruo*, *respuo* junges.

## DO p. 91.

*Tundo* facit *tutudi*, *tunsum* compositaque *tusum*.  
 Ex *cado* vult *ceceidi casum*; sed nata *supinum*  
 (*Incido* si *deritas*, *recido*, simul *occido*.) *spernunt*.  
 Præterito *DI strido*, *rudo*, dant, absque *supinis*,  
*Sido*que, sed *soboli sedeo* dat *mutuo sedi*.

## GO p. 92.

Nil *vergo* capessit.

*XI clango*, *ningo*, dat et *ango*, *supinaque* nulla.

*Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation wanting the Supine.* p. 93.

*Cocuit*, *gestit*, *glocit*, & *dementis*, *ineptit*,  
 Nulla *supina* dabunt, cum *prostitit* atque *ferocit*.

*Deponent Verbs wanting the Participle Perfect.* p. 102.

Nil formant *vescor*, *liquor*, *medeor*, *reminiscor*,  
*trascor*, *ringor*, *prævertor*, *diffiteor*que:  
 Quis demum *adjungas divertor*, *dequesetiscor*.

*Verbs wanting the first person singular.* p. 108.

*Dor*, *furo*, *for*, *der*, *fer*, vix unquam *suscipit* usus.

## V. RULES concerning the QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES, &amp;c.

## I. CONCERNING FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

*A vowel before another.* p. 199.

Vocalem breviant alia subeunte Latini.  
 Ni capit *r*, *fo* produc: & nomina quintæ  
*Eservant* longum, si præsit *i*, ceu *species*.  
 Anceps *ius* erit patrio: sed protrahe *altus*,  
*Alterius* brevis tantum; commune sit *ohé*,  
*Pompei*, *Cui*, produc, conformis *jungens*.  
*Diamam* varia: longa *aër*, *djus*, & *eheu*,  
 Et patrius primæ cum sese solvit in *ai*.  
 Hic Græci variant, nec certâ lege tenentur.

*A vowel before a mute and a liquid.* p. 200.

Si mutæ liquida est subjuncta in syllaba eâdem,  
 Quæ brevis antevenit vocalis, redditur anceps.  
 Hanc tamen in prosa semper breviam memento.  
 Sunt *l*, *r*, liquidæ, quæ rarè jungimus *m*, *n*.

*Contracted Syllables and Diphthongs.* p. 200.

Vocalem efficiet semper contractio longam,  
 Diphthongum produc in Græcis atque Latinis;  
 In Græcis semper: at *FRÆ* composita sequente.  
 Vocali brevis; veluti *præit* atque *præustus*.

*Præterites and Supines.* p. 201.

Præterita assumunt primam dissyllaba longam.  
 Tolle *bibit*, *scidit*, & *fidit*. ac *tulit* ortaque *do*, *sto*.  
 Præteritum geminans primam, breviabit utramque,  
 Ut *pario*, *peperi*; vetet id nisi consona hinc.  
 At quod *cado* creat tangat, *con pedo*, secundam.  
 Cuncta *Supina* tenent primam dissyllaba longam:  
 Præter nata *sero*, *ciao*, *hinc*, *enim sino*, *sisto*,  
 Quæ breviant; eo doque, *ruo* quo *junge*, *reor*que.



Cætera præsentis mensuram verba reservant.  
 Excipe sed *posui positum, genui genitumque,*  
*Et potui; quæ dant quoque volvo & volvo supina.*  
 Præterea vocalem polysyllaba cuncta supina.  
 Producent, *atum, quibus, etum finis, & utum:*  
*Ivi præterito veniens sociabis & itum.*  
 Cætera corripies in *itum* quæcunque residunt.

## II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

*A in the end of a word.* p. 205.

Casibus *A* flexum brevia. Sed protrahe sextum,  
 Et quintum, Græco quando hic de nomine in *as* sit.  
 Casibus haud flexum produc. *Ita, cum quia, & eja,*  
 Et *puta* non verbum subduxeris, *lilleque lujâ.*  
 Curta quoque interdum, *contra, ultra, & ginta* creata.

*E in the end of a word.* p. 205.

*E* brevia. Primæ produc, et nomina quintæ  
 Cum natis. Adde pluralia cuncta: secundæ  
 Induperativum socians. Monosyllaba, demptis  
 Encliticis ac syllabicis, quoque longa repones.  
 Adde à mobilibus flexis quæcunque secundi  
 Manârunt, summique gradûs adverbia quævis.  
 Sed *benè* cum *malè* corripies, *infernè, supernè,*  
 Productis *fermè* atque *ferè* jungantur, & *ohè.*

*I in the end of a word.* p. 206.

*I* longum pono. Vocitantem corripe Græcis.  
 His tamen at ternus dabitur crescentibus anceps.  
 Sic variatè *mihî, tibi, cum sibi:* sed magè curtis  
 Vult *ibi, vultque cui, nisi, ipox ubi, cum quasi, jungi.*  
 Sicuti sed breviant, cum *recubi, sicubi, vates.*

*O in the end of a word.* p. 206.

*O* commune ioces. Dabis at monosyllaba longis,  
 Græcaque ceu *Dido*, ternum sextamque secundæ,  
 Et patrium Græcum, atque adverbia nomine nata,  
 Quæ jungens & *ed.* Variant at *denud, serò,*  
*Mudò, postremò, verò;* modò sed breve pones,  
 Sæpius *ambo, duo, scio,* corripe, & *illicò & imò,*  
 Et *cedo da* signans, *ego* quæis *homo,* cum *ciò* jungo.  
 Sunt aliis variata Gerundia, longa Muronî.  
 Ergò pro *causa* produc: *seus* editur anceps.

*U and Y in the end of a word.* p. 206.

*U* semper longis, sed *Y* raptis jungere oportet.

*B, D, L, M, R, and T, in the end of a word.* p. 206.

Corripe *B* Latium: peregrinum at tendere malim.  
*D* breve ponatur. Variata at *Barbara* possis.  
*E* breve sit. Cum *sol, sal, nil,* tolluntur *Hebræa.*  
*M* nunc vocalis perimit: rapuère vetusti.  
*R* brevis. Produc cuius dat patrius *eris;*  
 Addito *Iber, ær; æther.* Sit *Cettiber* anceps.  
 At *par, fur, lar, Nar,* quoque *cur, fur,* adjicè longis.  
*T* breve semper erit nisi quondam syncopa tardet.

*C and N in the end of a word.* p. 207.

*C* produc, præter *sec, donec:* sed variabilis

*Hic bene pronomen : fac verbum jungimus isti.*  
*N* produc. Demas *en inis* dans, quæque priore  
 Græca per *on* casus numero tenuere secundæ ;  
 Et quartum casum, si sit brevis ultima recti.  
*Sin* quoque pluralis ternæ conjunge Pelasgum :  
*Farsitan, in, forsan, tamen, an viden'* insuper addens.

*AS, ES, and OS, in the end of a word.* p. 207.

*AS* produc. Patrio sed *adis* quod flectit, *anasque*,  
 Sit breve : plurales ternæ quibus addito quartus.  
 Ponitur *ES* longum. Pluralka corripit Græca  
 Quæ crescunt; velut *es* de *sum*; *penes* additur illi;  
 Cum neutris; & queis patrii penultima curta est  
 Ternæ. Tolle *Ceres, paries, aries, abies, pes*.  
*OS* produc. Patrius brevis est, & *compos, & impos*,  
 Osque *ossis* præbens. Rectos brevitate secundæ  
 (*O* nisi det patrius :) neutra his dein addito Graiûm.

*IS, US, and YS, in the end of a word.* p. 207.

*IS* brevio. Verùm plurales protraho casus;  
*IS*que quod in patrio mutatur, in *itis* & *inis*,  
 Aut *entis*; *gratisque foris, glis, vis* quoque, nomen  
 Seu verbum fuerit: sicut & persona secunda  
 Protrahit *IS*, quoties *itis* finale reponit.  
 In subjunctivi *ris* est commune situ. o.  
*US* correpta datur. Monosyllaba cum genitivis  
 Ternæ vel quartæ produc: numerique secundi  
 In quarta primum, quartam, quintumque; & in *uris*,  
 Duvine in *itis* patrius, vel in *adis, & untis, odise* est;  
 Aut quintus fit in *u*, longus tum rectus habetur.  
 Ergo prodaces venerabile nomen *IESUS*.  
*YS* junges brevibus. *Tethys* reperitur at anceps,  
 Longaque sunt rectis aliter quæ casibus *YN* dant.

*The last Syllable of a Verse.* p. 203.

Ultima cujusque est communis syllaba verûs.

### III. THE QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVES AND COMPOUNDS.

#### 1. The quantity of Derivatives. p. 208.

Derivata tenent mensuram primigenorum:  
 Orta tamen brevibus, *suspicio, regala, sedes*,  
*Seculus, humanus, penuria, mobilis, humor*,  
*Jumentum, fomes*, primam producere gaudent.  
 Corripunt sed *arista, vadum, sopor*, atque *lucerna*,  
*Ducque ducis, stabilisque, fides, ditioque, quasillus*,  
 Nata licet longis; quæ pluraque suggeret usus.

#### 2. The Quantity of Compounds. p. 208.

Simplicium servant legem composita suorum,  
 Quamvis diphthongus vel vocalis varietur.  
 At breviant nihilum eum *pejero, degero*, nec non  
*Veridicus, sociis junctis, & semisopitus*  
*Cognitus* his addes, velut *agnitus innubus*, atque  
*Promubus*: at longis *ambitus* mobile junges,  
*Imbecillus* item: sed *agnubium* variabis.  
 Quam disjuncta dabat mensuram præpositura,  
 Juncta tenet: subiens illam nisi litera mutet.  
 Est pro breve in Græcis, pro longum ritè Latinis.

At rape quæ fundus, fugio, neptisque neposque,  
 Est festum, fari, fateor, fanumque creaverunt.  
 Hisce profectò addes, pariterque procella, protervus,  
 Atque propago genus, propago protrahe vitia.  
 Propino varia, verbum propago, profundo :  
 Cum pello, curo, genitis, Proserpina junge.  
 Sz produc & DI, præter dirimo atque diuisus.  
 Est RE breve : ut viduum personis protrahe refect.  
 Pars si componens finis prior i vel o donat.  
 Sit breve : vaticinor monstraverit, Aretophylaxque.  
 I quibus est flexu mutabile jungito longis,  
 Quæque queunt sensu salvo divellier, addens  
 De quibus aut Crasis aliquid vel Syncopa tollit.  
 Idem masculæm produc, & ubique, & ibidem ;  
 Huic dein agglomerans turbæ composita dici.  
 His intro, retro, contraque & quando creata  
 (Quandoquidem excepto) bene junxeris, atque aliquis,  
 Quæque per o magnum scribuntur nomina Graiis.

## FIGURES OF PROSODY.

*Synalœpha* and *Ecthlipsis*. p. 214.

Vocalem *Synalœpha*, *Ecthlipsis* & in quoque tollit,  
 Altera cum voci est vocalis prima sequenti.

*Syncræsis* and *Diæresis*. p. 214, and 215.

Syllaba de binis conflata *Syncræsis* esto.  
 Distrahit in geminas resoluta *Diæresis* unam.

*Systolè* and *Diastolè*. p. 215.

*Systola* præcipitat vocales ritè trahendas.  
 Protrahit huic adversa *Diastola* corripiendas.

*Figures of Diction*. p. 215.

PROTHESIS apponit capiti, sed APHERESIS aufert,  
 SYNCOPA de medio tollit, sed EPENTHESIS addit.  
 Abstrahit APOCOPE fini, sed dat PARAGOGE.  
 Constringit CRASIS distracta DIÆRESIS effert.  
 Litera si legitur transposita, METATHESIS exit.  
 ANTITHESIS dices, tibi litera si varietur.

P I N I S.